Information technology - Object Management Group
Business Process Model and Notation

formal/2013-11-03

This version has been formally published by ISO as the 2013 edition standard: ISO/IEC 19510.
# Table of Contents

Foreword .................................................................................................................. xxvii
Introduction ............................................................................................................. xxviii

1 Scope ..................................................................................................................... 1
   1.1 General ........................................................................................................ 1

2 Conformance ......................................................................................................... 1
   2.1 General ........................................................................................................ 1
   2.2 Process Modeling Conformance ............................................................... 2
      2.2.1 BPMN Process Types ........................................................................ 2
      2.2.2 BPMN Process Elements ................................................................. 3
      2.2.3 Visual Appearance .............................................................................. 8
      2.2.4 Structural Conformance .................................................................... 8
      2.2.5 Process Semantics ............................................................................. 9
      2.2.6 Attributes and Model Associations .................................................. 9
      2.2.7 Extended and Optional Elements ...................................................... 9
      2.2.8 Visual Interchange ............................................................................ 10
   2.3 Process Execution Conformance .............................................................. 10
      2.3.1 Execution Semantics .......................................................................... 10
      2.3.2 Import of Process Diagrams .............................................................. 10
   2.4 BPEL Process Execution Conformance .................................................. 10
   2.5 Choreography Modeling Conformance ................................................... 10
      2.5.1 BPMN Choreography Types ............................................................ 10
      2.5.2 BPMN Choreography Elements ....................................................... 11
      2.5.3 Visual Appearance ............................................................................ 11
      2.5.4 Choreography Semantics ................................................................ 11
      2.5.5 Visual Interchange ........................................................................... 11
   2.6 Summary of BPMN Conformance Types ............................................... 12

3 Normative References ....................................................................................... 12
   3.1 General ...................................................................................................... 12
   3.2 Normative .................................................................................................. 13
   3.3 Non-Normative .......................................................................................... 13

4 Terms and Definitions ....................................................................................... 16

5 Symbols ............................................................................................................... 16

6 Additional Information ..................................................................................... 16
   6.1 Conventions .............................................................................................. 16
      6.1.1 Typographical and Linguistic Conventions and Style .................... 16
      6.1.2 Abbreviations .................................................................................... 17
   6.2 Structure of this Document ...................................................................... 17
### 9 Collaboration

9.1 General ................................................................. 107
9.2 Basic Collaboration Concepts ................................. 110
  9.2.1 Use of BPMN Common Elements ....................... 110
9.3 Pool and Participant .................................................. 111
  9.3.1 Participants ...................................................... 113
  9.3.2 Lanes ............................................................. 119
9.4 Message Flow .......................................................... 119
  9.4.1 Interaction Node .................................................. 122
  9.4.2 Message Flow Associations ................................. 122
9.5 Conversations .......................................................... 123
  9.5.1 Conversation Node .............................................. 127
  9.5.2 Conversation .................................................... 129
  9.5.3 Sub-Conversation .............................................. 129
  9.5.4 Call Conversation .............................................. 130
  9.5.5 Global Conversation ........................................... 131
  9.5.6 Conversation Link .............................................. 131
  9.5.7 Conversation Association ................................. 134
  9.5.8 Correlations ..................................................... 135
9.6 Process within Collaboration ....................................... 136
9.7 Choreography within Collaboration ............................ 136
9.8 Collaboration Package XML Schemas ......................... 138

### 10 Process ................................................................. 143

10.1 General ................................................................. 143
10.2 Basic Process Concepts ............................................. 147
  10.2.1 Types of BPMN Processes ................................. 147
  10.2.2 Use of BPMN Common Elements ....................... 148
10.3 Activities ............................................................... 149
  10.3.1 Resource Assignment ......................................... 152
  10.3.2 Performer ....................................................... 154
  10.3.3 Tasks ............................................................ 154
  10.3.4 Human Interactions .......................................... 163
  10.3.5 Sub-Processes ............................................... 171
  10.3.6 Call Activity ................................................... 182
  10.3.7 Global Task .................................................... 186
  10.3.8 Loop Characteristics ......................................... 188
  10.3.9 XML Schema for Activities ............................... 194
10.4 Items and Data .......................................................... 202
  10.4.1 Data Modeling .................................................. 202
  10.4.2 Execution Semantics for Data ............................. 224
  10.4.3 Usage of Data in XPath Expressions ................. 225
  10.4.4 XML Schema for Data ...................................... 228
10.5 Events ................................................................. 232
  10.5.1 Concepts ....................................................... 233
  10.5.2 Start Event .................................................... 237
10.5.3 End Event .............................................................. 245
10.5.4 Intermediate Event ............................................... 248
10.5.5 Event Definitions ...................................................... 259
10.5.6 Handling Events ...................................................... 274
10.5.7 Scopes .................................................................. 280
10.5.8 Events Package XML Schemas ................................. 281

10.6 Gateways .................................................................. 286
10.6.1 Sequence Flow Considerations ................................. 288
10.6.2 Exclusive Gateway .................................................. 289
10.6.3 Inclusive Gateway ................................................... 291
10.6.4 Parallel Gateway .................................................... 292
10.6.5 Complex Gateway .................................................. 294
10.6.6 Event-Based Gateway ............................................. 296
10.6.7 Gateway Package XML Schemas ............................... 300

10.7 Compensation .......................................................... 301
10.7.1 Compensation Handler ........................................... 302
10.7.2 Compensation Triggering ......................................... 303
10.7.3 Relationship between Error Handling and Compensation ........................................ 304

10.8 Lanes ......................................................................... 304

10.9 Process Instances, Unmodeled Activities, and Public Processes ........................................ 308

10.10 Auditing .................................................................... 310

10.11 Monitoring ............................................................... 310

10.12 Process Package XML Schemas ................................. 311

11 Choreography ................................................................ 315
11.1 General ........................................................................ 315
11.2 Basic Choreography Concepts ..................................... 317
11.3 Data ............................................................................ 319
11.4 Use of BPMN Common Elements ................................. 319
11.4.1 Sequence Flow ........................................................ 320
11.4.2 Artifacts .................................................................... 321

11.5 Choreography Activities ............................................. 321
11.5.1 Choreography Task .................................................. 323
11.5.2 Sub-Choreography ................................................... 328
11.5.3 Call Choreography ................................................... 333
11.5.4 Global Choreography Task ....................................... 335
11.5.5 Looping Activities .................................................... 335
11.5.6 The Sequencing of Activities .................................... 335

11.6 Events .......................................................................... 339
11.6.1 Start Events ............................................................. 339
11.6.2 Intermediate Events ............................................... 340
11.6.3 End Events ............................................................... 343

11.7 Gateways .................................................................... 344
11.7.1 Exclusive Gateway .................................................. 344
11.7.2 Event-Based Gateway ............................................. 349
11.7.3 Inclusive Gateway ................................................... 351
11.7.4 Parallel Gateway .................................................... 358
11.7.5 Complex Gateway .................................................. 360
11.7.6 Chaining Gateways .......................................................... 361
11.8 Choreography within Collaboration .................................................. 361
11.8.1 Participants ................................................................. 361
11.8.2 Swimlanes ......................................................................... 362
11.9 XML Schema for Choreography .................................................. 363

12 BPMN Notation and Diagrams ...................................................... 367
12.1 BPMN Diagram Interchange (BPMN DI) ........................................... 367
  12.1.1 Scope .............................................................................. 367
  12.1.2 Diagram Definition and Interchange ....................................... 367
  12.1.3 How to Read this Clause .................................................... 368
12.2 BPMN Diagram Interchange (DI) Meta-model .................................. 368
  12.2.1 Overview .......................................................................... 368
  12.2.2 Abstract Syntax .................................................................. 368
  12.2.3 Classifier Descriptions ...................................................... 370
  12.2.4 Complete BPMN DI XML Schema ...................................... 378
12.3 Notational Depiction Library and Abstract Element Resolutions ........... 380
  12.3.1 Labels .............................................................................. 381
  12.3.2 BPMNShape ..................................................................... 381
  12.3.3 BPMNEdge ....................................................................... 410
12.4 Example(s) ............................................................................. 412
  12.4.1 Depicting Content in a Sub-Process ...................................... 412
  12.4.2 Multiple Lanes and Nested Lanes ........................................ 417
  12.4.3 Vertical Collaboration ....................................................... 418
  12.4.4 Conversation ..................................................................... 419
  12.4.5 Choreography .................................................................... 421

13 BPMN Execution Semantics ........................................................ 425
13.1 General .................................................................................. 425
13.2 Process Instantiation and Termination ............................................. 426
13.3 Activities .............................................................................. 426
  13.3.1 Sequence Flow Considerations .......................................... 427
  13.3.2 Activity ............................................................................ 428
  13.3.3 Task ................................................................................ 430
  13.3.4 Sub-Process/Call Activity .................................................. 430
  13.3.5 Ad-Hoc Sub-Process ......................................................... 431
  13.3.6 Loop Activity ................................................................. 432
  13.3.7 Multiple Instances Activity ............................................... 432
13.4 Gateways .............................................................................. 434
  13.4.1 Parallel Gateway (Fork and Join) ....................................... 434
  13.4.2 Exclusive Gateway (Exclusive Decision (data-based) and Exclusive Merge) .................................................. 434
  13.4.3 Inclusive Gateway (Inclusive Decision and Inclusive Merge) .......................... 435
  13.4.4 Event-based Gateway (Exclusive Decision (event-based)) ....................... 437
  13.4.5 Complex Gateway (related to Complex Condition and Complex Merge) ........ 437
13.5 Events .................................................................................. 439
  13.5.1 Start Events ................................................................. 439
  13.5.2 Intermediate Events .......................................................... 440
  13.5.3 Intermediate Boundary Events ........................................... 440
  13.5.4 Event Sub-Processes ...................................................... 440
List of Figures

Figure 7.1 – Example of a private Business Process 21
Figure 7.2 – Example of a public Process 22
Figure 7.3 – An example of a Collaborative Process 23
Figure 7.4 – An example of a Choreography 23
Figure 7.5 – An example of a Conversation diagram 24
Figure 7.6 – An example of a Collaboration diagram with black-box Pools 43
Figure 7.7 – An example of a stand-alone Choreography diagram 44
Figure 7.8 – An example of a stand-alone Process (Orchestration) diagram 45
Figure 8.1 – A representation of the BPMN Core and Layer Structure 47
Figure 8.2 – Class diagram showing the core packages 48
Figure 8.3 – Class diagram showing the organization of the core BPMN elements 49
Figure 8.4 – Definitions class diagram 50
Figure 8.5 – Classes in the Foundation package 53
Figure 8.6 – Extension class diagram 55
Figure 8.7 – External Relationship Metamodel 60
Figure 8.8 – Artifacts Metamodel 64
Figure 8.9 – An Association 65
Figure 8.10 – The Association Class Diagram 65
Figure 8.11 – A Directional Association 66
Figure 8.12 – An Association of Text Annotation 66
Figure 8.13 – A Group Artifact 67
Figure 8.14 – A Group around Activities in different Pools 67
Figure 8.15 – The Group class diagram 68
Figure 8.16 – A Text Annotation 69
Figure 8.17 – The Correlation Class Diagram 74
Figure 8.18 – Error class diagram 79
Figure 8.19 – Escalation class diagram 80
Figure 8.20 – Event class diagram 82
Figure 8.21 – Expression class diagram 83
Figure 8.22 – FlowElement class diagram 85
Figure 8.23 – FlowElementContainers class diagram 87
Figure 8.24 – Gateway class diagram 88
Figure 8.25 – ItemDefinition class diagram 90
Figure 8.26 – A Message 91
Figure 8.27 – A non-initiating Message 91
Figure 8.28 – Messages Association overlapping Message Flows 92
Figure 8.29 – Messages shown Associated with a Choreography Task 92
Figure 8.30 – The Message class diagram 93
Figure 8.31 – Resource class diagram 94
Figure 8.32 – A Sequence Flow 95
Figure 8.33 – A Conditional Sequence Flow 95
Figure 8.34 – A Default Sequence Flow 96
Figure 8.35 – SequenceFlow class diagram 96
Figure 8.36 – The Service class diagram 102
Figure 9.1 – Classes in the Collaboration package 108
Figure 9.2 – A Pool 111
Figure 9.3 – Message Flows connecting to the boundaries of two Pools 112
Figure 9.4 – Message Flows connecting to Flow Objects within two Pools 112
Figure 9.5 – Main (Internal) Pool without boundaries 113
Figure 9.6 – Pools with a Multi-Instance Participant Markers 113
Figure 9.7 – The Participant Class Diagram 114
Figure 9.8 – A Pool with a Multiple Participant 116
Figure 9.9 – The Participant Multiplicity class diagram 116
Figure 9.10 – ParticipantAssociation class diagram 118
Figure 9.11 – A Message Flow 119
Figure 9.12 – A Message Flow with an Attached Message 120
Figure 9.13 – A Message Flow passing through a Choreography Task 120
Figure 9.14 – The Message Flow Class Diagram 121
Figure 9.15 – MessageFlowAssociation class diagram 123
Figure 9.16 – A Conversation diagram 124
Figure 9.17 – A Conversation diagram where the Conversation is expanded into Message Flows 124
Figure 9.18 – Conversation diagram depicting several conversations between Participants in a related domain 125
Figure 9.19 – An example of a Sub-Conversation 126
Figure 9.20 – An example of a Sub-Conversation expanded to a Conversation and Message Flow 126
Figure 9.21 – An example of a Sub-Conversation that is fully expanded 127
Figure 9.22 – Metamodel of ConversationNode Related Elements 128
Figure 9.23 – A Communication element 129
Figure 9.24 – A compound Conversation element 130
Figure 9.25 – A Call Conversation calling a GlobalConversation 130
Figure 9.26 – A Call Conversation calling a Collaboration 130
Figure 9.27 – A Conversation Link element 131
Figure 9.28 – Conversation links to Activities and Events 132
Figure 9.29 – Metamodel of Conversation Links related elements 133
Figure 9.30 – Call Conversation Links 134
Figure 9.31 – The ConversationAssociation class diagram 135
Figure 9.32 – An example of a Choreography within a Collaboration 137
Figure 9.33 – Choreography within Collaboration class diagram 138
Figure 10.1 – An Example of a Process 143
Figure 10.2 – Process class diagram 144
Figure 10.3 – Process Details class diagram 145
Figure 10.4 – Example of a private Business Process 148
Figure 10.5 – Example of a public Process 148
Figure 10.6 – Activity class diagram 149
Figure 10.7 – The class diagram for assigning Resources 152
Figure 10.8 – A Task object 154
Figure 10.9 – Task markers 155
Figure 10.10 – The Task class diagram 155
Figure 10.11 – A Service Task Object 156
Figure 10.12 – The Service Task class diagram 157
Figure 10.13 – A Send Task Object 158
Figure 10.14 – The Send Task and Receive Task class diagram 158
Figure 10.15 – A Receive Task Object 159
Figure 10.16 – A Receive Task Object that instantiates a Process 160
Figure 10.17 – A User Task Object 161
Figure 10.18 – A Manual Task Object 161
Figure 10.19 – A Business Rule Task Object 162
Figure 10.20 – A Script Task Object 162
Figure 10.21 – Manual Task class diagram 163
Figure 10.22 – User Task class diagram 164
Figure 10.23 – HumanPerformer class diagram 165
Figure 10.24 – Procurement Process Example 168
Figure 10.25 – A Sub-Process object (collapsed) 171
Figure 10.26 – A Sub-Process object (expanded) 172
Figure 10.27 – Expanded Sub-Process used as a “Parallel Box” 172
Figure 10.28 – Collapsed Sub-Process Markers 173
Figure 10.29– The Sub-Process class diagram 173
Figure 10.30 – An Event Sub-Process object (Collapsed) 175
Figure 10.31 – An Event Sub-Process object (expanded) 175
Figure 10.32 – An example that includes Event Sub-Processes 176
Figure 10.33 – A Transaction Sub-Process 177
Figure 10.34 – A Collapsed Transaction Sub-Process 177
Figure 10.35 – A collapsed Ad-Hoc Sub-Process 179
Figure 10.36 – An expanded Ad-Hoc Sub-Process 179
Figure 10.37 – An Ad-Hoc Sub-Process for writing a book chapter 181
Figure 10.38 – An Ad-Hoc Sub-Process with data and sequence dependencies 182
Figure 10.39– A Call Activity object calling a Global Task 183
Figure 10.40 – A Call Activity object calling a Process (Collapsed) 183
Figure 10.41 – A Call Activity object calling a Process (Expanded) 183
Figure 10.42 –The Call Activity class diagram 184
Figure 10.43 – CallableElement class diagram 185
Figure 10.44 – Global Tasks class diagram 187
Figure 10.45 – LoopCharacteristics class diagram 188
Figure 10.46 – A Task object with a Standard Loop Marker 189
Figure 10.47 – A Sub-Process object with a Standard Loop Marker 189
Figure 10.48 – Activity Multi-Instance marker for parallel instances 190
Figure 10.49 – Activity Multi-Instance marker for sequential instances 190
Figure 10.50 - ItemAware class diagram 203
Figure 10.51 – DataObject class diagram 204
Figure 10.52 – A DataObject 206
Figure 10.53 – A DataObject that is a collection 206
Figure 10.54 – A Data Store 207
Figure 10.55 – DataStore class diagram 207
Figure 10.56 – Property class diagram 209
Figure 10.57 – InputOutputSpecification class diagram 211
Figure 10.58 – A DataInput 213
Figure 10.59 – Data Input class diagram 213
Figure 10.60 – A Data Output 215
Figure 10.61 – Data Output class diagram 215
Figure 10.62 – InputSet class diagram 218
Figure 10.63 – OutputSet class diagram 219
Figure 10.64 – DataAssociation class diagram 221
Figure 10.65 – A Data Association 221
Figure 10.66 – A Data Association used for an Outputs and Inputs into an Activities 221
Figure 10.67 – A Data Object shown as an output and an inputs 223
Figure 10.68 – A Data Object associated with a Sequence Flow 224
Figure 10.69 – The Event Class Diagram 233
Figure 10.70 – Start Event 238
Figure 10.71 – End Event 245
Figure 10.72 – Intermediate Event 249
Figure 10.73 – EventDefinition Class Diagram 261
Figure 10.74 – Cancel Events 262
Figure 10.75 – Compensation Events 262
Figure 10.76 – CompensationEventDefinition Class Diagram 262
Figure 10.77 – Conditional Events 263
Figure 10.78 – ConditionalEventDefinition Class Diagram 264
Figure 10.79 – Error Events 264
Figure 10.80 – ErrorEventDefinition Class Diagram 265
Figure 10.81 – Escalation Events 265
Figure 10.82 – EscalationEventDefinition Class Diagram 266
Figure 10.83 – Link Events 266
Figure 10.84 – Link Events Used as Off-Page Connector 267
Figure 10.85 – A Process with a long Sequence Flow 268
Figure 10.86 – A Process with Link Intermediate Events used as Go To Objects 268
Figure 10.87 – Link Events Used for looping 269
Figure 10.88 – Message Events 269
Figure 10.89 – MessageEventDefinition Class Diagram 270
Figure 10.90 – Multiple Events 271
Figure 10.91 – None Events 271
Figure 10.92 – Multiple Events 272
Figure 10.93 – SignalEventDefinition Class Diagram 272
Figure 10.94 – Signal Events 272
Figure 10.95 – Terminate Event 273
Figure 10.96 – Timer Events 273
Figure 10.97 – Exclusive start of a Process 274
Figure 10.98 – A Process initiated by an Event-Based Gateway 275
Figure 10.99 – Event synchronization at Process start 275
Figure 10.100 – Example of inline Event Handling via Event Sub-Processes 277
Figure 10.101 – Example of boundary Event Handling 278
Figure 10.102 – A Gateway 286
Figure 10.103 – The Different types of Gateways 287
Figure 10.104 – Gateway class diagram 288
Figure 10.105 – An Exclusive Data-Based Decision (Gateway) Example without the Internal Indicator 289
Figure 10.106 – A Data-Based Exclusive Decision (Gateway) Example with the Internal Indicator 290
Figure 10.107 – Exclusive Gateway class diagram 290
Figure 10.108 – An example using an Inclusive Gateway 291
Figure 10.109 – Inclusive Gateway class diagram 292
Figure 10.110 – An example using an Parallel Gateway 293
Figure 10.111 – An example of a synchronizing Parallel Gateway 293
Figure 10.112 – Parallel Gateway class diagram 294
Figure 10.113 – An example using a Complex Gateway 294
Figure 10.114 – Complex Gateway class diagram 295
Figure 10.115 – Event-Based Gateway 296
Figure 10.116 – An Event-Based Gateway example using Message Intermediate Events 297
Figure 10.117 – An Event-Based Gateway example using Receive Tasks 297
Figure 10.118 – Exclusive Event-Based Gateway to start a Process 298
Figure 10.119 – Parallel Event-Based Gateway to start a Process 298
Figure 10.120 – Event-Based Gateway class diagram 299
Figure 10.121 – Compensation through a boundary Event 302
Figure 10.122 – Monitoring Class Diagram 303
Figure 10.123 – Two Lanes in a Vertical Pool 305
Figure 10.124 – Two Lanes in a horizontal Pool 305
Figure 10.125 – An Example of Nested Lanes 306
Figure 10.126 – The Lane class diagram 307
Figure 10.127 – One Process supporting to another 309
Figure 10.128 – Auditing Class Diagram 310
Figure 10.129 – Monitoring Class Diagram 311
Figure 11.1 – The Choreography metamodel 316
Figure 11.2 – An example of a Choreography 317
Figure 11.3 – A Collaboration diagram logistics example 318
Figure 11.4 – The corresponding Choreography diagram logistics example 319
Figure 11.5 – The use of Sequence Flows in a Choreography 320
Figure 11.6 – The metamodel segment for a Choreography Activity 322
Figure 11.7 – A Collaboration view of Choreography Task elements 323
Figure 11.8 – A Choreography Task 323
Figure 11.9 – A Collaboration view of a Choreography Task 324
Figure 11.10 – A two-way Choreography Task 324
Figure 11.11 – A Collaboration view of a two-way Choreography Task 325
Figure 11.12 – Choreography Task Markers 326
Figure 11.13 – The Collaboration view of a looping Choreography Task 326
Figure 11.14 – The Collaboration view of a Parallel Multi-Instance Choreography Task 327
Figure 11.15 – A Choreography Task with a multiple Participant 327
Figure 11.16 – A Collaboration view of a Choreography Task with a multiple Participant 328
Figure 11.17 – A Sub-Choreography 329
Figure 11.18 – A Collaboration view of a Sub-Choreography 329
Figure 11.19 – An expanded Sub-Choreography 330
Figure 11.20 – A Collaboration view of an expanded Sub-Choreography 330
Figure 11.21 – Sub-Choreography (Collapsed) with More than Two Participants 331
Figure 11.22 – Sub-Choreography Markers 332
Figure 11.23 – Sub-Choreography Markers with a multi-instance Participant 332
Figure 11.24 – A Call Choreography calling a Global Choreography Task 333
Figure 11.25 – A Call Choreography calling a Choreography (Collapsed) 333
Figure 11.26 – A Call Choreography calling a Choreography (expanded) 334
Figure 11.27 – The Call Choreography class diagram 334
Figure 11.28 – A valid sequence of Choreography Activities 336
Figure 11.29 – The corresponding Collaboration for a valid Choreography sequence 337
Figure 11.30 – A valid sequence of Choreography Activities with a two-way Activity 337
Figure 11.31 – The corresponding Collaboration for a valid Choreography sequence with a two-way Activity 338
Figure 11.32 – An invalid sequence of Choreography Activities 338
Figure 11.33 – The corresponding Collaboration for an invalid Choreography sequence 339
Figure 11.34 – An example of the Exclusive Gateway 345
Figure 11.35 – The relationship of Choreography Activity Participants across the sides of the Exclusive Gateway shown through a Collaboration 346
Figure 11.36 – Different Receiving Choreography Activity Participants on the output sides of the Exclusive Gateway 347
Figure 11.37 – The corresponding Collaboration view of the above Choreography Exclusive Gateway configuration 348
Figure 11.38 – An example of an Event Gateway 349
Figure 11.39 – The corresponding Collaboration view of the above Choreography Event Gateway configuration 350
Figure 11.40 – An example of a Choreography Inclusive Gateway configuration 352
Figure 11.41 – The corresponding Collaboration view of the above Choreography Inclusive Gateway configuration 353
Figure 11.42 – An example of a Choreography Inclusive Gateway configuration 354
Figure 11.43 – The corresponding Collaboration view of the above Choreography Inclusive Gateway configuration 355
Figure 11.44 – Another example of a Choreography Inclusive Gateway configuration 356
Figure 11.45 – The corresponding Collaboration view of the above Choreography Inclusive Gateway configuration 357
Figure 11.46 – The relationship of Choreography Activity Participants across the sides of the Parallel Gateway 358
Figure 11.47 – The corresponding Collaboration view of the above Choreography Parallel Gateway configuration 359
Figure 11.48 – An example of a Choreography Complex Gateway configuration 360
Figure 11.49 – The corresponding Collaboration view of the above Choreography Complex Gateway configuration 361
Figure 11.50 – An example of a Choreography Process combined with Black Box Pools 362
Figure 11.51 – An example of a Choreography Process combined with Pools that contain Processes 363
Figure 12.1 – BPMN Diagram 369
Figure 12.2 – BPMN Plane 369
Figure 12.3 – BPMN Shape 369
Figure 12.4 – BPMN Edge 370
Figure 12.5 – BPMN Label 370
Figure 12.6 – Depicting a Label for a DataObjectReference with its state 381
Figure 12.7 – Combined Compensation and Loop Characteristic Marker Example 384
Figure 12.8 – Expanded Sub-Process Example 413
Figure 12.9 – Start and End Events on the Border Example 414
Figure 12.10 – Collapsed Sub-Process 415
Figure 12.11 – Contents of Collapsed Sub-Process 416
Figure 12.12 – Nested Lanes Example 417
Figure 12.13 – Vertical Collaboration Example 418
Figure 12.14 – Conversation Example 420
Figure 12.15 – Choreography Example 422
Figure 13.1 – Behavior of multiple outgoing Sequence Flows of an Activity 427
Figure 13.2 – The Lifecycle of a BPMN Activity 428
Figure 13.3 – Merging and Branching Sequence Flows for a Parallel Gateway 434
Figure 13.4 – Merging and Branching Sequence Flows for an Exclusive Gateway 434
Figure 13.5 – Merging and Branching Sequence Flows for an Inclusive Gateway 435
Figure 13.6 – Merging and branching Sequence Flows for an Event-Based Gateway 437
Figure 13.7 – Merging and branching Sequence Flows for a Complex Gateway 437
Figure 14.1 – A BPMN orchestration process and its block hierarchy 446
Figure 14.2 – An example of distributed token recombination 469
Figure 14.3 – An example of a loop from a decision with more than two alternative paths 470
Figure 14.4 – An example of interleaved loops 471
Figure 14.5 – An example of the WSBPEL pattern for substituting for the derived Process 472
Figure 14.6 – An example of a WSBPEL pattern for the derived Process 472
Figure 14.7 – An example: An infinite loop 473
Figure 14.8 – An example: Activity that spans two paths of a WSBPEL structured element 474
Figure B.1 – Diagram Definition Architecture 483
Figure B.2 – The Primitive Types 483
Figure B.3 – Diagram Definition Architecture 484
Figure B.4 – Diagram Definition Architecture 484
Figure B.5 – Dependencies of the DI package 488
Figure B.6 – Diagram Element 488
Figure B.7 – Node 488
Figure B.8 – Edge 489
Figure B.9 – Diagram 489
Figure B.10 – Plane 489
Figure B.11 – Labeled Edge 490
Figure B.12 – Labeled Shape 490
Figure B.13 – Shape 490
List of Tables

Table 2.1 – Descriptive Conformance Sub-Class Elements and Attributes 3
Table 2.2 – Analytic Conformance Sub-Class Elements and Attributes 4
Table 2.3 – Common Executable Conformance Sub-Class Elements and Attributes 6
Table 2.4 – Common Executable Conformance Sub-Class Supporting Classes 7
Table 2.5 – Types of BPMN Conformance 12
Table 7.1 – Basic Modeling Elements 27
Table 7.2 – BPMN Extended Modeling Elements 29
Table 7.3 – Sequence Flow Connection Rules 40
Table 7.4 – Message Flow Connection Rules 42
Table 8.1 – Definitions attributes and model associations 50
Table 8.2 – Import attributes 52
Table 8.3 – Definitions XML schema 52
Table 8.4 – Import XML schema 53
Table 8.5 – BaseElement attributes and model associations 54
Table 8.6 – Documentation attributes 54
Table 8.7 – Extension attributes and model associations 56
Table 8.8 – ExtensionDefinition attributes and model associations 57
Table 8.9 – ExtensionAttributeDefinition attributes 57
Table 8.10 – ExtensionAttributeValue model associations 57
Table 8.11 – Extension XML schema 58
Table 8.12 – Example Core XML schema 58
Table 8.13 – Example Extension XML schema 59
Table 8.14 – Sample XML instance 59
Table 8.15 – Relationship attributes 61
Table 8.16 – Reengineer XML schema 61
Table 8.17 – BaseElement XML schema 62
Table 8.18 –RootElement XML schema 63
Table 8.19 – Relationship XML schema 63
Table 8.20 – Association attributes and model associations 66
Table 8.21 – Group model associations 68
Table 8.22 – Category model associations 69
Table 8.23 – CategoryValue attributes and model associations 69
Table 8.24 – Text Annotation attributes 70
Table 8.25 – Artifact XML schema 70
Table 8.26 – Association XML schema 70
Table 8.27 – Category XML schema 70
Table 8.28 – CategoryValue XML schema 71
Table 8.29 – Group XML schema 71
Table 8.30 – Text Annotation XML schema 71
Table 8.31 – CorrelationKey model associations 75
Table 8.32 – CorrelationProperty model associations 75
Table 8.33 – CorrelationPropertyRetrievalExpression model associations 76
Table 8.34 – CorrelationSubscription model associations 76
Table 8.35 – CorrelationPropertyBinding model associations 77
Table 8.36 – Correlation Key XML schema 77
Table 8.37 – Correlation Property XML schema 77
Table 8.38 – Correlation Property Binding XML schema 78
Table 8.39 – Correlation Property Retrieval Expression XML schema 78
Table 8.40 – Correlation Subscription XML schema 78
Table 8.41 – Error attributes and model associations 80
Table 8.42 – Escalation attributes and model associations 81
Table 8.43 – FormalExpression attributes and model associations 84
Table 8.44 – FlowElement attributes and model associations 86
Table 8.45 – FlowElementsContainer model associations 87
Table 8.46 – Gateway attributes 89
Table 8.47 – ItemDefinition attributes & model associations 90
Table 8.48 – Message attributes and model associations 93
Table 8.49 – Resource attributes and model associations 94
Table 8.50 – ResourceParameter attributes and model associations 95
Table 8.51 – SequenceFlow attributes and model associations 97
Table 8.52 – FlowNode model associations 98
Table 8.53 – Error XML schema 98
Table 8.54 – Escalation XML schema 98
Table 8.55 – Expression XML schema 98
Table 8.56 – FlowElement XML schema 99
Table 8.57 – FlowNode XML schema 99
Table 8.58 – FormalExpression XML schema 99
Table 8.59 – InputOutputBinding XML schema 99
Table 8.60 – ItemDefinition XML schema 100
Table 8.61 – Message XML schema 100
Table 8.62 – Resources XML schema 100
Table 8.63 – ResourceParameter XML schema 101
Table 8.64 – SequenceFlow XML schema 101
Table 8.65 – Interface attributes and model associations 103
Table 8.66 – Operation attributes and model associations 104
Table 8.67 – Interface XML schema 104
Table 8.68 – Operation XML schema 104
Table 8.69 – EndPoint XML schema 105
Table 9.1 – Collaboration Attributes and Model Associations 108
Table 9.2 – Participant attributes and model associations 115
Table 9.3 – PartnerEntity attributes 115
Table 9.4 – PartnerRole attributes 116
Table 9.5 – ParticipantMultiplicity attributes 117
Table 9.6 – ParticipantMultiplicity Instance attributes 117
Table 9.7 – ParticipantAssociation model associations 119
Table 9.8 – Message Flow attributes and model associations 122
Table 9.9 – MessageFlowAssociation attributes and model associations 123
Table 9.10 – ConversationNode Model Associations 129
Table 9.11 – Sub-Conversation Model Associations 130
Table 9.12 – Call Conversation Model Associations 131
Table 9.13 – Conversation Link Attributes and Model Associations 133
Table 9.14 – ConversationAssociation Model Associations 135
Table 9.15 – Call Conversation XML schema 138
Table 9.16 – Collaboration XML schema 138
Table 9.17 – Conversation XML schema 139
Table 9.18 – ConversationAssociation XML schema 139
Table 9.19 – ConversationAssociation XML schema 139
Table 9.20 – ConversationNode XML schema 140
Table 9.21 – Conversation Node XML schema 140
Table 9.22 – Global Conversation XML schema 140
Table 9.23 – MessageFlow XML schema 140
Table 9.24 – MessageFlowAssociation XML schema 141
Table 9.25 – Participant XML schema 141
Table 9.26 – ParticipantAssociation XML schema 141
Table 9.27 – ParticipantMultiplicity XML schema 142
Table 9.28 – PartnerEntity XML schema 142
Table 9.29 – PartnerRole XML schema 142
Table 9.30 – Sub-Conversation XML schema 142
Table 10.1 – Process Attributes & Model Associations 145
Table 10.2 – Process instance attributes 147
Table 10.3 – Activity attributes and model associations 150
Table 10.4 – Activity instance attributes 151
Table 10.5 – Resource Role model associations 153
Table 10.6 – ResourceAssignmentExpression model associations 153
Table 10.7 – ResourceParameterBinding model associations 154
Table 10.8 – Service Task model associations 157
Table 10.9 – Send Task model associations 159
Table 10.10 – Receive Task attributes and model associations 160
Table 10.11 – Business Rule Task attributes and model associations 162
Table 10.12 – Script Task attributes 163
Table 10.13 – User Task attributes and model associations 164
Table 10.14 – User Task instance attributes 165
Table 10.15 – ManualTask XML schema 166
Table 10.16 – UserTask XML schema 167
Table 10.17 – HumanPerformer XML schema 168
Table 10.18 – PotentialOwner XML schema 168
Table 10.19 – XML serialization of Buyer process 169
Table 10.20 – Sub-Process attributes 174
Table 10.21 – Transaction Sub-Process attributes and model associations 178
Table 10.22 – Ad-hoc Sub-Process model associations 180
Table 10.23 – CallActivity model associations 185
Table 10.24 – CallableElement attributes and model associations 186
Table 10.25 – InputOutputBinding model associations 186
Table 10.26 – Global Task model associations 187
Table 10.27 – Loop Activity instance attributes 189
Table 10.28 – StandardLoopCharacteristics attributes and model associations 190
Table 10.29 – MultiInstanceLoopCharacteristics attributes and model associations 191
Table 10.30 – Multi-instance Activity instance attributes 193
Table 10.31 – ComplexBehaviorDefinition attributes and model associations 194
Table 10.32 – Activity XML schema 194
Table 10.33 – AdHocSubProcess XML schema 195
Table 10.34 – BusinessRuleTask XML schema 195
Table 10.35 – CallableElement XML schema 196
Table 10.36 – CallActivity XML schema 196
Table 10.37 – GlobalBusinessRuleTask XML schema 196
Table 10.38 – GlobalScriptTask XML schema 197
Table 10.39 – GlobalTask XML schema 197
Table 10.40 – LoopCharacteristics XML schema 197
Table 10.41 – MultiInstanceLoopCharacteristics XML schema 198
Table 10.42 – ReceiveTask XML schema 199
Table 10.43 – ResourceRole XML schema 199
Table 10.44 – ScriptTask XML schema 200
Table 10.45 – SendTask XML schema 200
Table 10.46 – ServiceTask XML schema 200
Table 10.47 – StandardLoopCharacteristics XML schema 201
Table 10.48 – SubProcess XML schema 201
Table 10.49 – Task XML schema 201
Table 10.50 – Transaction XML schema 202
Table 10.51 – ItemAwareElement model associations 203
Table 10.52 – DataObject attributes 205
Table 10.53 – DataObjectReference attributes and model associations 205
Table 10.54 – DataState attributes and model associations 205
Table 10.55 – DataStore attributes 208
Table 10.56 – Data Store attributes 208
Table 10.57 – Property attributes 209
Table 10.58 – InputOutputSpecification Attributes and Model Associations 212
Table 10.59 – DataInput attributes and model associations 214
Table 10.60 – DataOutput attributes and associations 216
Table 10.61 – InputSet attributes and model associations 218
Table 10.62 – OutputSet attributes and model associations 220
Table 10.63 – DataAssociation model associations 222
Table 10.64 – Assignment attributes 223
Table 10.65 – XPath Extension Function for Data Objects 226
Table 10.66 – XPath Extension Function for Data Inputs and Data Outputs 226
Table 10.67 – XPath Extension Functions for Properties 227
Table 10.68 – XPath extension functions for instance attributes 228
Table 10.69 – Assignment XML schema 228
Table 10.70 – DataAssociation XML schema 229
Table 10.71 – DataInput XML schema 229
Table 10.72 – DataInputAssociation XML schema 229
Table 10.73 – DataObject XML schema 230
Table 10.74 – DataState XML schema 230
Table 10.75 – DataOutput XML schema 230
Table 10.76 – DataOutputAssociation XML schema 230
Table 10.77 – InputOutputSpecification XML schema 231
Table 10.78 – InputSet XML schema 231
Table 10.79 – OutputSet XML schema 232
Table 10.80 – Property XML schema 232
Table 10.81 – Event model associations 235
Table 10.82 – CatchEvent attributes and model associations 235
Table 10.83 – ThrowEvent attributes and model associations 236
Table 10.84 – Top-Level Process Start Event Types 239
Table 10.85 – Sub-Process Start Event Types 241
Table 10.86 – Event Sub-Process Start Event Types 241
Table 10.87 – Start Event attributes 244
Table 10.88 – End Event Types 246
Table 10.89 – Intermediate Event Types in Normal Flow 250
Table 10.90 – Intermediate Event Types Attached to an Activity Boundary 253
Table 10.91 – Boundary Event attributes 257
Table 10.92 – Possible Values of the cancelActivity Attribute 257
Table 10.93 – Types of Events and their Markers 260
Table 10.94 – CompensationEventDefinition attributes and model associations 263
Table 10.95 – ConditionalEventDefinition model associations 264
Table 10.96 – ErrorEventDefinition attributes and model associations 265
Table 10.97 – EscalationEventDefinition attributes and model associations 266
Table 10.98 – LinkEventDefinition attributes 269
Table 10.99 – MessageEventDefinition model associations 270
Table 10.100 – SignalEventDefinition model associations 272
Table 10.101 – TimerEventDefinition model associations 273
Table 10.102 – BoundaryEvent XML schema 281
Table 10.103 – CancelEventDefinition XML schema 281
Table 10.104 – CatchEvent XML schema 281
Table 10.105 – CancelEventDefinition XML schema 281
Table 10.106 – CompensateEventDefinition XML schema 282
Table 10.107 – ConditionalEventDefinition XML schema 282
Table 10.108 – ErrorEventDefinition XML schema 282
Table 10.109 – EscalationEventDefinition XML schema 282
Table 10.110 – Event XML schema 283
Table 10.111 – EventDefinition XML schema 283
Table 10.112 – ImplicitThrowEvent XML schema 283
Table 10.113 – IntermediateCatchEvent XML schema 283
Table 10.114 – IntermediateThrowEvent XML schema 283
Table 10.115 – LinkEventDefinition XML schema 283
Table 10.116 – MessageEventDefinition XML schema 284
Table 10.117 – Signal XML schema 284
Table 10.118 – SignalEventDefinition XML schema 284
Table 10.119 – StartEvent XML schema 285
Table 10.120 – TerminateEventDefinition XML schema 285
Table 10.121 – ThrowEvent XML schema 285
Table 10.122 – TimerEventDefinition XML schema 285

© ISO/IEC 2013 - All rights reserved
Table 12.14 – Depiction Resolution for Collapsed Transactions 387
Table 12.15 – Depiction Resolution for Tasks 388
Table 12.16 – Depiction Resolution for Collapsed Event Sub-Processes 388
Table 12.17 – Depiction Resolution for Expanded Event Sub-Processes 391
Table 12.18 – Depiction Resolution for Call Activities (Calling a Global Task) 391
Table 12.19 – Depiction Resolution for Collapsed Call Activities (Calling a Process) 392
Table 12.20 – Depiction Resolution for Expanded Call Activities (Calling a Process) 392
Table 12.21 – Depiction Resolution for Data 393
Table 12.22 – Depiction Resolution for Events 394
Table 12.23 – Depiction Resolution for Gateways 400
Table 12.24 – Depiction Resolution for Artifacts 401
Table 12.25 – Depiction Resolution for Lanes 401
Table 12.26 – Depiction Resolution for Pools 402
Table 12.27 – Depiction Resolution for Choreography Tasks 403
Table 12.28 – Depiction Resolution for Sub-Choreographies (Collapsed) 404
Table 12.29 – Depiction Resolution for Sub-Choreographies (Expanded) 405
Table 12.30 – Depiction Resolution for Call Choreographies (Calling a Global Choreography Task) 405
Table 12.31 – Depiction Resolution for Collapsed Call Choreographies (Calling a Choreography) 406
Table 12.32 – Depiction Resolution for Expanded Call Choreographies (Calling a Choreography) 407
Table 12.33 – Depiction Resolution for Choreography Participant Bands 408
Table 12.34 – Depiction Resolution for Conversations 410
Table 12.35 – Depiction Resolution for Connecting Objects 411
Table 12.36 – Expanded Sub-Process BPMN DI instance 413
Table 12.37 – Start and End Events on the Border BPMN DI instance 414
Table 12.38 – Collapsed Sub-Process BPMN DI instance 416
Table 12.39 – Sub-Process Content BPMN DI instance 416
Table 12.40 – Multiple Lanes and Nested Lanes BPMN DI instance 417
Table 12.41 – Vertical Collaboration BPMN DI instance 418
Table 12.42 – Conversation BPMN DI instance 420
Table 12.43 – Choreography BPMN DI instance 422
Table 13.1 – Parallel Gateway Execution Semantics 434
Table 13.2 – Exclusive Gateway Execution Semantics 435
Table 13.3 – Inclusive Gateway Execution Semantics 436
Table 13.4 – Event-Based Gateway Execution Semantics 437
Table 13.5 – Semantics of the Complex Gateway 438
Table 14.1 – Common Activity Mappings to WS-BPEL 448
Table 14.2 – Expressions mapping to WS-BPEL 468
Foreword

ISO (the International Organization for Standardization) is a worldwide federation of national standards bodies (ISO member bodies). The work of preparing International Standards is normally carried out through ISO technical committees. Each member body interested in a subject for which a technical committee has been established has the right to be represented on that committee. International organizations, governmental and non-governmental, in liaison with ISO, also take part in the work. ISO collaborates closely with the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) on all matters of electrotechnical standardization.

International Standards are drafted in accordance with the rules given in the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

The main task of technical committees is to prepare International Standards. Draft International Standards adopted by the technical committees are circulated to the member bodies for voting. Publication as an International Standard requires approval by at least 75 % of the member bodies casting a vote.

Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this document may be the subject of patent rights. ISO shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.

ISO/IEC 19510 was prepared by Technical Committee ISO/IEC JTC1, Information technology, in collaboration with the Object Management Group (OMG), following the submission and processing as a Publicly Available Specification (PAS) of the OMG Business Process Model and Notation (BPMN), version 2.0.1.

ISO/IEC 19510, under the general title Information technology - Open distributed processing - Business Process Model and Notation (BPMN) specification, apart from this introductory material is identical with that for the OMG specification for Business Process Model and Notation, version 2.0.1.
Introduction

The primary goal of BPMN is to provide a notation that is readily understandable by all business users, from the business analysts that create the initial drafts of the processes, to the technical developers responsible for implementing the technology that will perform those processes, and finally, to the business people who will manage and monitor those processes. Thus, BPMN creates a standardized bridge for the gap between the business process design and process implementation.

This specification represents the amalgamation of best practices within the business modeling community to define the notation and semantics of Collaboration diagrams, Process diagrams, and Choreography diagrams. The intent of BPMN is to standardize a business process model and notation in the face of many different modeling notations and viewpoints. In doing so, BPMN will provide a simple means of communicating process information to other business users, process implementers, customers, and suppliers.

The specification provided by this International Standard is identical to OMG BPMN 2.0.1.
1 Scope

1.1 General

The Object Management Group (OMG) has developed a standard Business Process Model and Notation (BPMN). The primary goal of BPMN is to provide a notation that is readily understandable by all business users, from the business analysts that create the initial drafts of the processes, to the technical developers responsible for implementing the technology that will perform those processes, and finally, to the business people who will manage and monitor those processes. Thus, BPMN creates a standardized bridge for the gap between the business process design and process implementation.

Another goal, but no less important, is to ensure that XML languages designed for the execution of business processes, such as WSBPEL (Web Services Business Process Execution Language), can be visualized with a business-oriented notation.

This International Standard represents the amalgamation of best practices within the business modeling community to define the notation and semantics of Collaboration diagrams, Process diagrams, and Choreography diagrams. The intent of BPMN is to standardize a business process model and notation in the face of many different modeling notations and viewpoints. In doing so, BPMN will provide a simple means of communicating process information to other business users, process implementers, customers, and suppliers.

The membership of the OMG has brought forth expertise and experience with many existing notations and has sought to consolidate the best ideas from these divergent notations into a single standard notation. Examples of other notations or methodologies that were reviewed are UML Activity Diagram, UML EDOC Business Processes, IDEF, ebXML BPSS, Activity-Decision Flow (ADF) Diagram, RosettaNet, LOVeM, and Event-Process Chains (EPCs).

2 Conformance

2.1 General

Software can claim compliance or conformance with BPMN 2.0 if and only if the software fully matches the applicable compliance points as stated in the International Standard. Software developed only partially matching the applicable compliance points can claim only that the software was based on this International Standard, but cannot claim compliance or conformance with this International Standard. The International Standard defines four types of conformance namely Process Modeling Conformance, Process Execution Conformance, BPEL Process Execution Conformance, and Choreography Modeling Conformance.
The implementation claiming conformance to **Process Modeling Conformance** type is NOT REQUIRED to support **Choreography Modeling Conformance** type and vice-versa. Similarly, the implementation claiming **Process Execution Conformance** type is NOT REQUIRED to be conformant to the **Process Modeling** and **Choreography Conformance** types.

The implementation claiming conformance to the **Process Modeling Conformance type** SHALL comply with all of the requirements set forth in sub clause 2.1. The implementation claiming conformance to the **Process Execution Conformance type** SHALL comply with all of the requirements set forth in sub clause 2.2. The implementation claiming conformance to the **BPEL Process Execution Semantics Conformance type** SHALL comply with all of the requirements set forth in sub clause 2.3. The implementation claiming conformance to the **Choreography Conformance type** SHALL comply with all of the requirements set forth in sub clause 2.4. The implementation is said to have **BPMN Complete Conformance** if it complies with all of the requirements stated in sub clauses 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, and 2.4.

### 2.2 Process Modeling Conformance

The next eight sub clauses describe **Process Modeling Conformance**.

#### 2.2.1 BPMN Process Types

The implementations claiming **Process Modeling Conformance** MUST support the following **BPMN** packages:

- **The BPMN core elements**, which include those defined in the *Infrastructure*, *Foundation*, *Common*, and *Service* packages (see Clause 8).
- **Process diagrams**, which include the elements defined in the *Process*, *Activities*, *Data*, and *Human Interaction* packages (see Clause 10).
- **Collaboration diagrams**, which include *Pools* and *Message Flow* (see Clause 9).
- **Conversation diagrams**, which include *Pools*, *Conversations*, and *Conversation Links* (see Clause 9).

As an alternative to full **Process Modeling Conformance**, there are three conformance sub-classes defined:

- **Descriptive**
- **Analytic**
- **Common Executable**

**Descriptive** is concerned with visible elements and attributes used in high-level modeling. It should be comfortable for analysts who have used BPA flowcharting tools.

**Analytic** contains all of **Descriptive** and in total about half of the constructs in the full **Process Modeling Conformance** Class. It is based on experience gathered in BPMN training and an analysis of user-patterns in the Department of Defense Architecture Framework and planned standardization for that framework.

Both **Descriptive** and **Analytic** focus on visible elements and a minimal subset of supporting attributes/elements.

**Common Executable** focuses on what is needed for executable process models.

Elements and attributes not in these sub-classes are contained in the full **Process Modeling Conformance** class.

The elements for each sub-class are defined in the next sub clause.
2.2.2 BPMN Process Elements

The Process Modeling Conformance type set consists of Collaboration and Process diagram elements, including all Task types, embedded Sub-Processes, CallActivity, all Gateway types, all Event types (Start, Intermediate, and End), Lane, Participants, Data Object (including DataInput and DataOutput), Message, Group, Text Annotation, Sequence Flow (including conditional and default flows), Message Flow, Conversations (limited to grouping Message Flow, and associating correlations), Correlation, and Association (including Compensation Association). The set also includes markers (Loop, Multi-Instance, Transaction, Compensation) for Tasks and embedded Sub-Processes).

NOTE: Implementations are not expected to support Choreography modeling elements such as Choreography Task and Sub-Choreography.

For a tool to claim support for a sub-class the following criteria MUST be satisfied:

◆ All the elements in the sub-class MUST be supported.
◆ For each element, all the listed attributes MUST be supported.
◆ In general, if the sub-class doesn’t mention an attribute and it is NOT REQUIRED by the schema, then it is not in the subclass. Exceptions to this rule are noted.

Descriptive Conformance Sub-Class

The Descriptive conformance sub-class elements are shown in Table 2.1.

Table 2.1 – Descriptive Conformance Sub-Class Elements and Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>participant (pool)</td>
<td>id, name, processRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laneSet</td>
<td>id, lane with name, childLaneSet, flowElementRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequenceFlow (unconditional)</td>
<td>id, name, sourceRef, targetRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>messageFlow</td>
<td>id, name, sourceRef, targetRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exclusiveGateway</td>
<td>id, name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parallelGateway</td>
<td>id, name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>task (None)</td>
<td>id, name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userTask</td>
<td>id, name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serviceTask</td>
<td>id, name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subProcess (expanded)</td>
<td>id, name, flowElement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subProcess (collapsed)</td>
<td>id, name, flowElement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CallActivity</td>
<td>id, name, calledElement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataObject</td>
<td>id, name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Analytic Conformance Sub-Class

The Analytic conformance sub-class contains all the elements of the Descriptive conformance sub-class plus the elements shown in Table 2.2.

### Table 2.2 – Analytic Conformance Sub-Class Elements and Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sequenceFlow (conditional)</td>
<td>id, name, sourceRef, targetRef, conditionExpression(^a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequenceFlow (default)</td>
<td>id, name, sourceRef, targetRef, default(^b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sendTask</td>
<td>id, name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receiveTask</td>
<td>id, name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Looping Activity</td>
<td>standardLoopCharacteristics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiInstance Activity</td>
<td>multiInstanceLoopCharacteristics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2.2 – Analytic Conformance Sub-Class Elements and Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element Description</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exclusiveGateway</td>
<td>Add default attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inclusiveGateway</td>
<td>id, name, eventGatewayType</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eventBasedGateway</td>
<td>id, name, eventGatewayType</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link catch/throw Intermediate Event</td>
<td>Id, name, linkEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signalStartEvent</td>
<td>id, name, signalEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signalEndEvent</td>
<td>id, name, signalEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catching message Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, messageEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throwing message Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, messageEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boundary message Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, attachedToRef, messageEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting Boundary message Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, attachedToRef, cancelActivity=false, messageEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catching timer Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, timerEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boundary timer Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, attachedToRef, timerEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting Boundary timer Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, attachedToRef, cancelActivity=false, timerEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boundary error Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, attachedToRef, errorEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>errorEndEvent</td>
<td>id, name, errorEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting Boundary escalation Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, attachedToRef, cancelActivity=false, escalationEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throwing escalation Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, escalationEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>escalationEndEvent</td>
<td>id, name, escalationEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catching signal Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, signalEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throwing signal Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, signalEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boundary signal Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, attachedToRef, signalEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting Boundary signal Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, attachedToRef, cancelActivity=false, signalEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conditionalStartEvent</td>
<td>id, name, conditionalEventDefinition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Common Executable Conformance Sub-Class

This conformance sub-class is intended for modeling tools that can emit executable models.

- Data type definition language MUST be XML Schema.
- Service Interface definition language MUST be WSDL.
- Data access language MUST be XPath.

The **Common Executable** conformance sub-class elements are shown in Table 2.3 and its supporting classes in Table 2.4.

### Table 2.3 – Common Executable Conformance Sub-Class Elements and Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sequenceFlow (unconditional)</td>
<td>id, (name), sourceRef(^a), targetRef(^b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequenceFlow (conditional)</td>
<td>id, name, sourceRef, targetRef, conditionExpression(^c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequenceFlow (default)</td>
<td>id, name, sourceRef, targetRef, default(^d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subProcess (expanded)</td>
<td>id, name, flowElement, loopCharacteristics, boundaryEventRefs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exclusiveGateway</td>
<td>id, name, gatewayDirection (only converging and diverging), default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parallelGateway</td>
<td>id, name, gatewayDirection (only converging and diverging)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>startEvent (None)</td>
<td>id, name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endEvent (None)</td>
<td>id, name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eventBasedGateway</td>
<td>id, name, gatewayDirection, eventGatewayType</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userTask</td>
<td>id, name, renderings, implementation, resources, ioSpecification, dataInputAssociations, dataOutputAssociations, loopCharacteristics, boundaryEventRefs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

\(^a\) ConditionExpression, allowed only for **Sequence Flow** out of **Gateways**, MAY be null.

\(^b\) Default is an attribute of a sourceRef (exclusive or inclusive) **Gateway**.

\(^c\) Note that messageRef, an attribute of various message **Events**, is optional and not in the sub-class.
Table 2.3 – Common Executable Conformance Sub-Class Elements and Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>serviceTask</td>
<td>id, name, implementation, operationRef, ioSpecification, dataInputAssociations, dataOutputAssociations, loopCharacteristics, boundaryEventRefs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>callActivity</td>
<td>id, name, calledElement, ioSpecification, dataInputAssociations, dataOutputAssociations, loopCharacteristics, boundaryEventRefs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dataObject</td>
<td>id, name, isCollection, itemSubjectRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>textAnnotation</td>
<td>id, text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dataAssociation</td>
<td>id, name, sourceRef, targetRef, assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>messageStartEvent</td>
<td>id, name, messageEventDefinition (either ref or contained), dataOutput, dataOutputAssociations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>messageEndEvent</td>
<td>id, name, messageEventDefinition, (either ref or contained), dataInput, dataInputAssociations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terminateEndEvent</td>
<td>(Terminating trigger in combination with one of the other end events)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catching message Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, messageEventDefinition (either ref or contained), dataOutput, dataOutputAssociations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throwing message Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, messageEventDefinition (either ref or contained), dataInput, dataInputAssociations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catching timer Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, timerEventDefinition (contained)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boundary error Intermediate Event</td>
<td>id, name, attachedToRef, errorEventDefinition, (contained or referenced), dataOutput, dataOutputAssociations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Multiple outgoing connections are only allowed for converging Gateways.
b. Multiple outgoing connections are only allowed for diverging Gateways.
c. ConditionExpression, allowed only for Sequence Flow out of Gateways, MAY be null.
d. Default is an attribute of a sourceRef (exclusive or inclusive) Gateway.

Table 2.4 – Common Executable Conformance Sub-Class Supporting Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>StandardLoopCharacteristics</td>
<td>id, loopCondition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiInstanceLoopCharacteristics</td>
<td>id, isSequential, loopDataInput, inputDataItem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rendering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource</td>
<td>id, name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ResourceRole</td>
<td>id, resourceRef, resourceAssignmentExpression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InputOutputSpecification</td>
<td>id, dataInputs, dataOutputs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataInput</td>
<td>id, name, isCollection, itemSubjectRef</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.2.3 Visual Appearance

A key element of BPMN is the choice of shapes and icons used for the graphical elements identified in this International Standard. The intent is to create a standard visual language that all process modelers will recognize and understand. An implementation that creates and displays BPMN Process Diagrams SHALL use the graphical elements, shapes, and markers illustrated in this International Standard.

NOTE: There is flexibility in the size, color, line style, and text positions of the defined graphical elements, except where otherwise specified (see page 41).

The following extensions to a BPMN Diagram are permitted:

- New markers or indicators MAY be added to the specified graphical elements. These markers or indicators could be used to highlight a specific attribute of a BPMN element or to represent a new subtype of the corresponding concept.
- A new shape representing a kind of Artifact MAY be added to a Diagram, but the new Artifact shape SHALL NOT conflict with the shape specified for any other BPMN element or marker.
- Graphical elements MAY be colored, and the coloring MAY have specified semantics that extend the information conveyed by the element as specified in this International Standard.
- The line style of a graphical element MAY be changed, but that change SHALL NOT conflict with any other line style REQUIRED by this International Standard.
- An extension SHALL NOT change the specified shape of a defined graphical element or marker (e.g., changing a square into a triangle, or changing rounded corners into squared corners, etc.).

2.2.4 Structural Conformance

An implementation that creates and displays BPMN diagrams SHALL conform to the specifications and restrictions with respect to the connections and other diagrammatic relationships between graphical elements. Where permitted or requested connections are specified as conditional and based on attributes of the corresponding concepts, the implementation SHALL ensure the correspondence between the connections and the values of those attributes.
NOTE: In general, these connections and relationships have specified semantic interpretations, which specify interactions among the process concepts represented by the graphical elements. Conditional relationships based on attributes represent specific variations in behavior. Structural conformance therefore guarantees the correct interpretation of the diagram as a specification of process, in terms of flows of control and information. Throughout the document, structural specifications will appear in paragraphs using a special shaped bullet: Example: ♦ A TASK MAY be a target for Sequence Flow; it can have multiple incoming Flows. An incoming Flow MAY be from an alternative path and/or parallel paths.

2.2.5 Process Semantics

This International Standard defines many semantic concepts used in defining Processes, and associates them with graphical elements, markers, and connections. To the extent that an implementation provides an interpretation of the BPMN diagram as a semantic specification of Process, the interpretation SHALL be consistent with the semantic interpretation herein specified. In other words, the implementation claiming BPMN Process Modeling Conformance has to support the semantics surrounding the diagram elements expressed in Clause 10.

NOTE: The implementations claiming Process Modeling Conformance are not expected to support the BPMN execution semantics described in Clause 13.

2.2.6 Attributes and Model Associations

This International Standard defines a number of attributes and properties of the semantic elements represented by the graphical elements, markers, and connections. Some of these attributes are purely representational and are so marked, and some have mandated representations. Some attributes are specified as mandatory, but have no representation or only optional representation. And some attributes are specified as optional. For every attribute or property that is specified as mandatory, a conforming implementation SHALL provide some mechanism by which values of that attribute or property can be created and displayed. This mechanism SHALL permit the user to create or view these values for each BPMN element specified to have that attribute or property. Where a graphical representation for that attribute or property is specified as REQUIRED, that graphical representation SHALL be used. Where a graphical representation for that attribute or property is specified as optional, the implementation MAY use either a graphical representation or some other mechanism. If a graphical representation is used, it SHALL be the representation specified. Where no graphical representation for that attribute or property is specified, the implementation MAY use either a graphical representation or some other mechanism. If a graphical representation is used, it SHALL NOT conflict with the specified graphical representation of any other BPMN element.

2.2.7 Extended and Optional Elements

A conforming implementation is NOT REQUIRED to support any element or attribute that is specified herein to be non-normative or informative. In each instance in which this International Standard defines a feature to be “optional,” it specifies whether the option is in:

- how the feature will be displayed,
- whether the feature will be displayed,
- whether the feature will be supported.

A conforming implementation is NOT REQUIRED to support any feature whose support is specified to be optional. If an implementation supports an optional feature, it SHALL support it as specified. A conforming implementation SHALL support any “optional” feature for which the option is only in whether or how it SHALL be displayed.
2.2.8 Visual Interchange

One of the main goals of this International Standard is to provide an interchange format that can be used to exchange BPMN definitions (both domain model and diagram layout) between different tools. The implementation should support the metamodel for Process types specified in sub clause 13.1 to enable portability of process diagrams so that users can take business process definitions created in one vendor’s environment and use them in another vendor’s environment.

2.3 Process Execution Conformance

The next two sub clauses describe Process Execution Conformance.

2.3.1 Execution Semantics

The BPMN execution semantics have been fully formalized in this version of the International Standard. The tool claiming BPMN Execution Conformance type MUST fully support and interpret the operational semantics and Activity life-cycle specified in sub clause 14.2.2. Non-operational elements listed in Clause 14 MAY be ignored by implementations claiming BPMN Execution Conformance type. Conformant implementations MUST fully support and interpret the underlying metamodel.

NOTE: The tool claiming Process Execution Conformance type is not expected to support and interpret Choreography models. The tool claiming Process Execution Conformance type is not expected to support Process Modeling Conformance. More precisely, the tool is not required to support graphical syntax and semantics defined in this International Standard. It MAY use different graphical elements, shapes and markers, than those defined in this International Standard.

2.3.2 Import of Process Diagrams

The tool claiming Process Execution Conformance type MUST support import of BPMN Process diagram types including its definitional Collaboration (see Table 10.1).

2.4 BPEL Process Execution Conformance

Special type of Process Execution Conformance that supports the BPMN mapping to WS-BPEL as specified in sub clause 15.1 can claim BPEL Process Execution Conformance.

NOTE: The tool claiming BPEL Process Execution Conformance MUST fully support Process Execution Conformance. The tool claiming BPEL Process Execution Conformance is not expected to support and interpret Choreography models. The tool claiming BPEL Process Execution Conformance is not expected to support Process Modeling Conformance.

2.5 Choreography Modeling Conformance

The next five sub clauses describe Choreography Conformance.

2.5.1 BPMN Choreography Types

The implementations claiming Choreography Conformance type MUST support the following BPMN packages:

◆ The BPMN core elements, which include those defined in the Infrastructure, Foundation, Common, and Service packages (see Clause 8).
Choreography diagrams, which includes the elements defined in the Choreography, and Choreography packages (see Clause 11).

Collaboration diagrams, which include Pools and Message Flow (see Clause 9).

2.5.2 BPMN Choreography Elements

The Choreography Conformance set includes Message, Choreography Task, Global Choreography Task, Sub-Choreography (expanded and collapsed), certain types of Start Events (e.g., None, Timer, Conditional, Signal, and Multiple), certain types of Intermediate Events (None, Message attached to Activity boundary, Timer – normal as well as attached to Activity boundary, Timer used in Event Gateways, Cancel attached to an Activity boundary, Conditional, Signal, Multiple, Link, etc.) and certain types of End Events (None and Terminate), and Gateways. In addition, to enable Choreography within Collaboration it should support Pools and Message Flow.

2.5.3 Visual Appearance

An implementation that creates and displays BPMN Choreography Diagrams SHALL use the graphical elements, shapes, and markers as specified in the BPMN International Standard. The use of text, color, size and lines for Choreography diagram types are listed in sub clause 7.4.

2.5.4 Choreography Semantics

The tool claiming Choreography Conformance should fully support and interpret the graphical and execution semantics surrounding Choreography diagram elements and Choreography diagram types.

2.5.5 Visual Interchange

The implementation should support import/export of Choreography diagram types and Collaboration diagram types that depict Choreography within collaboration as specified in sub clause 9.4 to enable portability of Choreography definitions, so that users can take BPMN definitions created in one vendor’s environment and use them in another vendor’s environment.
2.6 Summary of BPMN Conformance Types

Table 2.5 summarizes the requirements for BPMN Conformance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Process Modeling Conformance</th>
<th>Process Execution Conformance</th>
<th>BPEL Process Execution Conformance</th>
<th>Choreography Conformance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Visual representation of BPMN Diagram Types</td>
<td>Process diagram types and Collaboration diagram types depicting collaborations among Process diagram types.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Choreography diagram types and Collaboration diagram types depicting collaboration among Choreography diagram types.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPMN Diagram Elements that need to be supported.</td>
<td>All Task types, embedded Sub-Process, Call Activity, all Event types, all Gateway types, Pool, Lane, Data Object (including DataInput and DataOutput), Message, Group, Artifacts, markers for Tasks and Sub-Processes, Sequence Flow, Associations, and Message Flow.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Message, Choreography Task, Global Choreography Task, Sub-Choreography (expanded and collapsed), certain types of Start, Intermediate, and End Events, Gateways, Pools and Message Flow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for Graphical syntax and semantics</td>
<td>Process and Collaboration diagrams that depict Process within Collaboration.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Choreography and Collaboration diagrams depicting Choreography within Collaboration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for Execution Semantics</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Yes for Process diagrams</td>
<td>Yes for Process diagrams</td>
<td>Choreography execution semantics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Normative References

3.1 General

The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of this document. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.
3.2 Normative

OMG UML
• OMG Unified Modeling Language (OMG UML), Superstructure, V2.1.2 -
  http://www.omg.org/spec/UML/2.1.2/Superstructure

OMG MOF
• Object Management Group - Meta Object Facility (MOF) Core Specification, V2.0
  http://www.omg.org/spec/MOF/2.0

RFC-2119
• Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels, S. Bradner, IETF RFC 2119, March 1997
  http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt

3.3 Non-Normative

Activity Service
• Additional Structuring Mechanism for the OTS Specification, OMG, June 1999
  http://www.omg.org

• J2EE Activity Service for Extended Transactions (JSR 95), JCP
  http://www.jcp.org/jsr/detail/95.jsp

BPEL4People
• WS-BPEL Extension for People (BPEL4People) Specification Version 1.1, Committee Specification,
  17 August 2010
  http://docs.oasis-open.org/bpel4people/bpel4people-1.1-spec-cs-01.html

Business Process Definition Metamodel
• OMG, May 2008,

Business Process Modeling
  http://www.ebpml.org/ebpml2.2.doc

Business Transaction Protocol
• OASIS BTP Technical Committee, June, 2002
Dublin Core Meta Data

- Dublin Core Metadata Element Set, Dublin Core Metadata Initiative
  http://dublincore.org/documents/dces/

ebXML BPSS

- Jean-Jacques Dubray, “A new model for ebXML BPSS Multi-party Collaborations and Web Services Choreography,”
  2002
  http://www.ebpml.org/ebpml.doc

Open Nested Transactions

- Concepts and Applications of Multilevel Transactions and Open Nested Transactions, Gerhard Weikum, Hans-J. Schek, 1992
  http://citeseer.nj.nec.com/weikum92concepts.html

RDF

- RDF Vocabulary Description Language 1.0: RDF Schema, W3C Working Draft
  http://www.w3.org/TR/rdf-schema/

SOAP 1.2

  http://www.w3.org/TR/soap12-part1/
  http://www.w3.org/TR/soap12-part2/

UDDI

- Universal Description, Discovery and Integration, Ariba, IBM and Microsoft, UDDI.org.
  http://www.uddi.org

URI

  http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2396.txt

WfMC Glossary

- Workflow Management Coalition Terminology and Glossary

Web Services Transaction

- (WS-Transaction) 1.1, OASIS, 12 July 2007,
  http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/ws-tx/
Workflow Patterns

  http://www.workflowpatterns.com/

WSBPEL

- Web Services Business Process Execution Language (WSBPEL) 2.0, OASIS Standard, April 2007
  http://docs.oasis-open.org/wsbpel/2.0/OS/wsbpel-v2.0-OS.html

WS-Coordination

- Web Services Coordination (WS-Coordination) 1.1, OASIS Standard, July 2007
  http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/ws-tx/

WSDL

- Web Services Description Language (WSDL) 2.0, W3C Proposed Recommendation, June 2007
  http://www.w3.org/TR/wsd120/

WS-HumanTask

- Web Services Human Task (WS-HumanTask) 1.1, August 2010
  http://docs.oasis-open.org/bpel4people/ws-humantask-1.1-spec-cs-01.html

XML 1.0 (Second Edition)

  http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml

XML-Namespace

- Namespaces in XML, Tim Bray et al., eds., W3C, 14 January 1999
  http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml-names

XML-Schema

  http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-1/
  http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/

XPath

- XML Path Language (XPath) 1.0, James Clark and Steve DeRose, eds., W3C, 16 November 1999
  http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath
XPDL


4 Terms and Definitions

NOTE: See Annex C - Glossary.

5 Symbols

NOTE: There are no symbols defined.

6 Additional Information

6.1 Conventions

The sub clause introduces the conventions used in this document. This includes (text) notational conventions and notations for schema components. Also included are designated namespace definitions.

6.1.1 Typographical and Linguistic Conventions and Style

This International Standard incorporates the following conventions:

- The keywords “MUST,” “MUST NOT,” “REQUIRED,” “SHALL,” “MUST NOT,” “SHOULD,” “SHOULD NOT,” “RECOMMENDED,” “MAY,” and “OPTIONAL” in this document are to be interpreted as described in RFC-2119.
- A term is a word or phrase that has a special meaning. When a term is defined, the term name is highlighted in bold typeface.
- A reference to another definition, sub clause, or specification is highlighted with underlined typeface and provides a link to the relevant location in this International Standard.
- A reference to a graphical element is highlighted with a bold, capitalized word and will be presented with the Arial font (e.g., Sub-Process).
- A reference to a non-graphical element or BPMN concept is highlighted by being italicized and will be presented with the Times New Roman font (e.g., token).
- A reference to an attribute or model association will be presented with the Courier New font (e.g., Expression).
- A reference to a WSBPEL element, attribute, or construct is highlighted with an italic lower-case word, usually preceded by the word “WSBPEL” and will be presented with the Courier New font (e.g., WSBPEL pick).
- Non-normative examples are set off in boxes and accompanied by a brief explanation.
• XML and pseudo code is highlighted with mono-spaced typeface. Different font colors MAY be used to highlight the different components of the XML code.

• The cardinality of any content part is specified using the following operators:
  • <none> — exactly once
  • [0..1] — 0 or 1
  • [0..*] — 0 or more
  • [1..*] — 1 or more

• Attributes separated by | and grouped within { and } — alternative values
  • <value> — default value
  • <type> — the type of the attribute

6.1.2 Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used throughout:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>This abbreviation</th>
<th>Refers to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WSBPEL</td>
<td>Web Services Business Process Execution Language (see WSBPEL). This abbreviation refers specifically to version 2.0 of this International Standard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WSDL</td>
<td>Web Service Description Language (see WSDL). This abbreviation refers specifically to the W3C Technical Note, 15 March 2001, but is intended to support future versions of the WSDL specification.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.2 Structure of this Document

Clause 1 discusses the scope of the document and provides a summary of the elements introduced in subsequent clauses of the document.

Clause 7 introduces the BPMN Core that includes basic BPMN elements needed for constructing various Business Processes, including collaborations, orchestration Processes and Choreographies.

Elements needed for modeling of Collaborations, orchestration Processes, Conversations, and Choreographies are introduced in Clauses 8, 9, 10 and 11, respectively.

Clause 13 introduces the BPMN visual diagram model. Clause 14 defines the execution semantics for Process orchestrations in BPMN 2.0. Clause 14 discusses a mapping of a BPMN model to WS-BPEL that is derived by analyzing the BPMN objects and the relationships between these objects. Exchange formats and an XSLT transformation between them are provided in Clause 15.

6.3 Acknowledgments

Submitting Organizations

The following companies are formal submitting members of OMG:

• Axway
• International Business Machines
ISO/IEC 19510:2013(E)

- MEGA International
- Oracle
- SAP AG
- Unisys

Supporting Organizations
The following organizations support this International Standard but are not formal submitters:
- Accenture
- Adaptive
- BizAgi
- Bruce Silver Associates
- Capgemini
- Enterprise Agility
- France Telecom
- IDS Scheer
- Intalio
- Metastorm
- Model Driven Solutions
- Nortel
- Red Hat Software
- Software AG
- TIBCO Software
- Vangent

Special Acknowledgments
The following persons were members of the core teams that contributed to the content of this International Standard:

In addition, the following persons contributed valuable ideas and feedback that improved the content and the quality of this International Standard: im Amsden, Mariano Belaunde, Peter Carlson, Cory Casanave, Michele Chinosi, Manoj Das, Robert Lario, Sumeet Malhotra, Henk de Man, David Marston, Neal McWhorter, Edita Mileviciene, Vadim Pevzner, Pete Rivett, Jesus Sanchez, Markus Schacher, Sebastian Stein, and Prasad Yendluri.
7 Overview

7.1 General

There has been much activity in the past few years in developing web service-based XML execution languages for Business Process Management (BPM) systems. Languages such as WSBPEL provide a formal mechanism for the definition of business processes. The key element of such languages is that they are optimized for the operation and inter-operation of BPM Systems. The optimization of these languages for software operations renders them less suited for direct use by humans to design, manage, and monitor Business Processes. WSBPEL has both graph and block structures and utilizes the principles of formal mathematical models, such as pi-calculus\(^1\). This technical underpinning provides the foundation for business process execution to handle the complex nature of both internal and B2B interactions and takes advantage of the benefits of Web services. Given the nature of WSBPEL, a complex Business Process could be organized in a potentially complex, disjointed, and unintuitive format that is handled very well by a software system (or a computer programmer), but would be hard to understand by the business analysts and managers tasked to develop, manage, and monitor the Process. Thus, there is a human level of “inter-operability” or “portability” that is not addressed by these web service-based XML execution languages.

Business people are very comfortable with visualizing Business Processes in a flow-chart format. There are thousands of business analysts studying the way companies work and defining Business Processes with simple flow charts. This creates a technical gap between the format of the initial design of Business Processes and the format of the languages, such as WSBPEL, that will execute these Business Processes. This gap needs to be bridged with a formal mechanism that maps the appropriate visualization of the Business Processes (a notation) to the appropriate execution format (a BPM execution language) for these Business Processes.

Inter-operation of Business Processes at the human level, rather than the software engine level, can be solved with standardization of the Business Process Model and Notation (BPMN). BPMN provides multiple diagrams, which are designed for use by the people who design and manage Business Processes. BPMN also provides a mapping to an execution language of BPM Systems (WSBPEL). Thus, BPMN would provide a standard visualization mechanism for Business Processes defined in an execution optimized business process language.

BPMN provides businesses with the capability of understanding their internal business procedures in a graphical notation and will give organizations the ability to communicate these procedures in a standard manner. Currently, there are scores of Process modeling tools and methodologies. Given that individuals will move from one company to another and that companies will merge and diverge, it is likely that business analysts need to understand multiple representations of Business Processes—potentially different representations of the same Process as it moves through its lifecycle of development, implementation, execution, monitoring, and analysis. Therefore, a standard graphical notation will facilitate the understanding of the performance Collaborations and business transactions within and between the organizations. This will ensure that businesses will understand themselves and participants in their business and will enable organizations to adjust to new internal and B2B business circumstances quickly. BPMN follows the tradition of flowcharting notations for readability and flexibility. In addition, the BPMN execution semantics is fully formalized. The OMG is using the experience of the business process notations that have preceded BPMN to create the next generation notation that combines readability, flexibility, and expandability.

---

**BPMN** will also advance the capabilities of traditional business process notations by inherently handling B2B **Business Process** concepts, such as public and private **Processes** and **Choreographies**, as well as advanced modeling concepts, such as exception handling, transactions, and compensation.

### 7.2 BPMN Scope

This International Standard provides a notation and model for **Business Processes** and an interchange format that can be used to exchange **BPMN Process** definitions (both domain model and diagram layout) between different tools. The goal of the International Standard is to enable portability of **Process** definitions, so that users can take **Process** definitions created in one vendor’s environment and use them in another vendor’s environment.

The **BPMN 2.0.1** International Standard extends the scope and capabilities of the **BPMN 1.2** in several areas:

- Formalizes the execution semantics for all **BPMN** elements.
- Defines an extensibility mechanism for both **Process** model extensions and graphical extensions.
- Refines **Event** composition and correlation.
- Extends the definition of human interactions.
- Defines a **Choreography** model.

This International Standard also resolves known **BPMN 1.2** inconsistencies and ambiguities.

**BPMN** is constrained to support only the concepts of modeling that are applicable to **Business Processes**. This means that other types of modeling done by organizations for business purposes is out of scope for **BPMN**. Therefore, the following are aspects that are out of the scope of this International Standard:

- Definition of organizational models and resources,
- Modeling of functional breakdowns,
- Data and information models,
- Modeling of strategy,
- Business rules models.

Since these types of high-level modeling either directly or indirectly affects **Business Processes**, the relationships between **BPMN** and other high-level business modeling can be defined more formally as **BPMN** and other specifications are advanced.

While **BPMN** shows the flow of data (**Messages**), and the association of data artifacts to **Activities**, it is not a data flow language. In addition, operational simulation, monitoring, and deployment of **Business Processes** are out of scope of this International Standard.

**BPMN 2.0.1** can be mapped to more than one platform dependent process modeling language, e.g., WS-BPEL 2.0. This International Standard includes a mapping of a subset of **BPMN** to WS-BPEL 2.0. Mappings to other emerging standards are considered to be separate efforts.

The International Standard utilizes other standards for defining data types, **Expressions**, and service operations. These standards are XML Schema, XPath, and WSDL, respectively.
7.2.1 Uses of BPMN

Business Process modeling is used to communicate a wide variety of information to a wide variety of audiences. BPMN is designed to cover many types of modeling and allows the creation of end-to-end Business Processes. The structural elements of BPMN allow the viewer to be able to easily differentiate between sections of a BPMN Diagram. There are three basic types of sub-models within an end-to-end BPMN model:

1. Processes (Orchestration), including:
   - Private non-executable (internal) Business Processes
   - Private executable (internal) Business Processes
   - Public Processes
2. Choreographies
3. Collaborations, which can include Processes and/or Choreographies
   - A view of Conversations

Private (Internal) Business Processes

Private Business Processes are those internal to a specific organization. These Processes have been generally called workflow or BPM Processes (see Figure 10.4). Another synonym typically used in the Web services area is the Orchestration of services. There are two types of private Processes: executable and non-executable. An executable Process is a Process that has been modeled for the purpose of being executed according to the semantics defined in Clause 14. Of course, during the development cycle of the Process, there will be stages where the Process does not have enough detail to be “executable.” A non-executable Process is a private Process that has been modeled for the purpose of documenting Process behavior at a modeler-defined level of detail. Thus, information needed for execution, such as formal condition Expressions are typically not included in a non-executable Process.

If a swimlanes-like notation is used (e.g., a Collaboration, see below) then a private Business Process will be contained within a single Pool. The Process flow is therefore contained within the Pool and cannot cross the boundaries of the Pool. The flow of Messages can cross the Pool boundary to show the interactions that exist between separate private Business Processes.

![Diagram](image)

Figure 7.1 – Example of a private Business Process

Public Processes

A public Process represents the interactions between a private Business Process and another Process or Participant (see Figure 7.2). Only those Activities that are used to communicate to the other Participant(s) are included in the public Process. All other “internal” Activities of the private Business Process are not shown in the public Process. Thus, the public Process shows to the outside world the Message Flows and the order of those Message Flows that are needed to interact with that Process. Public Processes can be modeled separately or within a Collaboration to show the flow of Messages between the public Process Activities and other Participants. Note that the public type of Process was named “abstract” in BPMN 1.2.
Collaborations

A Collaboration depicts the interactions between two or more business entities. A Collaboration usually contains two or more Pools, representing the Participants in the Collaboration. The Message exchange between the Participants is shown by a Message Flow that connects two Pools (or the objects within the Pools). The Messages associated with the Message Flows can also be shown. The Collaboration can be shown as two or more public Processes communicating with each other (see Figure 7.3). With a public Process, the Activities for the Collaboration participants can be considered the “touch-points” between the participants. The corresponding internal (executable) Processes are likely to have much more Activity and detail than what is shown in the public Processes. Or a Pool MAY be empty, a “black box.” Choreographies MAY be shown “in between” the Pools as they bisect the Message Flows between the Pools. All combinations of Pools, Processes, and a Choreography are allowed in a Collaboration.
Figure 7.3 – An example of a Collaborative Process

Choreographies

A self-contained Choreography (no Pools or Orchestration) is a definition of the expected behavior, basically a procedural contract, between interacting Participants. While a normal Process exists within a Pool, a Choreography exists between Pools (or Participants).

The Choreography looks similar to a private Business Process since it consists of a network of Activities, Events, and Gateways (see Figure 7.4). However, a Choreography is different in that the Activities are interactions that represent a set (1 or more) of Message exchanges, which involves two or more Participants. In addition, unlike a normal Process, there is no central controller, responsible entity, or observer of the Process.

Figure 7.4 – An example of a Choreography
Conversations

The **Conversation** diagram is a particular usage of and an informal description of a **Collaboration** diagram. However, the **Pools** of a **Conversation** usually do not contain a **Process** and a **Choreography** is usually not placed in between the **Pools** of a **Conversation** diagram. A **Conversation** is the logical relation of **Message** exchanges. The logical relation, in practice, often concerns a business object(s) of interest, e.g., “Order,” “Shipment and Delivery,” or “Invoice.”

**Message** exchanges are related to each other and reflect distinct business scenarios. For example, in logistics, stock replenishments involve the following type scenarios: creation of sales orders; assignment of carriers for shipments combining different sales orders; crossing customs/quarantine; processing payment, and investigating exceptions. Thus, a **Conversation** diagram, as shown in Figure 7.5, shows **Conversations** (as hexagons) between **Participants** (**Pools**). This provides a “bird’s eye” perspective of the different **Conversations** that relate to the domain.

![Figure 7.5 – An example of a Conversation diagram](image_url)

**Diagram Point of View**

Since a **BPMN** Diagram **MAY** depict the **Processes** of different Participants, each Participant could view the Diagram differently. That is, the Participants have different points of view regarding how the **Processes** will apply to them. Some of the **Activities** will be internal to the Participant (meaning performed by or under control of the Participant) and other **Activities** will be external to the Participant. Each Participant will have a different perspective as to which are internal and external. At runtime, the difference between internal and external **Activities** is important in how a Participant can...
view the status of the Activities or troubleshoot any problems. However, the Diagram itself remains the same. Figure 7.3 displays a Business Process that has two points of view. One point of view is of a Patient, the other is of the Doctor’s office. The Diagram shows the Activities of both participants in the Process, but when the Process is actually being performed, each Participant will only have control over their own Activities. Although the Diagram point of view is important for a viewer of the Diagram to understand how the behavior of the Process will relate to that viewer, BPMN will not currently specify any graphical mechanisms to highlight the point of view. It is open to the modeler or modeling tool vendor to provide any visual cues to emphasize this characteristic of a Diagram.

Understanding the Behavior of Diagrams

Throughout this International Standard, we discuss how Sequence Flows are used within a Process. To facilitate this discussion, we employ the concept of a token that will traverse the Sequence Flows and pass through the elements in the Process. A token is a theoretical concept that is used as an aid to define the behavior of a Process that is being performed. The behavior of Process elements can be defined by describing how they interact with a token as it “traverses” the structure of the Process. However, modeling and execution tools that implement BPMN are NOT REQUIRED to implement any form of token.

A Start Event generates a token that MUST eventually be consumed at an End Event (which MAY be implicit if not graphically displayed). The path of tokens should be traceable through the network of Sequence Flows, Gateways, and Activities within a Process.

NOTE: A token does not traverse a Message Flow since it is a Message that is passed down a Message Flow (as the name implies).

7.3 BPMN Elements

It should be emphasized that one of the drivers for the development of BPMN is to create a simple and understandable mechanism for creating Business Process models, while at the same time being able to handle the complexity inherent to Business Processes. The approach taken to handle these two conflicting requirements was to organize the graphical aspects of the notation into specific categories. This provides a small set of notation categories so that the reader of a BPMN diagram can easily recognize the basic types of elements and understand the diagram. Within the basic categories of elements, additional variation and information can be added to support the requirements for complexity without dramatically changing the basic look and feel of the diagram. The five basic categories of elements are:

1. Flow Objects
2. Data
3. Connecting Objects
4. Swimlanes
5. Artifacts

Flow Objects are the main graphical elements to define the behavior of a Business Process. There are three Flow Objects:

1. Events
2. Activities
3. Gateways

Data is represented with the four elements:
1. Data Objects
2. Data Inputs
3. Data Outputs
4. Data Stores

There are four ways of connecting the Flow Objects to each other or other information. There are four Connecting Objects:

1. Sequence Flows
2. Message Flows
3. Associations
4. Data Associations

There are two ways of grouping the primary modeling elements through “Swimlanes:”

1. Pools
2. Lanes

Artifacts are used to provide additional information about the Process. There are two standardized Artifacts, but modelers or modeling tools are free to add as many Artifacts as necessary. There could be additional BPMN efforts to standardize a larger set of Artifacts for general use or for vertical markets. The current set of Artifacts includes:

- Group
- Text Annotation

### 7.3.1 Basic BPMN Modeling Elements

Table 7.1 displays a list of the basic modeling elements that are depicted by the notation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Notation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Event</td>
<td>An Event is something that “happens” during the course of a Process (see page 237) or a Choreography (see page 339). These Events affect the flow of the model and usually have a cause (trigger) or an impact (result). Events are circles with open centers to allow internal markers to differentiate different triggers or results. There are three types of Events, based on when they affect the flow: Start, Intermediate, and End.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Event" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity</td>
<td>An Activity is a generic term for work that company performs (see page 149) in a Process. An Activity can be atomic or non-atomic (compound). The types of Activities that are a part of a Process Model are: Sub-Process and Task, which are rounded rectangles. Activities are used in both standard Processes and in Choreographies.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Activity" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 7.1 – Basic Modeling Elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gateway</td>
<td>A Gateway is used to control the divergence and convergence of Sequence Flows in a Process (see page 143) and in a Choreography (see page 344). Thus, it will determine branching, forking, merging, and joining of paths. Internal markers will indicate the type of behavior control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence Flow</td>
<td>A Sequence Flow is used to show the order that Activities will be performed in a Process (see page 95) and in a Choreography (see page 320).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message Flow</td>
<td>A Message Flow is used to show the flow of Messages between two Participants that are prepared to send and receive them (see page 119). In BPMN, two separate Pools in a Collaboration Diagram will represent the two Participants (e.g., PartnerEntities and/or PartnerRoles).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Association</td>
<td>An Association is used to link information and Artifacts with BPMN graphical elements (see page 65). Text Annotations (see page 69) and other Artifacts (see page 64) can be Associated with the graphical elements. An arrowhead on the Association indicates a direction of flow (e.g., data), when appropriate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pool</td>
<td>A Pool is the graphical representation of a Participant in a Collaboration (see page 111). It also acts as a “swimlane” and a graphical container for partitioning a set of Activities from other Pools, usually in the context of B2B situations. A Pool MAY have internal details, in the form of the Process that will be executed. Or a Pool MAY have no internal details, i.e., it can be a “black box.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lane</td>
<td>A Lane is a sub-division within a Process, sometimes within a Pool, and will extend the entire length of the Process, either vertically or horizontally (see on page 304). Lanes are used to organize and categorize Activities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Object</td>
<td>Data Objects provide information about what Activities require to be performed and/or what they produce (see page 204). Data Objects can represent a singular object or a collection of objects. Data Input and Data Output provide the same information for Processes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>A Message is used to depict the contents of a communication between two Participants (as defined by a business PartnerRole or a business PartnerEntity—see on page 91).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.3.2 Extended BPMN Modeling Elements

Table 7.2 displays a more extensive list of the Business Process concepts that could be depicted through a business process modeling notation.

Table 7.2 – BPMN Extended Modeling Elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Notation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Event</td>
<td>An Event is something that “happens” during the course of a Process (see page 237) or a Choreography (see page 339). These Events affect the flow of the model and usually have a cause (Trigger) or an impact (Result). Events are circles with open centers to allow internal markers to differentiate different Triggers or Results. There are three types of Events, based on when they affect the flow: Start, Intermediate, and End.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Flow Dimension (e.g., Start, Intermediate, End)
As the name implies, the Start Event indicates where a particular Process (see page 237) or Choreography (see page 339) will start.

Intermediate Events occur between a Start Event and an End Event. They will affect the flow of the Process (see page 248) or Choreography (see page 340), but will not start or (directly) terminate the Process.

As the name implies, the End Event indicates where a Process (see page 245) or Choreography (see page 343) will end.

The Start and some Intermediate Events have “triggers” that define the cause for the Event (see section entitled “Start Event” on page 237 and section entitled “Intermediate Event” on page 248). There are multiple ways that these events can be triggered. End Events MAY define a “result” that is a consequence of a Sequence Flow path ending. Start Events can only react to (“catch”) a trigger. End Events can only create (“throw”) a result. Intermediate Events can catch or throw triggers. For the Events, triggers that catch, the markers are unfilled, and for triggers and results that throw, the markers are filled.

Additionally, some Events, which were used to interrupt Activities in BPMN 1.1, can now be used in a mode that does not interrupt. The boundary of these Events is dashed (see figure to the right).
### Activity
An Activity is a generic term for work that a company performs (see page 149) in a Process. An Activity can be atomic or non-atomic (compound). The types of Activities that are a part of a Process Model are: Sub-Process and Task, which are rounded rectangles. Activities are used in both standard Processes and in Choreographies.

### Task (Atomic)
A Task is an atomic Activity that is included within a Process (see page 154). A Task is used when the work in the Process is not broken down to a finer level of Process detail.

### Choreography Task
A Choreography Task is an atomic Activity in a Choreography (see page 323). It represents a set of one (1) or more Message exchanges. Each Choreography Task involves two (2) Participants. The name of the Choreography Task and each of the Participants are all displayed in the different bands that make up the shape’s graphical notation. There are two (2) or more Participant Bands and one Task Name Band.

### Process/Sub-Process (non-atomic)
A Sub-Process is a compound Activity that is included within a Process (see page 171) or Choreography (see page 328). It is compound in that it can be broken down into a finer level of detail (a Process or Choreography) through a set of sub-Activities.

### Collapsed Sub-Process
The details of the Sub-Process are not visible in the Diagram (see page 171). A “plus” sign in the lower-center of the shape indicates that the Activity is a Sub-Process and has a lower-level of detail.

### Expanded Sub-Process
The boundary of the Sub-Process is expanded and the details (a Process) are visible within its boundary (see page 171). Note that Sequence Flows cannot cross the boundary of a Sub-Process.

---

**Table 7.2 – BPMN Extended Modeling Elements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Task (Atomic)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>An Activity is a generic term for work that a company performs (see page 149) in a Process. An Activity can be atomic or non-atomic (compound). The types of Activities that are a part of a Process Model are: Sub-Process and Task, which are rounded rectangles. Activities are used in both standard Processes and in Choreographies.</td>
<td>A Task is an atomic Activity that is included within a Process (see page 154). A Task is used when the work in the Process is not broken down to a finer level of Process detail.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Choreography Task</th>
<th>Process/Sub-Process (non-atomic)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A Choreography Task is an atomic Activity in a Choreography (see page 323). It represents a set of one (1) or more Message exchanges. Each Choreography Task involves two (2) Participants. The name of the Choreography Task and each of the Participants are all displayed in the different bands that make up the shape’s graphical notation. There are two (2) or more Participant Bands and one Task Name Band.</td>
<td>A Sub-Process is a compound Activity that is included within a Process (see page 171) or Choreography (see page 328). It is compound in that it can be broken down into a finer level of detail (a Process or Choreography) through a set of sub-Activities.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Collapsed Sub-Process</th>
<th>Expanded Sub-Process</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The details of the Sub-Process are not visible in the Diagram (see page 171). A “plus” sign in the lower-center of the shape indicates that the Activity is a Sub-Process and has a lower-level of detail.</td>
<td>The boundary of the Sub-Process is expanded and the details (a Process) are visible within its boundary (see page 171). Note that Sequence Flows cannot cross the boundary of a Sub-Process.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Collapsed Sub-Choreography

The details of the Sub-Choreography are not visible in the Diagram (see page 328). A “plus” sign in the lower-center of the Task Name Band of the shape indicates that the Activity is a Sub-Process and has a lower-level of detail.

### Expanded Sub-Choreography

The boundary of the Sub-Choreography is expanded and the details (a Choreography) are visible within its boundary (see page 328). Note that Sequence Flows cannot cross the boundary of a Sub-Choreography.

### Gateway

A Gateway is used to control the divergence and convergence of Sequence Flows in a Process (see page 286) and in a Choreography (see page 344). Thus, it will determine branching, forking, merging, and joining of paths. Internal markers will indicate the type of behavior control (see below).

---

**Table 7.2 – BPMN Extended Modeling Elements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Collapsed Sub-Choreography</th>
<th>The details of the Sub-Choreography are not visible in the Diagram (see page 328). A “plus” sign in the lower-center of the Task Name Band of the shape indicates that the Activity is a Sub-Process and has a lower-level of detail.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Participant A</td>
<td>Participant B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Choreography Name</td>
<td>Participant A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participant B</td>
<td>Participant C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expanded Sub-Choreography</th>
<th>The boundary of the Sub-Choreography is expanded and the details (a Choreography) are visible within its boundary (see page 328). Note that Sequence Flows cannot cross the boundary of a Sub-Choreography.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Participant A</td>
<td>Participant A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participant C</td>
<td>Participant C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Choreography Name</td>
<td>Participant B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gateway</th>
<th>A Gateway is used to control the divergence and convergence of Sequence Flows in a Process (see page 286) and in a Choreography (see page 344). Thus, it will determine branching, forking, merging, and joining of paths. Internal markers will indicate the type of behavior control (see below).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Participant A</td>
<td>Participant A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participant B</td>
<td>Participant B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

© ISO/IEC 2013 - All rights reserved
Gateway Control Types Icons within the diamond shape of the Gateway will indicate the type of flow control behavior. The types of control include:

- Exclusive decision and merging. Both Exclusive (see page 289) and Event-Based (see page 296) perform exclusive decisions and merging Exclusive can be shown with or without the “X” marker.
- Event-Based and Parallel Event-based gateways can start a new instance of the Process.
- Inclusive Gateway decision and merging (see page 291).
- Complex Gateway -- complex conditions and situations (e.g., 3 out of 5; page 294).
- Parallel Gateway forking and joining (see page 292).

Each type of control affects both the incoming and outgoing flow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gateway Control Types</th>
<th>Icons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exclusive</td>
<td>![Exclusive icon] or ![X icon]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event-Based</td>
<td>![Event-Based icon]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallel Event-Based</td>
<td>![Parallel Event-Based icon]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inclusive</td>
<td>![Inclusive icon]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex</td>
<td>![Complex icon]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallel</td>
<td>![Parallel icon]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sequence Flow A Sequence Flow is used to show the order that Activities will be performed in a Process (see page 95) and in a Choreography (see page 320).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence Flow</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A Sequence Flow is used to show the order that Activities will be performed in a Process (see page 95) and in a Choreography (see page 320).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Normal Flow Normal flow refers to paths of Sequence Flow that do not start from an Intermediate Event attached to the boundary of an Activity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Normal Flow</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal flow refers to paths of Sequence Flow that do not start from an Intermediate Event attached to the boundary of an Activity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Uncontrolled flow Uncontrolled flow refers to flow that is not affected by any conditions or does not pass through a Gateway. The simplest example of this is a single Sequence Flow connecting two Activities. This can also apply to multiple Sequence Flows that converge to or diverge from an Activity. For each uncontrolled Sequence Flows a token will flow from the source object through the Sequence Flows to the target object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Uncontrolled flow</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uncontrolled flow refers to flow that is not affected by any conditions or does not pass through a Gateway. The simplest example of this is a single Sequence Flow connecting two Activities. This can also apply to multiple Sequence Flows that converge to or diverge from an Activity. For each uncontrolled Sequence Flows a token will flow from the source object through the Sequence Flows to the target object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 7.2 – BPMN Extended Modeling Elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditional flow</th>
<th>A Sequence Flow can have a condition Expression that are evaluated at runtime to determine whether or not the Sequence Flow will be used (i.e., will a token travel down the Sequence Flow – see page 95). If the conditional flow is outgoing from an Activity, then the Sequence Flow will have a mini-diamond at the beginning of the connector (see figure to the right). If the conditional flow is outgoing from a Gateway, then the line will not have a mini-diamond (see figure in the row above).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default flow</td>
<td>For Data-Based Exclusive Gateways or Inclusive Gateways, one type of flow is the Default condition flow (see page 95). This flow will be used only if all the other outgoing conditional flow is not true at runtime. These Sequence Flows will have a diagonal slash will be added to the beginning of the connector (see the figure to the right).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exception Flow</td>
<td>Exception flow occurs outside the normal flow of the Process and is based upon an Intermediate Event attached to the boundary of an Activity that occurs during the performance of the Process (see page 286).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message Flow</td>
<td>A Message Flow is used to show the flow of Messages between two Participants that are prepared to send and receive them (see page 119). In BPMN, two separate Pools in a Collaboration Diagram will represent the two Participants (e.g., PartnerEntities and/or PartnerRoles).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compensation Association</td>
<td>Compensation Association occurs outside the normal flow of the Process and is based upon a Compensation Intermediate Event that is triggered through the failure of a transaction or a throw Compensation Event (see page 301). The target of the Association MUST be marked as a Compensation Activity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 7.2 – BPMN Extended Modeling Elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Object</th>
<th>Data Objects provide information about what Activities require to be performed and/or what they produce (see page 204). Data Objects can represent a singular object or a collection of objects. Data Input and Data Output provide the same information for Processes.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>A Message is used to depict the contents of a communication between two Participants (as defined by a business PartnerRole or a business PartnerEntity—see on page 91).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Fork        | BPMN uses the term “fork” to refer to the dividing of a path into two or more parallel paths (also known as an AND-Split). It is a place in the Process where activities can be performed concurrently, rather than sequentially. There are two options:  
  - Multiple Outgoing Sequence Flows can be used (see figure top-right). This represents “uncontrolled” flow is the preferred method for most situations.  
  - A Parallel Gateway can be used (see figure bottom-right). This will be used rarely, usually in combination with other Gateways. |
### Table 7.2 – BPMN Extended Modeling Elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Join</strong></td>
<td>BPMN uses the term “join” to refer to the combining of two or more parallel paths into one path (also known as an AND-Join or synchronization). A Parallel Gateway is used to show the joining of multiple Sequence Flows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Decision, Branching Point</strong></td>
<td>Decisions are Gateways within a Process (see page 286) or a Choreography (see page 344) where the flow of control can take one or more alternative paths. See next five rows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exclusive</strong></td>
<td>This Decision represents a branching point where Alternatives are based on conditional Expressions contained within the outgoing Sequence Flows (see page 289 or page 344). Only one of the Alternatives will be chosen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Event-Based**  | This Decision represents a branching point where Alternatives are based on an Event that occurs at that point in the Process (see page 296) or Choreography (see page 349). The specific Event, usually the receipt of a Message, determines which of the paths will be taken. Other types of Events can be used, such as Timer. Only one of the Alternatives will be chosen. There are two options for receiving Messages:  
  - Tasks of Type Receive can be used (see figure top-right).  
  - Intermediate Events of Type Message can be used (see figure bottom-right). |

© ISO/IEC 2013 - All rights reserved
Inclusive

This Decision represents a branching point where Alternatives are based on conditional Expressions contained within the outgoing Sequence Flows (see page 291). In some sense it is a grouping of related independent Binary (Yes/No) Decisions. Since each path is independent, all combinations of the paths MAY be taken, from zero to all. However, it should be designed so that at least one path is taken. A Default Condition could be used to ensure that at least one path is taken.

There are two versions of this type of Decision:
- The first uses a collection of conditional Sequence Flows, marked with mini-diamonds (see top-right figure).
- The second uses an Inclusive Gateway (see bottom-right picture).

Merging

BPMN uses the term “merge” to refer to the exclusive combining of two or more paths into one path (also known as an OR-Join). A Merging Exclusive Gateway is used to show the merging of multiple Sequence Flows (see upper figure to the right). If all the incoming flow is alternative, then a Gateway is not needed. That is, uncontrolled flow provides the same behavior (see lower figure to the right).

Looping

BPMN provides two mechanisms for looping within a Process.

Activity Looping

The attributes of Tasks and Sub-Processes will determine if they are repeated or performed once (see page 189). There are two types of loops: Standard and Multi-Instance. A small looping indicator will be displayed at the bottom-center of the activity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 7.2 – BPMN Extended Modeling Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inclusive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Merging</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Looping</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Activity Looping</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Table 7.2 – BPMN Extended Modeling Elements</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sequence Flow Looping</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Multiple Instances</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Process Break</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transaction</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 7.2 – BPMN Extended Modeling Elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nested/Embedded Sub-Process (Inline Block)</td>
<td>A nested (or embedded) Sub-Process is an activity that shares the same set of data as its parent process (see page 171). This is opposed to a Sub-Process that is independent, re-usable, and referenced from the parent process. Data needs to be passed to the referenced Sub-Process, but not to the nested Sub-Process.</td>
<td>There is no special indicator for nested Sub-Processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group (a box around a group of objects within the same category)</td>
<td>A Group is a grouping of graphical elements that are within the same Category (see page 66). This type of grouping does not affect the Sequence Flows within the Group. The Category name appears on the diagram as the group label. Categories can be used for documentation or analysis purposes. Groups are one way in which Categories of objects can be visually displayed on the diagram.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off-Page Connector</td>
<td>Generally used for printing, this object will show where a Sequence Flow leaves one page and then restarts on the next page. A Link Intermediate Event can be used as an Off-Page Connector.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Association</td>
<td>An Association is used to link information and Artifacts with BPMN graphical elements (see page 65). Text Annotations (see page 69) and other Artifacts (see page 64) can be Associated with the graphical elements. An arrowhead on the Association indicates a direction of flow (e.g., data), when appropriate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text Annotation (attached with an Association)</td>
<td>Text Annotations are a mechanism for a modeler to provide additional text information for the reader of a BPMN Diagram (see page 69).</td>
<td>Descriptive Text Here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pool</td>
<td>A Pool is the graphical representation of a Participant in a Collaboration (see page 111). It also acts as a “swimlane” and a graphical container for partitioning a set of Activities from other Pools, usually in the context of B2B situations. A Pool MAY have internal details, in the form of the Process that will be executed. Or a Pool MAY have no internal details, i.e., it can be a “black box.”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.4 BPMN Diagram Types

The BPMN 2.0.1 aims to cover three basic models of Processes: private Processes (both executable and non-executable), public Processes, and Choreographies. Within and between these three BPMN sub-models, many types of Diagrams can be created. The following are examples of Business Processes that can be modeled using BPMN 2.0.1:

- Detailed executable Business Process.
- As-is or old Business Process.
- To-be or new Business Process.
- A description of expected behavior between two (2) or more business Participants—a Choreography.
- Detailed private Business Process (either executable or non-executable) with interactions to one or more external Entities (or “Black Box” Processes).
- Two or more detailed executable Processes interacting.
- Detailed executable Business Process relationship to a Choreography.
- Two or more public Processes.
- Public Process relationship to Choreography.
- Two or more detailed executable Business Processes interacting through a Choreography.

BPMN is designed to allow describing all above examples of Business Processes. However, the ways that different sub-models are combined is left to tool vendors. A BPMN 2.0.1 compliant implementation could RECOMMEND that modelers pick a focused purpose, such as a private Process, or Choreographies. However, the BPMN 2.0.1 International Standard makes no assumptions.

7.5 Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram

Text Annotation objects can be used by the modeler to display additional information about a Process or attributes of the objects within a BPMN Diagram.

- BPMN elements (e.g., Flow objects) MAY have labels (e.g., its name and/or other attributes) placed inside the shape, or above or below the shape, in any direction or location, depending on the preference of the modeler or modeling tool vendor.
- The fills that are used for the graphical elements MAY be white or clear.
- The notation MAY be extended to use other fill colors to suit the purpose of the modeler or tool (e.g., to highlight the value of an object attribute). However,
  - the markers for “throwing” Events MUST have a dark fill (see “End Event” on page 245 and “Intermediate Event” on page 248 for more details).
<bullet> Participant Bands for Choreography Tasks and Sub-Choreographies that are not the initiator of the Activity MUST have a light fill (see “Choreography Task” on page 323 and “Sub-Choreography” on page 328 for more details).

<bullet> Flow objects and markers MAY be of any size that suits the purposes of the modeler or modeling tool.

<bullet> The lines that are used to draw the graphical elements MAY be black.

<bullet> The notation MAY be extended to use other line colors to suit the purpose of the modeler or tool (e.g., to highlight the value of an object attribute).

<bullet> The notation MAY be extended to use other line styles to suit the purpose of the modeler or tool (e.g., to highlight the value of an object attribute) with the condition that the line style MUST NOT conflict with any current BPMN defined line style. Thus, the line styles of Sequence Flows, Message Flows, and Text Associations MUST NOT be modified or duplicated.

### 7.6 Flow Object Connection Rules

An incoming Sequence Flow can connect to any location on a Flow Object (left, right, top, or bottom). Likewise, an outgoing Sequence Flow can connect from any location on a Flow Object (left, right, top, or bottom). A Message Flow also has this capability.

**NOTE:** BPMN allows this flexibility; however, we also RECOMMEND that modelers use judgment or best practices in how Flow Objects should be connected so that readers of the Diagrams will find the behavior clear and easy to follow. This is even more important when a Diagram contains Sequence Flows and Message Flows. In these situations it is best to pick a direction of Sequence Flows, either left to right or top to bottom, and then direct the Message Flows at a 90° angle to the Sequence Flows. The resulting Diagrams will be much easier to understand.

### 7.6.1 Sequence Flow Connections Rules

Table 7.3 displays the BPMN Flow Objects and shows how these objects can connect to one another through Sequence Flows. These rules apply to the connections within a Process Diagram and within a Choreography Diagram. The symbol indicates that the object listed in the row can connect to the object listed in the column. The quantity of connections into and out of an object is subject to various configuration dependencies are not specified here. Refer to the sub clauses in the next clause for each individual object for more detailed information on the appropriate connection rules. **Note that if a Sub-Process has been expanded within a Diagram, the objects within the Sub-Process cannot be connected to objects outside of the Sub-Process, nor can Sequence Flows cross a Pool boundary.**

**Table 7.3 – Sequence Flow Connection Rules**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>From</th>
<th>To</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Circle" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Circle" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Circle" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Rectangle" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="Diamond" /></td>
<td><img src="image6.png" alt="Circle" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image7.png" alt="Circle" /></td>
<td><img src="image8.png" alt="Circle" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 7.3 – Sequence Flow Connection Rules

|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|

Only those objects that can have incoming and/or outgoing Sequence Flows are shown in the table. Thus, Pool, Lane, Data Object, Group, and Text Annotation are not listed in the table. Also, the Activity shapes in the table represent Activities and Sub-Processes for Processes, and Choreography Activities and Sub-Choreographies for Choreography.

### 7.6.2 Message Flow Connection Rules

Table 7.4 displays the BPMN modeling objects and shows how these objects can connect to one another through Message Flows. These rules apply to the connections within a Collaboration Diagram. The symbol indicates that the object listed in the row can connect to the object listed in the column. The quantity of connections into and out of an object is subject to various configuration dependencies that are not specified here. Refer to the sub clauses in the next clause for each individual object for more detailed information on the appropriate connection rules. Note that Message Flows cannot connect to objects that are within the same Pool.
Only those objects that can have incoming and/or outgoing Message Flows are shown in the table. Thus, Lane, Gateway, Data Object, Group, and Text Annotation are not listed in the table.

### 7.7 BPMN Extensibility

**BPMN 2.0.1** introduces an extensibility mechanism that allows extending standard BPMN elements with additional attributes. It can be used by modelers and modeling tools to add non-standard elements or Artifacts to satisfy a specific need, such as the unique requirements of a vertical domain, and still have valid BPMN Core. Extension attributes MUST NOT contradict the semantics of any BPMN element. In addition, while extensible, BPMN Diagrams should still have the basic look-and-feel so that a Diagram by any modeler should be easily understood by any viewer of the Diagram. Thus the footprint of the basic flow elements (Events, Activities, and Gateways) MUST NOT be altered.

The International Standard differentiates between mandatory and optional extensions (sub clause 8.3.3 explains the syntax used to declare extensions). If a mandatory extension is used, a compliant implementation MUST understand the extension. If an optional extension is used, a compliant implementation MAY ignore the extension.
7.8 BPMN Example

The following is an example of a manufacturing process from different perspectives.

Figure 7.6 – An example of a Collaboration diagram with black-box Pools
Figure 7.7 – An example of a stand-alone Choreography diagram
Figure 7.8 – An example of a stand-alone Process (Orchestration) diagram
8 BPMN Core Structure

8.1 General

NOTE: The content of this clause is REQUIRED for all BPMN conformance types. For more information about BPMN conformance types, see page 1.

The technical structuring of BPMN is based on the concept of extensibility layers on top of a basic series of simple elements identified as Core Elements of the International Standard. From this core set of constructs, layering is used to describe additional elements that extend and add new constructs to the International Standard and relies on clear dependency paths for resolution. The XML Schema model lends itself particularly well to the structuring model with formalized import and resolution mechanics that remove ambiguities in the definitions of elements in the outer layers of the International Standard.

Figure 8.1 – A representation of the BPMN Core and Layer Structure

Figure 8.1 shows the basic principles of layering that can be composed in well defined ways. The approach uses formalization constructs for extensibility that are applied consistently to the definition.

The additional effect of layering is that compatibility layers can be built, allowing for different levels of compliance among vendors, and also enabling vendors to add their own layers in support of different vertical industries or target audiences. In addition, it provides a mechanism for the redefinition of previously existing concepts without affecting backwards compatibility, but defining two or more non-composable layers, the level of compliance with the International Standard and backwards compatibility can be achieved without compromising clarity.
The BPMN International Standard is structured in layers, where each layer builds on top of and extends lower layers. Included is a Core or kernel that includes the most fundamental elements of BPMN, which are REQUIRED for constructing BPMN diagrams: Process, Choreography, and Collaboration. The Core is intended to be simple, concise, and extendable with well defined behavior.

The Core contains four sub-packages (see Figure 8.2):

1. Infrastructure: Two elements that are used for both abstract syntax models and diagram models.
2. Foundation: The fundamental constructs needed for BPMN modeling.
3. Service: The fundamental constructs needed for modeling services and interfaces.
4. Common: Those classes which are common to the layers of Process, Choreography, and Collaboration.

Figure 8.2 – Class diagram showing the core packages.

NOTE: To simplify the diagram, the Infrastructure package is not shown in Figure 8.2.

Figure 8.3 displays the organization of the main set of BPMN core model elements.
8.2 Infrastructure

The BPMN Infrastructure package contains two elements that are used for both abstract syntax models and diagram models.

8.2.1 Definitions

The Definitions class is the outermost containing object for all BPMN elements. It defines the scope of visibility and the namespace for all contained elements. The interchange of BPMN files will always be through one or more Definitions.
Figure 8.4 – Definitions class diagram

The Definitions element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 8.1 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the Definitions element.

Table 8.1 – Definitions attributes and model association

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>The name of the Definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>targetNamespace: string</td>
<td>This attribute identifies the namespace associated with the Definition and follows the convention established by XML Schema.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expressionLanguage: string [0..1]</td>
<td>This attribute identifies the formal Expression language used in Expressions within the elements of this Definition. The Default is “<a href="http://www.w3.org/1999/XPath%E2%80%9D">http://www.w3.org/1999/XPath”</a>. This value MAY be overridden on each individual formal Expression. The language MUST be specified in a URI format.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.2.2 Import

The Import class is used when referencing external element, either BPMN elements contained in other BPMN Definitions or non-BPMN elements. Imports MUST be explicitly defined.

Table 8.2 presents the attributes of Import.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>typeLanguage</strong>: string [0..1]</td>
<td>This attribute identifies the type system used by the elements of this Definition. Defaults to <a href="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema</a>. This value can be overridden on each individual ItemDefinition. The language MUST be specified in a URI format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>rootElements</strong>: RootElement [0..*]</td>
<td>This attribute lists the root elements that are at the root of this Definitions. These elements can be referenced within this Definitions and are visible to other Definitions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>diagrams</strong>: BPMNDiagram [0..*]</td>
<td>This attribute lists the BPMNDiagrams that are contained within this Definitions (see page 365 for more information on BPMNDiagrams).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>imports</strong>: Import [0..*]</td>
<td>This attribute is used to import externally defined elements and make them available for use by elements within this Definitions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>extensions</strong>: Extension [0..*]</td>
<td>This attribute identifies extensions beyond the attributes and model associations in the base BPMN specification. See page 57 for additional information on extensibility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>relationships</strong>: Relationship [0..*]</td>
<td>This attribute enables the extension and integration of BPMN models into larger system/development Processes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>exporter</strong>: string [0..1]</td>
<td>This attribute identifies the tool that is exporting the bpmn model file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>exporterVersion</strong>: string [0..1]</td>
<td>This attribute identifies the version of the tool that is exporting the bpmn model file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 8.2.3 Infrastructure Package XML Schemas

**Table 8.3 – Definitions XML schema**

```xml
<xsd:element name="definitions" type="tDefinitions"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tDefinitions">
    <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="import" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="extension" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="rootElement" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="bpmndi:BPMNDiagram" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="relationship" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attribute name="id" type="xsd:ID" use="optional"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="targetNamespace" type="xsd:anyURI" use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="expressionLanguage" type="xsd:anyURI" use="optional" default="http://www.w3.org/1999/XPath"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="typeLanguage" type="xsd:anyURI" use="optional" default="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="exporter" type="xsd:ID"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="exporterVersion" type="xsd:ID"/>
    <xsd:attribute namespace="##other" processContents="lax"/>
</xsd:complexType>
```
8.3 Foundation

The Foundation package contains classes that are shared among other packages in the Core (see Figure 8.5) of an abstract syntax model.

Figure 8.5 – Classes in the Foundation package
8.3.1 Base Element

BaseElement is the abstract super class for most BPMN elements. It provides the attributes id and documentation, which other elements will inherit.

Table 8.5 presents the attributes and model associations for the BaseElement.

Table 8.5 – BaseElement attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>id: string</td>
<td>This attribute is used to uniquely identify BPMN elements. The id is REQUIRED if this element is referenced or intended to be referenced by something else. If the element is not currently referenced and is never intended to be referenced, the id MAY be omitted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>documentation:</td>
<td>This attribute is used to annotate the BPMN element, such as descriptions and other documentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documentation [0..*]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extensionDefinitions:</td>
<td>This attribute is used to attach additional attributes and associations to any BaseElement. This association is not applicable when the XML schema interchange is used, since the XSD mechanisms for supporting anyAttribute and any element already satisfy this requirement. See page 57 for additional information on extensibility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExtensionDefinition [0..*]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extensionValues:</td>
<td>This attribute is used to provide values for extended attributes and model associations. This association is not applicable when the XML schema interchange is used, since the XSD mechanisms for supporting anyAttribute and any element already satisfy this requirement. See page 57 for additional information on extensibility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExtensionAttributeValue [0..*]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.3.2 Documentation

All BPMN elements that inherit from the BaseElement will have the capability, through the Documentation element, to have one (1) or more text descriptions of that element.

The Documentation element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 8.6 presents the additional attributes of the Documentation element.

Table 8.6 – Documentation attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text: string</td>
<td>This attribute is used to capture the text descriptions of a BPMN element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>textFormat: string</td>
<td>This attribute identifies the format of the text. It MUST follow the mime-type format. The default is &quot;text/plain.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the BPMN schema, the tDocumentation complexType does not contain a text attribute or element. Instead, the documentation text is expected to appear in the body of the documentation element. For example:
8.3.3 Extensibility

The BPMN metamodel is aimed to be extensible. This allows BPMN adopters to extend the specified metamodel in a way that allows them to be still BPMN-compliant.

It provides a set of extension elements, which allows BPMN adopters to attach additional attributes and elements to standard and existing BPMN elements.

This approach results in more interchangeable models, because the standard elements are still intact and can still be understood by other BPMN adopters. It’s only the additional attributes and elements that MAY be lost during interchange.

A BPMN Extension basically consists of four different elements:

1. Extension
2. ExtensionDefinition
3. ExtensionAttributeDefinition
4. ExtensionAttributeValue

Figure 8.6 – Extension class diagram
The core elements of an Extension are the ExtensionDefinition and ExtensionAttributeDefinition. The latter defines a list of attributes that can be attached to any BPMN element. The attribute list defines the name and type of the new attribute. This allows BPMN adopters to integrate any meta model into the BPMN meta model and reuse already existing model elements.

The ExtensionDefinition itself can be created independent of any BPMN element or any BPMN definition.

In order to use an ExtensionDefinition within a BPMN model definition (Definitions element), the ExtensionDefinition MUST be associated with an Extension element that binds the ExtensionDefinition to a specific BPMN model definition. The Extension element itself is contained within the BPMN element Definitions and therefore available to be associated with any BPMN element making use of the ExtensionDefinition.

Every BPMN element which subclasses the BPMN BaseElement can be extended by additional attributes. This works by associating a BPMN element with an ExtensionDefinition, which was defined at the BPMN model definitions level (element Definitions).

Additionally, every “extended” BPMN element contains the actual extension attribute value. The attribute value, defined by the element ExtensionAttributeValue contains the value of type Element. It also has an association to the corresponding attribute definition.

**Extension**

The Extension element binds/imports an ExtensionDefinition and its attributes to a BPMN model definition. Table 8.7 presents the attributes and model associations for the Extension element.

**Table 8.7 – Extension attributes and model associations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mustUnderstand: boolean [0..1] = False</td>
<td>This flag defines if the semantics defined by the extension definition and its attribute definition MUST be understood by the BPMN adopter in order to process the BPMN model correctly. Defaults to False.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definition: ExtensionDefinition</td>
<td>Defines the content of the extension. Note that in the XML schema, this definition is provided by an external XML schema file and is simply referenced by QName.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ExtensionDefinition**

The ExtensionDefinition class defines and groups additional attributes. This type is not applicable when the XML schema interchange is used, since XSD Complex Types already satisfy this requirement.

Table 8.8 presents the attributes and model associations for the ExtensionDefinition element.
ExtensionAttributeDefinition

The `ExtensionAttributeDefinition` defines new attributes. This type is not applicable when the XML schema interchange is used; since the XSD mechanisms for supporting “AnyAttribute” and “Any” type already satisfy this requirement.

Table 8.9 presents the attributes for the `ExtensionAttributeDefinition` element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>The name of the extension attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extensionAttributeDefinitions:</td>
<td>The specific attributes that make up the extension.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExtensionAttributeDefinition [0..*]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8.8 – ExtensionDefinition attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>The name of the extension. This is used as a namespace to uniquely identify the extension content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extensionAttributeDefinitions:</td>
<td>The specific attributes that make up the extension.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExtensionAttributeDefinition [0..*]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ExtensionAttributeValue

The `ExtensionAttributeValue` contains the attribute value. This type is not applicable when the XML schema interchange is used; since the XSD mechanisms for supporting “AnyAttribute” and “Any” type already satisfy this requirement.

Table 8.10 presents the model associations for the `ExtensionAttributeValue` element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>value: [Element [0..1]</td>
<td>The contained attribute value, used when the associated ExtensionAttributeDefinition.isReference is false. The type of this Element MUST conform to the type specified in the associated ExtensionAttributeDefinition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valueRef: [Element [0..1]</td>
<td>The referenced attribute value, used when the associated ExtensionAttributeDefinition.isReference is true. The type of this Element MUST conform to the type specified in the associated ExtensionAttributeDefinition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extensionAttributeDefinition:</td>
<td>Defines the extension attribute for which this value is being provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExtensionAttributeDefinition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Extensibility XML Schemas

Table 8.11 – Extension XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="extension" type="tExtension"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tExtension">
    <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="documentation" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attribute name="definition" type="xsd:QName"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="mustUnderstand" type="xsd:boolean" use="optional"/>
</xsd:complexType>
```

XML Example

This example shows a Task, defined the BPMN Core, being extended with Inputs and Outputs defined outside of the Core.

Table 8.12 – Example Core XML schema

```xml
<xsd:schema ...
    ...
    <xsd:element name="task" type="tTask"/>
    <xsd:complexType name="tTask">
        <xsd:complexContent>
            <xsd:extension base="tActivity"/>
        </xsd:complexContent>
    </xsd:complexType>
    ...
</xsd:schema>
```
8.3.4 External Relationships

It is the intention of this International Standard to cover the basic elements necessary for the construction of semantically rich and syntactically valid Process models to be used in the description of Processes, Choreographies, and business operations in multiple levels of abstraction. As the International Standard indicates, extension capabilities enable the enrichment of the information described in BPMN and supporting models to be augmented to fulfill particularities of a given usage model. These extensions’ intention is to extend the semantics of a given BPMN Artifact to provide specialization of intent or meaning.

Table 8.13 – Example Extension XML schema

```
<xsd:schema ...>
    ...
    <xsd:group name="dataRequirements">
        <xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:element ref="dataInput" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded" />
            <xsd:element ref="dataOutput" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded" />
            <xsd:element ref="inputSet" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded" />
            <xsd:element ref="outputSet" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded" />
        </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:group>
    ...
</xsd:schema>
```

Table 8.14 – Sample XML instance

```
<bpmn:definitions id="ID_1" ...>
    ...
    <bpmn:extension mustUnderstand="true" definition="bpmn:dataRequirements"/>
    ...
    <bpmn:task name="Retrieve Customer Record" id="ID_2">
        <bpmn:dataInput name="Order Input" id="ID_3">
            <bpmn:typeDefinition typeRef="bo:Order" id="ID_4"/>
        </bpmn:dataInput>
        <bpmn:dataOutput name="Customer Record Output" id="ID_5">
            <bpmn:typeDefinition typeRef="bo:CustomerRecord" id="ID_6"/>
        </bpmn:dataOutput>
        <bpmn:inputSet name="Inputs" id="ID_7" dataInputRefs="ID_3"/>
        <bpmn:outputSet name="Outputs" id="ID_8" dataOutputRefs="ID_5"/>
    </bpmn:task>
    ...
</bpmn:definitions>
```
Process models do not exist in isolation and generally participate in larger, more complex business and system development Processes. The intention of the following element is to enable BPMN Artifacts to be integrated in these development Processes via the specification of a non-intrusive identity/relationship model between BPMN Artifacts and elements expressed in any other addressable domain model.

The ‘identity/relationship’ model is reduced to the creation of families of typed relationships that enable BPMN and non-BPMN Artifacts to be related in non-intrusive manner. By simply defining ‘relationship types’ that can be associated with elements in the BPMN Artifacts and arbitrary elements in a given addressable domain model, it enables the extension and integration of BPMN models into larger system/development Processes.

It is that these extensions will enable, for example, the linkage of ‘derivation’ or ‘definition’ relationships between UML artifacts and BPMN Artifacts in novel ways. So, a UML use case could be related to a Process element in the BPMN International Standard without affecting the nature of the Artifacts themselves, but enabling different integration models that traverse specialized relationships.

Simply, the model enables the external specification of augmentation relationships between BPMN Artifacts and arbitrary relationship classification models, these external models, via traversing relationships declared in the external definition allow for linkages between BPMN elements and other structured or non-structured metadata definitions.

The UML model for this International Standard follows a simple extensible pattern as shown below; where named relationships can be established by referencing objects that exist in their given namespaces.

Figure 8.7 – External Relationship Metamodel

The Relationship element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 8.15 presents the additional attributes for the Relationship element.
In this manner you can, for example, create relationships between different artifacts that enable external annotations used for traceability, derivation, arbitrary classifications, etc.

An example where the 'reengineer' relationship is shown between elements in a Visio™ artifact and a BPMN Artifact.

Table 8.15 – Relationship attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>type</strong>: string</td>
<td>The descriptive name of the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>direction</strong>: RelationshipDirection {None</td>
<td>Forward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sources</strong>: [Element [1..*]]</td>
<td>This association defines artifacts that are augmented by the relationship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>targets</strong>: [Element[1..*]]</td>
<td>This association defines artifacts used to extend the semantics of the source element(s).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8.16 – Reengineer XML schema

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
  <import importType="http://office.microsoft.com/visio" location="OrderConfirmationProcess.vsd" namespace="http://www.example.org/Processes/Old"/>
  <relationship type="reengineered" id="a234" direction="both">
    <documentation>An as-is and to-be relationship. The as-is model is expressed as a Visio diagram. The re-engineered process has been split in two and is captured in BPMN 2.0 format.</documentation>
    <source ref="src:OrderConfirmation"/>
    <target ref="tgt:OrderConfirmation_PartI"/>
    <target ref="tgt:OrderConfirmation_PartII"/>
  </relationship>
</definitions>
```
8.3.5 Root Element

RootElement is the abstract super class for all BPMN elements that are contained within Definitions. When contained within Definitions, these elements have their own defined life-cycle and are not deleted with the deletion of other elements. Examples of concrete RootElements include Collaboration, Process, and Choreography. Depending on their use, RootElements can be referenced by multiple other elements (i.e., they can be reused). Some RootElements MAY be contained within other elements instead of Definitions. This is done to avoid the maintenance overhead of an independent life-cycle. For example, an EventDefinition would be contained in a Process since it is used only there. In this case the EventDefinition would be dependent on the tool life-cycle of the Process.

The RootElement element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5), but does not have any further attributes or model associations.

8.3.6 Foundation Package XML Schemas

Table 8.17 – BaseElement XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="baseElement" type="tBaseElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tBaseElement" abstract="true">
  <xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:element ref="documentation" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <xsd:element ref="extensionElements" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
  </xsd:sequence>
  <xsd:attribute name="id" type="xsd:ID" use="optional"/>
  <xsd:anyAttribute namespace="##other" processContents="lax"/>
</xsd:complexType>

<xsd:element name="baseElementWithMixedContent" type="tBaseElementWithMixedContent"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tBaseElementWithMixedContent" abstract="true" mixed="true">
  <xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:element ref="documentation" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <xsd:element ref="extensionElements" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
  </xsd:sequence>
  <xsd:attribute name="id" type="xsd:ID" use="optional"/>
  <xsd:anyAttribute namespace="##other" processContents="lax"/>
</xsd:complexType>

<xsd:element name="extensionElements" type="tExtensionElements"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tExtensionElements">
  <xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:any namespace="##any" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </xsd:sequence>
</xsd:complexType>

<xsd:element name="documentation" type="tDocumentation"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tDocumentation" mixed="true"/>
```
<xsd:sequence>
  <xsd:any namespace="##any" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0"/>
</xsd:sequence>
<xsd:attribute name="id" type="xsd:ID" use="optional"/>
<xsd:attribute name="textFormat" type="xsd:string" default="textplain"/>
</xsd:complexType>

Table 8.18 – RootElement XML schema

<xsd:element name="rootElement" type="tRootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tRootElement" abstract="true">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement"/>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

Table 8.19 – Relationship XML schema

<xsd:element name="relationship" type="tRelationship"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tRelationship">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="source" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element name="target" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="type" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="direction" type="tRelationshipDirection"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

<xsd:simpleType name="tRelationshipDirection">
  <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
    <xsd:enumeration value="None"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="Forward"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="Backward"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="Both"/>
  </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
8.4 Common Elements

The following sub clauses define BPMN elements that MAY be used in more than one type of diagram (e.g., Process, Collaboration, and Choreography).

8.4.1 Artifacts

BPMN provides modelers with the capability of showing additional information about a Process that is not directly related to the Sequence Flows or Message Flows of the Process.

At this point, BPMN provides three standard Artifacts: Associations, Groups, and Text Annotations. Additional Artifacts MAY be added to the BPMN International Standard in later versions. A modeler or modeling tool MAY extend a BPMN diagram and add new types of Artifacts to a Diagram. Any new Artifact MUST follow the Sequence Flow and Message Flow connection rules (listed below). Associations can be used to link Artifacts to Flow Objects (see page 67).

Figure 8.8 shows the Artifacts class diagram. When an Artifact is defined it is contained within a Collaboration or a FlowElementsContainer (a Process or Choreography).

Figure 8.8 – Artifacts Metamodel

Common Artifact Definitions

The following sub clauses provide definitions that are common to all Artifacts.

Artifact Sequence Flow Connections

See “Sequence Flow Connections Rules” on page 40 for the entire set of objects and how they MAY be source or targets of a Sequence Flow.
- An Artifact MUST NOT be a target for a **Sequence Flow**.
- An Artifact MUST NOT be a source for a **Sequence Flow**.

**Artifact Message Flow Connections**

See “Message Flow Connection Rules” on page 41 for the entire set of objects and how they MAY be source or targets of a **Message Flow**.

- An Artifact MUST NOT be a target for a **Message Flow**.
- An Artifact MUST NOT be a source for a **Message Flow**.

**Association**

An **Association** is used to associate information and **Artifacts** with **Flow Objects**. Text and graphical non-**Flow Objects** can be associated with the **Flow Objects** and Flow. An **Association** is also used to show the **Activity** used for compensation. More information about compensation can be found on page 300.

- An **Association** is line that MUST be drawn with a dotted single line (see Figure 8.9).
- The use of text, color, size, and lines for an Association MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39.

------------------

**Figure 8.9 – An Association**

![Association Diagram](image)

**Figure 8.10 – The Association Class Diagram**

If there is a reason to put directionality on the **Association** then:

- A line arrowhead MAY be added to the **Association** line (see Figure 8.11).
- The directionality of the **Association** can be in one (1) direction or in both directions.
Figure 8.11 – A Directional Association

Note that directional Associations were used in BPMN 1.2 to show how Data Objects were inputs or outputs to Activities. In BPMN 2.0.1, a Data Association connector is used to show inputs and outputs (see page 220). A Data Association uses the same notation as a directed Association (as in Figure 8.11, above).

An Association is used to connect user-defined text (an Annotation) with a Flow Object (see Figure 8.12).

Figure 8.12 – An Association of Text Annotation

The Association element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 8.20 presents the additional attributes and model associations for an Association.

Table 8.20 – Association attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>associationDirection: AssociationDirection = None (None</td>
<td>One</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sourceRef: BaseElement</td>
<td>The BaseElement that the Association is connecting from.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>targetRef: BaseElement</td>
<td>The BaseElement that the Association is connecting to.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Group

The Group object is an Artifact that provides a visual mechanism to group elements of a diagram informally. The grouping is tied to the CategoryValue supporting element. That is, a Group is a visual depiction of a single CategoryValue. The graphical elements within the Group will be assigned the CategoryValue of the Group. (NOTE - CategoryValues can be highlighted through other mechanisms, such as color, as defined by a modeler or a modeling tool).

- A Group is a rounded corner rectangle that MUST be drawn with a solid dashed line (as seen in Figure 8.13).
The use of text, color, size, and lines for a **Group** MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39.

**Figure 8.13 – A Group Artifact**

As an **Artifact**, a **Group** is not an **Activity** or any **Flow Object**, and, therefore, cannot connect to **Sequence Flows** or **Message Flows**. In addition, **Groups** are not constrained by restrictions of **Pools** and **Lanes**. This means that a **Group** can stretch across the boundaries of a **Pool** to surround **Diagram** elements (see Figure 8.14), often to identify **Activities** that exist within a distributed business-to-business transaction.

**Figure 8.14 – A Group around Activities in different Pools**

**Groups** are often used to highlight certain sub clauses of a Diagram without adding additional constraints for performance, as a **Sub-Process** would. The highlighted (grouped) sub clause of the Diagram can be separated for reporting and analysis purposes. **Groups** do not affect the flow of the **Process**.

Figure 8.15 shows the **Group** class diagram.
The Group element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5), through its relationship to Artifact. Table 8.21 presents the additional model associations for a Group.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>categoryValueRef: CategoryValue [0..1]</td>
<td>The categoryValueRef attribute specifies the CategoryValue that the Group represents. (Further details about the definition of a Category and CategoryValue can be found on page 70.) The name of the Category and the value of the CategoryValue separated by delineator &quot;:&quot; provides the label for the Group. The graphical elements within the boundaries of the Group will be assigned the CategoryValue.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Category

Categories, which have user-defined semantics, can be used for documentation or analysis purposes. For example, FlowElements can be categorized as being customer oriented vs. support oriented. Furthermore, the cost and time of Activities per Category can be calculated.

Groups are one way in which Categories of objects can be visually displayed on the diagram. That is, a Group is a visual depiction of a single CategoryValue. The graphical elements within the Group will be assigned the CategoryValue of the Group. The value of the CategoryValue, optionally prepended by the Category name and delineator ":", appears on the diagram as the Group label. (NOTE - Categories can be highlighted through other mechanisms, such as color, as defined by a modeler or a modeling tool). A single Category can be used for multiple Groups in a diagram.
The Category element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to RootElement. Table 8.22 displays the additional model associations of the Category element.

Table 8.22 – Category model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>The descriptive name of the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>categoryValue: CategoryValue [0..*]</td>
<td>The categoryValue attribute specifies one or more values of the Category. For example, the Category is “Region” then this Category could specify values like “North,” “South,” “West,” and “East.”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The CategoryValue element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 8.23 displays the attributes and model associations of the CategoryValue element.

Table 8.23 – CategoryValue attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>value: string</td>
<td>This attribute provides the value of the CategoryValue element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>category: Category [0..1]</td>
<td>The category attribute specifies the Category representing the Category as such and contains the CategoryValue (Further details about the definition of a Category can be found on page 70).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>categorizedFlowElements: FlowElement [0..*]</td>
<td>The FlowElements attribute identifies all of the elements (e.g., Events, Activities, Gateways, and Artifacts) that are within the boundaries of the Group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Text Annotation

Text Annotations are a mechanism for a modeler to provide additional information for the reader of a BPMN Diagram. A Text Annotation is an open rectangle that MUST be drawn with a solid single line (as seen in Figure 8.16).

The use of text, color, size, and lines for a Text Annotation MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39.

The Text Annotation object can be connected to a specific object on the Diagram with an Association, but does not affect the flow of the Process. Text associated with the Annotation can be placed within the bounds of the open rectangle.

Text Annotation allows a modeler to provide additional information

Figure 8.16 – A Text Annotation
The **Text Annotation** element inherits the attributes and model associations of **BaseElement** (see Table 8.5). Table 8.24 presents the additional attributes for a **Text Annotation**.

Table 8.24 – Text Annotation attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>text</strong>: string</td>
<td>Text is an attribute that is text that the modeler wishes to communicate to the reader of the Diagram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>textFormat</strong>: string</td>
<td>This attribute identifies the format of the text. It MUST follow the mime-type format. The default is &quot;text/plain.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**XML Schema for Artifacts**

Table 8.25 – Artifact XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="artifact" type="tArtifact"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tArtifact" abstract="true">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement"/>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 8.26 – Association XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="association" type="tAssociation" substitutionGroup="artifact"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tAssociation">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tArtifact">
      <xsd:attribute name="sourceRef" type="xsd:QName" use="required"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="targetRef" type="xsd:QName" use="required"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="associationDirection" type="tAssociationDirection" default="None"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

```xml
<xsd:simpleType name="tAssociationDirection">
  <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
    <xsd:enumeration value="None"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="One"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="Both"/>
  </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
```

Table 8.27 – Category XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="category" type="tCategory" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
```
<xsd:complexType name="tCategory">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tRootElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="categoryValue" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

Table 8.28 – CategoryValue XML schema

<xsd:element name="categoryValue" type="tCategoryValue"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tCategoryValue">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:attribute name="value" type="xsd:string" use="optional"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

Table 8.29 – Group XML schema

<xsd:element name="group" type="tGroup" substitutionGroup="artifact"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tGroup">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tArtifact">
      <xsd:attribute name="categoryValueRef" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

Table 8.30– Text Annotation XML schema

<xsd:element name="textAnnotation" type="tTextAnnotation" substitutionGroup="artifact"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tTextAnnotation">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tArtifact">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="text" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="textFormat" type="xsd:string" default="textplain"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
8.4.2 Correlation

Business Processes typically can run for days or even months, requiring asynchronous communication via Message. Also, many instances of a particular Process will typically run in parallel, e.g., many instances of an order process, each representing a particular order. Correlation is used to associate a particular Message to an ongoing Conversation between two particular Process instances. BPMN allows using existing Message data for correlation purposes, e.g., for the order process, a particular instance can be identified by means of its orderID and/or customerID, rather than requiring the introduction of technical correlation data.

The concept of Correlation facilitates the association of a Message to a Send Task or Receive Task often in the context of a Conversation, which is also known as instance routing. It is a particular useful concept where there is no infrastructure support for instance routing. Note that this association can be viewed at multiple levels, namely the Collaboration (Conversation), Choreography, and Process level. However, the actual correlation happens during runtime (e.g., at the Process level). Correlations describe a set of predicates on a Message (generally on the application payload) that need to be satisfied in order for that Message to be associated to a distinct Send Task or Receive Task. By the same token, each Send Task and each Receive Task participates in one or many Conversations. Furthermore, it identifies the Message it sends or receives and thereby establishes the relationship to one (or many) CorrelationKeys.

There are two, non-exclusive correlation mechanisms in place:

1. In plain, key-based correlation, Messages that are exchanged within a Conversation are logically correlated by means of one or more common CorrelationKeys. That is, any Message that is sent or received within this Conversation needs to carry the value of at least one of these CorrelationKey instances within its payload. A CorrelationKey basically defines a (composite) key. The first Message that is initially sent or received initializes one or more CorrelationKey instances associated with the Conversation, i.e., assigns values to its CorrelationProperty instances that are the fields (partial keys) of the CorrelationKey. A CorrelationKey is only considered valid for use, if the Message has resulted in all CorrelationProperty fields within the key being populated with a value. If a follow-up Message derives a CorrelationKey instance, where that CorrelationKey had previously been initialized within the Conversation, then the CorrelationKey value in the Message and Conversation MUST match. If the follow-up Message derives a CorrelationKey instance associated with the Conversation, that had not previously been initialized, then the CorrelationKey value will become associated with the Conversation. As a Conversation can comprise different Messages that can be differently structured, each CorrelationProperty comes with as many extraction rules (CorrelationPropertyRetrievalExpression) for the respective partial key as there are different Messages.

---

1. All references to Send or Receive Tasks in this sub clause also include message catch or throw Events; they behave identically with respect to correlation.
2. In context-based correlation, the Process context (i.e., its Data Objects and Properties) can dynamically influence the matching criterion. That is, a CorrelationKey can be complemented by a Process-specific CorrelationSubscription. A CorrelationSubscription aggregates as many CorrelationPropertyBindings as there are CorrelationProperties in the CorrelationKey. A CorrelationPropertyBinding relates to a specific CorrelationProperty and also links to a FormalExpression that denotes a dynamic extraction rule atop the Process context. At runtime, the CorrelationKey instance for a particular Conversation is populated (and dynamically updated) from the Process context using these FormalExpressions. In that sense, changes in the Process context can alter the correlation condition.

Correlation can be applied to Message Flows in Collaboration and Choreography, as described in Clause 9, ‘Collaboration’ and 11, ‘Choreography’. The keys applying to a Message Flow are the keys of containers or groupings of the Message Flow, such as Collaborations, Choreographies, and Conversation Nodes, and Choreography Activities. This might result in multiple CorrelationKeys applying to the same Message Flow, perhaps due to multiple layers of containment. In particular, calls of Collaborations and Choreographies are special kinds of Conversation Nodes and Choreography Activities, respectively, and are considered a kind of containment for the purposes of correlation. The CorrelationKeys specified in the caller apply to Message Flow in a called Collaboration or Choreography.
Figure 8.17 – The Correlation Class Diagram

**CorrelationKey**

A CorrelationKey represents a composite key out of one or many CorrelationProperties that essentially specify extraction Expressions atop Messages. As a result, each CorrelationProperty acts as a partial key for the correlation. For each Message that is exchanged as part of a particular Conversation, the CorrelationProperties need to provide a CorrelationPropertyRetrievalExpression which references a FormalExpression to the Message payload. That is, for each Message (that is used in a Conversation) there is an Expression, which extracts portions of the respective Message’s payload.

The CorrelationKey element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 8.31 displays the additional model associations of the CorrelationKey element.
### Key-based Correlation

Key-based correlation is a simple and efficient form of correlation, where one or more keys are used to identify a Conversation. Any incoming Message can be matched against the CorrelationKey by extracting the CorrelationProperties from the Message according to the corresponding CorrelationPropertyRetrievalExpression and comparing the resulting composite key with the CorrelationKey instance for this Conversation. The idea is to use a joint Conversation “token” which is used (passed to and received from) and outgoing and incoming Message. Messages are associated to a particular Conversation if the composite key extracted from their payload matches the CorrelationKey initialized for this Conversation.

At runtime the first Send Task or Receive Task in a Conversation MUST populate at least one of the CorrelationKey instances by extracting the values of the CorrelationProperties according to the CorrelationPropertyRetrievalExpression from the initially sent or received Message. Later in the Conversation, the populated CorrelationKey instances are used for the described matching procedure where from incoming Messages a composite key is extracted and used to identify the associated Conversation. Where these non-initiating Messages derive values for CorrelationKeys, associated with the Conversation but not yet populated, then the derived value will be associated with the Conversation instance.

The CorrelationProperty element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to RootElement. Table 8.32 displays the additional model associations of the CorrelationProperty element.

### Table 8.31 – CorrelationKey model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string [0..1]</td>
<td>Specifies the name of the CorrelationKey.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correlationPropertyRef: CorrelationProperty [0..*]</td>
<td>The CorrelationProperties, representing the partial keys of this CorrelationKey.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 8.32 – CorrelationProperty model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string [0..1]</td>
<td>Specifies the name of the CorrelationProperty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type: string [0..1]</td>
<td>Specifies the type of the CorrelationProperty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correlationPropertyRetrievalExpression: CorrelationPropertyRetrievalExpression [1..*]</td>
<td>The CorrelationPropertyRetrievalExpressions for this CorrelationProperty, representing the associations of FormalExpressions (extraction paths) to specific Messages occurring in this Conversation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Context-based Correlation

Context-based correlation is a more expressive form of correlation on top of key-based correlation. In addition to implicitly populating the CorrelationKey instance from the first sent or received Message, another mechanism relates the CorrelationKey to the Process context. That is, a Process MAY provide a CorrelationSubscription that acts as the Process-specific counterpart to a specific CorrelationKey. In this way, a Conversation MAY additionally refer to explicitly updateable Process context data to determine whether or not a Message needs to be received. At runtime, the CorrelationKey instance holds a composite key that is dynamically calculated from the Process context and automatically updated whenever the underlying Data Objects or Properties change.

CorrelationPropertyBindings represent the partial keys of a CorrelationSubscription where each relates to a specific CorrelationProperty in the associated CorrelationKey. A FormalExpression defines how that CorrelationProperty instance is populated and updated at runtime from the Process context (i.e., its Data Objects and Properties).

The CorrelationSubscription element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 8.34 displays the additional model associations of the CorrelationSubscription element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>correlationKeyRef:</td>
<td>The CorrelationKey this CorrelationSubscription refers to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correlationPropertyBinding:</td>
<td>The bindings to specific CorrelationProperties and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>FormalExpressions (extraction rules atop the Process context).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The CorrelationPropertyBinding element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 8.35 displays the additional model associations of the CorrelationPropertyBinding element.
At runtime, the correlation mechanism works as follows: When a Process instance is created the CorrelationKey instances of all Conversations are initialized with some initial values that specify to correlate any incoming Message for these Conversations. A SubscriptionProperty is updated whenever any of the Data Objects or Properties changes that are referenced from the respective FormalExpression. As a result, incoming Messages are matched against the now populated CorrelationKey instance. Later in the Process run, the SubscriptionProperties can again change and implicitly change the correlation criterion. Alternatively, the established mechanism of having the first Send Task or Receive Task populate the CorrelationKey instance applies.

XML Schema for Correlation

Table 8.36 – Correlation Key XML schema

```
<xsd:element name="correlationKey" type="tCorrelationKey"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tCorrelationKey">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
            <xsd:sequence>
                <xsd:element name="correlationPropertyRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:String" use="optional"/>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 8.37 – Correlation Property XML schema

```
<xsd:element name="correlationProperty" type="tCorrelationProperty" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tCorrelationProperty">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tRootElement">
            <xsd:sequence>
                <xsd:element ref="correlationPropertyRetrievalExpression" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:QName"/>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 8.38 – Correlation Property Binding XML schema

```xml
<xs:element name="correlationPropertyBinding" type="tCorrelationPropertyBinding"/>
<xs:complexType name="tCorrelationPropertyBinding">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name="dataPath" type="tFormalExpression" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </xs:sequence>
      <xs:attribute name="correlationPropertyRef" type="xsd:QName" use="required"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
```

Table 8.39 – Correlation Property Retrieval Expression XML schema

```xml
<xs:element name="correlationPropertyRetrievalExpression" type="tCorrelationPropertyRetrievalExpression"/>
<xs:complexType name="tCorrelationPropertyRetrievalExpression">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name="messagePath" type="tFormalExpression" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </xs:sequence>
      <xs:attribute name="messageRef" type="xsd:QName" use="required"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
```

Table 8.40 – Correlation Subscription XML schema

```xml
<xs:element name="correlationSubscription" type="tCorrelationSubscription"/>
<xs:complexType name="tCorrelationSubscription">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name="process" type="xsd:QName" use="required"/>
        <xs:element name="correlationKeyRef" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </xs:sequence>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
```
8.4.3 Error

An Error represents the content of an Error Event or the Fault of a failed Operation. An ItemDefinition is used to specify the structure of the Error. An Error is generated when there is a critical problem in the processing of an Activity or when the execution of an Operation failed.

The Error element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5), through its relationship to RootElement. Table 8.41 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the Error element.
8.4.4 Escalation

An Escalation identifies a business situation that a Process might need to react to. An ItemDefinition is used to specify the structure of the Escalation.

Table 8.41 – Error attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>structureRef : ItemDefinition [0..1]</td>
<td>An ItemDefinition is used to define the “payload” of the Error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name : string</td>
<td>The descriptive name of the Error.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| errorCode : string | For an End Event:
If the result is an Error, then the errorCode MUST be supplied (if the processType attribute of the Process is set to executable) This “throws” the Error.
For an Intermediate Event within normal flow:
If the trigger is an Error, then the errorCode MUST be entered (if the processType attribute of the Process is set to executable). This “throws” the Error.
For an Intermediate Event attached to the boundary of an Activity:
If the trigger is an Error, then the errorCode MAY be entered. This Event “catches” the Error. If there is no errorCode, then any error SHALL trigger the Event. If there is an errorCode, then only an Error that matches the errorCode SHALL trigger the Event. |

Figure 8.19 – Escalation class diagram
The Escalation element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5), through its relationship to RootElement. Table 8.41 presents the additional model associations of the Error element.

**Table 8.42 – Escalation attributes and model associations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>structureRef : ItemDefinition [0..1]</td>
<td>An ItemDefinition is used to define the “payload” of the Escalation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name : string</td>
<td>The descriptive name of the Escalation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| escalationCode: string | For an **End Event**:  
If the Result is an Escalation, then the escalationCode MUST be supplied (if the processType attribute of the Process is set to executable). This “throws” the Escalation.  
For an **Intermediate Event** within normal flow:  
If the trigger is an Escalation, then the escalationCode MUST be entered (if the processType attribute of the Process is set to executable). This “throws” the Escalation.  
For an **Intermediate Event** attached to the boundary of an Activity:  
If the trigger is an Escalation, then the escalationCode MAY be entered. This Event “catches” the Escalation. If there is no escalationCode, then any Escalation SHALL trigger the Event. If there is an escalationCode, then only an Escalation that matches the escalationCode SHALL trigger the Event. |

### 8.4.5 Events

An **Event** is something that happens during the course of a **Process**. These **Events** affect the flow of the **Process** and usually have a cause or an impact. The term event is general enough to cover many things in a **Process**. The start of an **Activity**, the end of an **Activity**, the change of state of a document, a **Message** that arrives, etc., all could be considered Events. However, BPMN has restricted the use of Events to include only those types of Events that will affect the sequence or timing of Activities of a **Process**.
The Event element inherits the attributes and model associations of FlowElement (see Table 8.44), but adds no additional attributes or model associations.

The details for the types of Events (Start, Intermediate, and End) are defined in “Event Definitions” on page 258.

8.4.6 Expressions

The Expression class is used to specify an Expression using natural-language text. These Expressions are not executable. The natural language text is captured using the documentation attribute, inherited from BaseElement.

Expression inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5), but adds no additional attributes or model associations.
Expressions are used in many places within BPMN to extract information from the different elements, normally data elements. The most common usage is when modeling decisions, where conditional Expressions are used to direct the flow along specific paths based on some criteria.

BPMN supports underspecified Expressions, where the logic is captured as natural-language descriptive text. It also supports formal Expressions, where the logic is captured in an executable form using a specified Expression language.

![Expression class diagram](image)

**Expression**

The Expression class is used to specify an Expression using natural-language text. These Expressions are not executable and are considered underspecified.

The definition of an Expression can be done in two ways: it can be contained where it is used, or it can be defined at the Process level and then referenced where it is used.

The Expression element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5), but does not have any additional attributes or model associations.

**Formal Expression**

The FormalExpression class is used to specify an executable Expression using a specified Expression language. A natural-language description of the Expression can also be specified, in addition to the formal specification.

The default Expression language for all Expressions is specified in the Definitions element, using the expressionLanguage attribute. It can also be overridden on each individual FormalExpression using the same attribute.

The FormalExpression element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5), through the Expression element. Table 8.43 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the FormalExpression.
8.4.7 Flow Element

FlowElement is the abstract super class for all elements that can appear in a Process flow, which are FlowNodes (see page 99, which consist of Activities (see page 149), Choreography Activities (see page 319) Gateways (see page 285), and Events (see page 231), Data Objects (see page 204), Data Associations (see page 220), and Sequence Flows (see page 97).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>language: string [0..1]</td>
<td>Overrides the Expression language specified in the Definitions. The language MUST be specified in a URI format.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| body: Element | The body of the Expression. Note that this attribute is not relevant when the XML Schema is used for interchange. Instead, the FormalExpression complex type supports mixed content. The body of the Expression would be specified as element content. For example:  
<formalExpression id="ID_2">  
  count(../dataObject[id="CustomerRecord_1"]/emailAddress) > 0  
  <evaluatesToType id="ID_3" typeRef="xsd:boolean"/>  
</formalExpression> |
| evaluatesToTypeRef: ItemDefinition | The type of object that this Expression returns when evaluated. For example, conditional Expressions evaluate to a boolean. |
The `FlowElement` element inherits the attributes and model associations of `BaseElement` (see Table 8.5). Table 8.44 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the `FlowElement` element.
FlowElementsContainer is an abstract super class for BPMN diagrams (or views) and defines the superset of elements that are contained in those diagrams. Basically, a FlowElementsContainer contains FlowElements, which are Events (see page 231), Gateways (see page 285), Sequence Flows (see page 97), Activities (see page 149), and Choreography Activities (see page 319).

There are four (4) types of FlowElementsContainers (see Figure 8.23): Process, Sub-Process, Choreography, and Sub-Choreography.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string [0..1]</td>
<td>The descriptive name of the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>categoryValueRef: CategoryValue [0..*]</td>
<td>A reference to the Category Values that are associated with this Flow Element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditing: Auditing [0..1]</td>
<td>A hook for specifying audit related properties. Auditing can only be defined for a Process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitoring: Monitoring [0..1]</td>
<td>A hook for specifying monitoring related properties. Monitoring can only be defined for a Process.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 8.23 – FlowElementContainers class diagram

The FlowElementContainers element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 8.45 presents the additional model associations of the FlowElementContainers element.

Table 8.45 – FlowElementContainers model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **flowElements**: Flow Element [0..*] | This association specifies the particular flow elements contained in a FlowElementContainer. Flow elements are Events, Gateways, Sequence Flows, Activities, Data Objects, Data Associations, and Choreography Activities. Note that:  
  - Choreography Activities MUST NOT be included as a flowElement for a Process.  
  - Activities, Data Associations, and Data Objects MUST NOT be included as a flowElement for a Choreography. |
| **laneSets**: LaneSet [0..*] | This attribute defines the list of LaneSets used in the FlowElementContainers. LaneSets are not used for Choreographies or Sub-Choreographies. |
8.4.9 Gateways

Gateways are used to control how the Process flows (how Tokens flow) through Sequence Flows as they converge and diverge within a Process. If the flow does not need to be controlled, then a Gateway is not needed. The term “gateway” implies that there is a gating mechanism that either allows or disallows passage through the Gateway; that is, as tokens arrive at a Gateway, they can be merged together on input and/or split apart on output as the Gateway mechanisms are invoked.

Gateways, like Activities, are capable of consuming or generating additional control tokens, effectively controlling the execution semantics of a given Process. The main difference is that Gateways do not represent ‘work’ being done and they are considered to have zero effect on the operational measures of the Process being executed (cost, time, etc.).

The Gateway controls the flow of both diverging and converging Sequence Flows. That is, a single Gateway could have multiple input and multiple output flows. Modelers and modeling tools might want to enforce a best practice of a Gateway only performing one of these functions. Thus, it would take two sequential Gateways to first converge and then to diverge the Sequence Flows.

The details for the types of Gateways (Exclusive, Inclusive, Parallel, Event-Based, and Complex) is defined on page 285 for Processes and on page 342 for Choreographies.

Figure 8.24 – Gateway class diagram
The **Gateway** class is an abstract type. Its concrete subclasses define the specific semantics of individual **Gateway** types, defining how the **Gateway** behaves in different situations.

The **Gateway** element inherits the attributes and model associations of **FlowElement** (see Table 8.44). Table 8.46 presents the additional attributes of the **Gateway** element.

**Table 8.46 – Gateway attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gatewayDirection: GatewayDirection = Unspecified { Unspecified</td>
<td>Converging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Unspecified</strong>: There are no constraints. The <strong>Gateway</strong> MAY have any number of incoming and outgoing Sequence Flows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Converging</strong>: This <strong>Gateway</strong> MAY have multiple incoming Sequence Flows but MUST have no more than one (1) outgoing Sequence Flow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Diverging</strong>: This <strong>Gateway</strong> MAY have multiple outgoing Sequence Flows but MUST have no more than one (1) incoming Sequence Flow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Mixed</strong>: This <strong>Gateway</strong> contains multiple outgoing and multiple incoming Sequence Flows.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8.4.10 Item Definition

**BPMN** elements, such as **DataObjects** and **Messages**, represent items that are manipulated, transferred, transformed, or stored during **Process** flows. These items can be either physical items, such as the mechanical part of a vehicle, or information items such the catalog of the mechanical parts of a vehicle.

An important characteristics of items in **Process** is their structure. **BPMN** does not require a particular format for this data structure, but it does designate XML Schema as its default. The **structure** attribute references the actual data structure.

The default format of the data structure for all elements can be specified in the **Definitions** element using the **typeLanguage** attribute. For example, a **typeLanguage** value of "http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" indicates that the data structures using by elements within that Definitions are in the form of XML Schema types. If unspecified, the default is XML schema. An Import is used to further identify the location of the data structure (if applicable). For example, in the case of data structures contributed by an XML schema, an Import would be used to specify the file location of that schema.

Structure definitions are always defined as separate entities, so they cannot be inlined in one of their usages. You will see that in every mention of structure definition there is a “reference” to the element. This is why this class inherits from **RootElement**.

An **ItemDefinition** element can specify an import reference where the proper definition of the structure is defined.
In cases where the data structure represents a collection, the multiplicity can be projected into the attribute `isCollection`. If this attribute is set to “true,” but the actual type is not a collection type, the model is considered as invalid. **BPMN** compliant tools might support an automatic check for these inconsistencies and report this as an error. The default value for this element is “false.”

The `itemKind` attribute specifies the nature of an item which can be a physical or an information item.

Figure 8.25 shows the `ItemDefinition` class diagram. When an `ItemDefinition` is defined it is contained in `Definitions`.

![Figure 8.25 – ItemDefinition class diagram](image)

The `ItemDefinition` element inherits the attributes and model associations `BaseElement` (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to `RootElement`. Table 8.47 presents the additional attributes and model associations for the `ItemDefinition` element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>itemKind</code></td>
<td>ItemKind = Information ( Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>structureRef</code></td>
<td>[Element [0..1]] (The concrete data structure to be used.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>import</code></td>
<td>Import [0..1] (Identifies the location of the data structure and its format. If the importType attribute is left unspecified, the typeLanguage specified in the Definitions that contains this ItemDefinition is assumed.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>isCollection</code></td>
<td>boolean = False (Setting this flag to true indicates that the actual data type is a collection.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.4.11 Message

A Message represents the content of a communication between two Participants. In BPMN 2.0.1, a Message is a graphical decorator (it was a supporting element in BPMN 1.2). An ItemDefinition is used to specify the Message structure.

When displayed in a diagram:
- In a Message is a rectangle with converging diagonal lines in the upper half of the rectangle to give the appearance of an envelope (see Figure 8.26). It MUST be drawn with a single thin line.
- The use of text, color, size, and lines for a Message MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39.

![Figure 8.26 – A Message](image)

In addition, when used in a Choreography Diagram more than one Message MAY be used for a single Choreography Task. In this case, it is important to know the first (initiating) Message of the interaction. For return (non-initiating) Messages the symbol of the Message is shaded with a light fill (see Figure 8.27).

![Figure 8.27 – A non-initiating Message](image)

- Any Message sent by the non-initiating Participant or Sub-Choreography MUST be shaded with a light fill.

In a Collaboration, the communication itself is represented by a Message Flow (see “Message Flow” below for more details). The Message can be optionally depicted as a graphical decorator on a Message Flow in a Collaboration (see Figure 8.28 and Figure 8.29).
In a **Choreography**, the communication is represented by a **Choreography Task** (see page 321). The **Message** can be depicted as a decorator with a **Choreography Task** in a **Choreography** (see Figure 8.29).

Figure 8.28 – Messages Association overlapping Message Flows

Figure 8.29 – Messages shown Associated with a Choreography Task

Figure 8.30 displays the class diagram showing the attributes and model associations for the **Message** element.
The **Message** element inherits the attributes and model associations of **BaseElement** (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to **RootElement**. Table 8.48 presents the additional attributes and model associations for the **Message** element.

### Table 8.48 – Message attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>Name is a text description of the Message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itemRef : ItemDefinition [0..1]</td>
<td>An ItemDefinition is used to define the “payload” of the Message.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8.4.12 Resources

The **Resource** class is used to specify resources that can be referenced by **Activities**. These **Resources** can be **Human Resources** as well as any other resource assigned to **Activities** during **Process** execution time.

The definition of a **Resource** is “abstract,” because it only defines the **Resource**, without detailing how e.g., actual user IDs are associated at runtime. Multiple **Activities** can utilize the same **Resource**.
Every Resource can define a set of ResourceParameters. These parameters can be used at runtime to define query e.g., into an Organizational Directory. Every Activity referencing a parameterized Resource can bind values available in the scope of the Activity to these parameters.

The Resource element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to RootElement. Table 8.51 presents the additional model associations for the Resource element.

Table 8.49 – Resource attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>This attribute specifies the name of the Resource.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resourceParameters: ResourceParameter [0..*]</td>
<td>This model association specifies the definition of the parameters needed at runtime to resolve the Resource.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As mentioned before, the Resource can define a set of parameters to define a query to resolve the actual resources (e.g., user ids).

The ResourceParameter element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to RootElement. Table 8.51 presents the additional model associations for the ResourceParameter element.
### 8.4.13 Sequence Flow

A **Sequence Flow** is used to show the order of **Flow Elements** in a **Process** or a **Choreography**. Each **Sequence Flow** has only one **source** and only one **target**. The **source** and **target** MUST be from the set of the following **Flow Elements**: **Events** (**Start**, **Intermediate**, and **End**), **Activities** (**Task** and **Sub-Process**; for **Processes**), **Choreography Activities** (**Choreography Task** and **Sub-Choreography**; for **Choreographies**), and **Gateways**.

- A **Sequence Flow** is line with a solid arrowhead that MUST be drawn with a solid single line (as seen in Figure 8.32).
- The use of text, color, size, and lines for a **Sequence Flow** MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39.

![Figure 8.32 – A Sequence Flow](image)

A **Sequence Flow** can optionally define a condition **Expression**, indicating that the **token** will be passed down the **Sequence Flow** only if the **Expression** evaluates to **true**. This **Expression** is typically used when the source of the **Sequence Flow** is a **Gateway** or an **Activity**.

- A **conditional outgoing Sequence Flow** from an **Activity** MUST be drawn with a mini-diamond marker at the beginning of the connector (as seen in Figure 8.33).
- If a **conditional Sequence Flow** is used from a source **Activity**, then there MUST be at least one other **outgoing Sequence Flow** from that **Activity**.
- **Conditional outgoing Sequence Flows** from a **Gateway** MUST NOT be drawn with a mini-diamond marker at the beginning of the connector.
- A source **Gateway** MUST NOT be of type **Parallel** or **Event**.

![Figure 8.33 – A Conditional Sequence Flow](image)
A Sequence Flow that has an Exclusive, Inclusive, or Complex Gateway or an Activity as its source can also be defined with as default. Such a Sequence Flow will have a marker to show that it is a default flow. The default Sequence Flow is taken (a token is passed) only if all the other outgoing Sequence Flows from the Activity or Gateway are not valid (i.e., their condition Expressions are false).

- A default outgoing Sequence Flow MUST be drawn with a slash marker at the beginning of the connector (as seen in Figure 8.34).

![Figure 8.34 – A Default Sequence Flow](image)

The Sequence Flow element inherits the attributes and model associations of FlowElement (see Table 8.44). Table 8.51 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the Sequence Flow element.

![Figure 8.35 – SequenceFlow class diagram](image)
Flow Node

The FlowNode element is used to provide a single element as the source and target Sequence Flow associations (see Figure 8.35) instead of the individual associations of the elements that can connect to Sequence Flows (see above). Only the Gateway, Activity, Choreography Activity, and Event elements can connect to Sequence Flows and thus, these elements are the only ones that are sub-classes of FlowNode.

Since Gateway, Activity, Choreography Activity, and Event have their own attributes, model associations, and inheritances; the FlowNode element does not inherit from any other BPMN element. Table 8.52 presents the additional model associations of the FlowNode element.

Table 8.51 – SequenceFlow attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sourceRef: FlowNode</td>
<td>The FlowNode that the Sequence Flow is connecting from. For a Process: Of the types of FlowNode, only Activities, Gateways, and Events can be the source. However, Activities that are Event Sub-Processes are not allowed to be a source. For a Choreography: Of the types of FlowNode, only Choreography Activities, Gateways, and Events can be the source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>targetRef: FlowNode</td>
<td>The FlowNode that the Sequence Flow is connecting to. For a Process: Of the types of FlowNode, only Activities, Gateways, and Events can be the target. However, Activities that are Event Sub-Processes are not allowed to be a target. For a Choreography: Of the types of FlowNode, only Choreography Activities, Gateways, and Events can be the target.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conditionExpression: Expression [0..1]</td>
<td>An optional boolean Expression that acts as a gating condition. A token will only be placed on this Sequence Flow if this conditionExpression evaluates to true.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| isImmediate: boolean [0..1] | An optional boolean value specifying whether Activities or Choreography Activities not in the model containing the Sequence Flow can occur between the elements connected by the Sequence Flow. If the value is true, they MAY NOT occur. If the value is false, they MAY occur. Also see the isClosed attribute on Process, Choreography, and Collaboration. When the attribute has no value, the default semantics depends on the kind of model containing Sequence Flows:  
  - For non-executable Processes (public Processes and non-executable private Processes) and Choreographies no value has the same semantics as if the value were false.  
  - For an executable Processes no value has the same semantics as if the value were true.  
  - For executable Processes, the attribute MUST NOT be false. |
8.4.14 Common Package XML Schemas

Table 8.53 – Error XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="error" type="tError" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tError">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tRootElement">
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="errorCode" type="xsd:string"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="structureRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 8.54 – Escalation XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="escalation" type="tEscalation" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tEscalation">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tRootElement">
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="escalationCode" type="xsd:string"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="structureRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 8.55 – Expression XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="expression" type="tExpression"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tExpression">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElementWithMixedContent"/>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 8.56 – FlowElement XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="flowElement" type="tFlowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tFlowElement" abstract="true">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="auditing" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <xsd:element ref="monitoring" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <xsd:element name="categoryValueRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 8.57 – FlowNode XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="flowNode" type="tFlowNode"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tFlowNode" abstract="true">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tFlowElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="incoming" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element name="outgoing" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 8.58 – FormalExpression XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="formalExpression" type="tFormalExpression" substitutionGroup="expression"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tFormalExpression">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tExpression">
      <xsd:attribute name="language" type="xsd:anyURI" use="optional"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="evaluatesToTypeRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 8.59 – InputOutputBinding XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="ioBinding" type="tinputOutputBinding"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tinputOutputBinding">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:attribute name="inputDataRef" type="xsd:IDREF"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 8.60 – ItemDefinition XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="itemDefinition" type="tItemDefinition" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tItemDefinition">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tRootElement">
            <xsd:attribute name="structureRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
            <xsd:attribute name="isCollection" type="xsd:boolean" default="false"/>
            <xsd:attribute name="itemKind" type="tItemKind" default="Information"/>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 8.61 – Message XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="message" type="tMessage" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tMessage">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tRootElement">
            <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
            <xsd:attribute name="itemRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 8.62 – Resources XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="resource" type="tResource" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tResource">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tRootElement">
            <xsd:sequence>
                <xsd:element ref="resourceParameter" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
8.5 Services

The Service package contains constructs necessary for modeling services, interfaces, and operations.
An Interface defines a set of operations that are implemented by Services.

The Interface inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to RootElement. Table 8.65 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the Interface.
8.5.2 EndPoint

The actual definition of the service address is out of scope of BPMN 2.0. The EndPoint element is an extension point and extends fromRootElement. The EndPoint element MAY be extended with endpoint reference definitions introduced in other specifications (e.g., WS-Addressing).

EndPoints can be specified for Participants.

8.5.3 Operation

An Operation defines Messages that are consumed and, optionally, produced when the Operation is called. It can also define zero or more errors that are returned when operation fails. The Operation inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 8.66 below presents the additional attributes and model associations of the Operation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>The descriptive name of the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operations: Operation [1..*]</td>
<td>This attribute specifies operations that are defined as part of the Interface. An Interface has at least one Operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>callableElements: CallableElement [0..*]</td>
<td>The CallableElements that use this Interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>implementationRef: Element [0..1]</td>
<td>This attribute allows to reference a concrete artifact in the underlying implementation technology representing that interface, such as a WSDL porttype.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 8.66 – Operation attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>The descriptive name of the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inMessageRef: Message</td>
<td>This attribute specifies the input Message of the Operation. An Operation has exactly one input Message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outMessageRef: Message [0..1]</td>
<td>This attribute specifies the output Message of the Operation. An Operation has at most one input Message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>errorRef: Error [0..*]</td>
<td>This attribute specifies errors that the Operation may return. An Operation MAY refer to zero or more Error elements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>implementationRef: Element [0..1]</td>
<td>This attribute allows to reference a concrete artifact in the underlying implementation technology representing that operation, such as a WSDL operation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.5.4 Service Package XML Schemas

Table 8.67 – Interface XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="interface" type="tInterface" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tInterface">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tRootElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="operation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="implementationRef" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 8.68 – Operation XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="operation" type="tOperation"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tOperation">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="inMessageRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <xsd:element name="outMessageRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <xsd:element name="errorRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="implementationRef" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
Table 8.69 – EndPoint XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="endPoint" type="tEndPoint"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tEndPoint">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tRootElement"/>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
9 Collaboration

9.1 General

NOTE: The contents of this clause are REQUIRED for BPMN Choreography Modeling Conformance, BPMN Process Modeling Conformance, or for BPMN Complete Conformance. However, this clause is NOT REQUIRED for BPMN Process Execution Conformance or BPMN BPEL Process Execution Conformance. For more information about BPMN conformance types, see page 1.

The Collaboration package contains classes that are used for modeling Collaborations, which is a collection of Participants shown as Pools, their interactions as shown by Message Flows, and MAY include Processes within the Pools and/or Choreographies between the Pools (see Figure 9.1). A Choreography is an extended type of Collaboration. When a Collaboration is defined it is contained in Definitions.
Figure 9.1 – Classes in the Collaboration package

The **Collaboration** element inherits the attributes and model associations of **BaseElement** (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to **RootElement**. Table 9.1 presents the additional attributes and model associations for the **Collaboration** element.

Table 9.1 – Collaboration Attributes and Model Associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>Name is a text description of the <strong>Collaboration</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The **choreographyRef** model association defines the **Choreographies** that can be shown between the Pools of the **Collaboration**. A **Choreography** specifies a business contract (or the order in which messages will be exchanged) between interacting **Participants**. See page 315 for more details on **Choreography**.

The **participantAssociations** (see below) are used to map the **Participants** of the **Choreography** to the **Participants** of the **Collaboration**.

The **MessageFlowAssociations** (see below) are used to map the **Message Flows** of the **Choreography** to the **Message Flows** of the **Collaboration**.

The **conversationAssociations** (see below) are used to map the **Conversations** of the **Choreography** to the **Conversations** of the **Collaboration**.

Note that this attribute is not applicable for **Choreography** or **GlobalConversation** which are a subtypes of **Collaboration**. Thus, a **Choreography** cannot reference another **Choreography**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>choreographyRef</strong></td>
<td>The <strong>choreographyRef</strong> model association defines the <strong>Choreographies</strong> that can be shown between the Pools of the <strong>Collaboration</strong>. A <strong>Choreography</strong> specifies a business contract (or the order in which messages will be exchanged) between interacting <strong>Participants</strong>. See page 315 for more details on <strong>Choreography</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>participantAssociations</strong></td>
<td>This attribute provides a list of mappings from the <strong>Conversations</strong> of a referenced <strong>Collaboration</strong> to the <strong>Conversations</strong> of another <strong>Collaboration</strong>. It is used when:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When a <strong>Choreography</strong> is referenced by a <strong>Collaboration</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>conversations</strong></td>
<td>The <strong>conversations</strong> model aggregation relationship allows a <strong>Collaboration</strong> to contain <strong>Conversation</strong> elements, in order to group <strong>Message Flows</strong> of the <strong>Collaboration</strong> and associate <strong>correlation</strong> information, as is REQUIRED for the <strong>definitional Collaboration</strong> of a <strong>Process</strong> model. The <strong>Conversation</strong> elements will be visualized if the <strong>Collaboration</strong> is a <strong>Collaboration</strong>, but not for a <strong>Choreography</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>conversationLinks</strong></td>
<td>This provides the <strong>Conversation Links</strong> that are used in the <strong>Collaboration</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>artifacts</strong></td>
<td>This attribute provides the list of <strong>Artifacts</strong> that are contained within the <strong>Collaboration</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>participants</strong></td>
<td>This provides the list of <strong>Participants</strong> that are used in the <strong>Collaboration</strong>. <strong>Participants</strong> are visualized as <strong>Pools</strong> in a <strong>Collaboration</strong> and as <strong>Participant Bands</strong> in <strong>Choreography Activities</strong> in a <strong>Choreography</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.1 – Collaboration Attributes and Model Associations
A set of Messages Flow of a particular Collaboration MAY belong to a Conversation. A Conversation is a set of Message Flows that share a particular purpose (i.e., they all relate to the handling of a single order - see page 123 for more information about Conversations).

### 9.2 Basic Collaboration Concepts

A Collaboration usually contains two or more Pools, representing the Participants in the Collaboration. The Message exchange between the Participants is shown by a Message Flow that connects two Pools (or the objects within the Pools). The Messages associated with the Message Flows MAY also be shown. See 9.3, 9.4, and 9.5 for examples of Collaborations.

A Pool MAY be empty, a “black box,” or MAY show a Process within. Choreographies MAY be shown “in between” the Pools as they bisect the Message Flows between the Pools. All combinations of Pools, Processes, and a Choreography are allowed in a Collaboration.

#### 9.2.1 Use of BPMN Common Elements

Some BPMN elements are common to both Process and Choreography, as well as Collaboration; they are used in these diagrams. The next few sub clauses will describe the use of Messages, Message Flows, Participants, Sequence Flows, Artifacts, Correlations, Expressions, and Services in Choreography.
9.3 Pool and Participant

A Pool is the graphical representation of a Participant in a Collaboration. A Participant (see page 113) can be a specific PartnerEntity (e.g., a company) or can be a more general PartnerRole (e.g., a buyer, seller, or manufacturer). A Pool MAY or MAY NOT reference a Process. A Pool is NOT REQUIRED to contain a Process, i.e., it can be a “black box.”

- A Pool is a square-cornered rectangle that MUST be drawn with a solid single line (see Figure 9.2).
- The label for the Pool MAY be placed in any location and direction within the Pool, but MUST be separated from the contents of the Pool by a single line.
- If the Pool is a black box (i.e., does not contain a Process), then the label for the Pool MAY be placed anywhere within the Pool without a single line separator.
- One, and only one, Pool in a diagram MAY be presented without a boundary. If there is more than one Pool in the diagram, then the remaining Pools MUST have a boundary.

The use of text, color, size, and lines for a Pool MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39.

---

![Figure 9.2 – A Pool](image)

To help with the clarity of the Diagram, a Pool extends the entire length of the Diagram, either horizontally or vertically. However, there is no specific restriction to the size and/or positioning of a Pool. Modelers and modeling tools can use Pools in a flexible manner in the interest of conserving the “real estate” of a Diagram on a screen or a printed page.

A Pool acts as the container for the Sequence Flows between Activities (of a contained Process). The Sequence Flows can cross the boundaries between Lanes of a Pool (see page 304 for more details on Lanes), but cannot cross the boundaries of a Pool. That is, a Process is fully contained within the Pool. The interaction between Pools is shown through Message Flows.

Another aspect of Pools is whether or not there is any Activity detailed within the Pool. Thus, a given Pool MAY be shown as a “White Box,” with all details (e.g., a Process) exposed, or as a “Black Box,” with all details hidden. No Sequence Flows are associated with a “Black Box” Pool, but Message Flows can attach to its boundaries (see Figure 9.3).
Figure 9.3 – Message Flows connecting to the boundaries of two Pools

For a “White Box” Pool, the Activities within are organized by Sequence Flows. Message Flows can cross the Pool boundary to attach to the appropriate Activity (see Figure 9.4).

Figure 9.4 – Message Flows connecting to Flow Objects within two Pools

A Collaboration can contain two (2) or more Pools (i.e., Participants). However, a Process that represents the work performed from the point of view of the modeler or the modeler’s organization can be considered “internal” and is NOT REQUIRED to be surrounded by the boundary of the Pool, while the other Pools in the Diagram MUST have their boundary (see Figure 9.5).
BPMN specifies a marker for **Pools**: a *multi-instance* marker may be displayed for a **Pool** (see Figure 9.6). The marker is used if the **Participant** defined for the **Pool** is a *multi-instance Participant*. See page 116 for more information on **Participant** multiplicity.

- The marker for a **Pool** that is a *multi-instance* MUST be a set of three vertical lines in parallel.
- The marker, if used, MUST be centered at the bottom of the shape.

**Figure 9.5 – Main (Internal) Pool without boundaries**

**Figure 9.6 – Pools with a Multi-Instance Participant Markers**

### 9.3.1 Participants

A **Participant** represents a specific **PartnerEntity** (e.g., a company) and/or a more general **PartnerRole** (e.g., a buyer, seller, or manufacturer) that are **Participants** in a **Collaboration**. A **Participant** is often responsible for the execution of the **Process** enclosed in a **Pool**; however, a **Pool** MAY be defined without a **Process**.

Figure 9.7 displays the class diagram of the **Participant** and its relationships to other **BPMN** elements. When **Participants** are defined they are contained within a **Collaboration**, which includes the sub-types of **Choreography**, **GlobalConversation**, or **GlobalChoreographyTask**.
The Participant element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 9.2 presents the additional attributes and model associations for the Participant element.
PartnerEntity

A PartnerEntity is one of the possible types of Participant (see above).

The PartnerEntity element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Figure 8.5). Table 9.3 presents the additional attributes and model associations for the PartnerEntity element.

Table 9.3 – PartnerEntity attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>Name is a text description of the PartnerEntity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>participantRef:</td>
<td>Specifies how the PartnerEntity participates in Collaborations and Choreographies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>participantMultiplicity: participantMultiplicity</td>
<td>The participantMultiplicityRef model association is used to define Participants that represent more than one (1) instance of the Participant for a given interaction. See the next sub clause for more details on ParticipantMultiplicity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endPointRefs:</td>
<td>This attribute is used to specify the address (or endpoint reference) of concrete services realizing the Participant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**PartnerRole**

A PartnerRole is one of the possible types of Participant (see above).

The PartnerRole element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Figure 8.5). Table 9.4 presents the additional attributes and model associations for the PartnerRole element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>Name is a text description of the PartnerRole.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>participantRef: Participant [0..*]</td>
<td>Specifies how the PartnerRole participates in Collaborations and Choreographies.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participant Multiplicity**

ParticipantMultiplicity is used to define the multiplicity of a Participant.

For example, a manufacturer can request a quote from multiple suppliers in a Collaboration.

Figure 9.8 – A Pool with a Multiple Participant

The following figure shows the Participant class diagram.

Figure 9.9 – The Participant Multiplicity class diagram
The multi-instance marker will be displayed in bottom center of the Pool (Participant - see Figure 9.9, above), or the Participant Band of a Choreography Activity (see page 321), when the ParticipantMultiplicity is associated with the Participant, and the maximum attribute is either not set, or has a value of two or more.

Table 9.5 presents the attributes for the ParticipantMultiplicity element.

**Table 9.5 – ParticipantMultiplicity attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>minimum: integer = 0</td>
<td>The minimum attribute defines minimum number of Participants that MUST be involved in the Collaboration. If a value is specified in the maximum attribute, it MUST be greater or equal to this minimum value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maximum: integer [0..1] = 1</td>
<td>The maximum attribute defines maximum number of Participants that MAY be involved in the Collaboration. The value of maximum MUST be one or greater, AND MUST be equal or greater than the minimum value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.6 presents the Instance attributes of the ParticipantMultiplicity element.

**Table 9.6 – ParticipantMultiplicity Instance attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>numParticipants: integer [0..1]</td>
<td>The current number of the multiplicity of the Participant for this Choreography or Collaboration Instance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ParticipantAssociation**

These elements are used to do mapping between two elements that both contain Participants. There are situations where the Participants in different diagrams can be defined differently because they were developed independently, but represent the same thing. The ParticipantAssociation provides the mechanism to match up the Participants.

A ParticipantAssociation is used when an (outer) diagram with Participants contains an (inner) diagram that also has Participants. There are four usages of ParticipantAssociation. It is used when:

1. A Collaboration references a Choreography for inclusion between the Collaboration’s Pools (Participants). The Participants of the Choreography (the inner diagram) need to be mapped to the Participants of the Collaboration (the outer diagram).

2. A Call Conversation references a Collaboration or GlobalConversation. Thus, the Participants of the Collaboration or GlobalConversation (the inner diagram) need to be mapped to the Participants referenced by the Call Conversation (the outer element). Each Call Conversation contains its own set of ParticipantAssociations.

3. A Call Choreography references a Choreography or GlobalChoreographyTask. Thus, the Participants of the Choreography or GlobalChoreographyTask (the inner diagram) need to be mapped to the Participants referenced by the Call Choreography (the outer element). Each Call Choreography contains its own set of ParticipantAssociations.
4. A Call Activity within a Process that has a definitional Collaboration references another Process that also has a definitional Collaboration. The Participants of the definitional Collaboration of the called Process (the inner diagram) need to be mapped to the Participants of the definitional Collaboration of the calling Process (the outer diagram).

A ParticipantAssociation can be owned by the outer diagram or one its elements. Figure 9.10 shows the class diagram for the ParticipantAssociation element.

![ParticipantAssociation class diagram](image)

**Figure 9.10 – ParticipantAssociation class diagram**

The ParticipantAssociation element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 9.7 presents the additional model associations for the ParticipantAssociation element.
Table 9.7 – ParticipantAssociation model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>innerParticipantRef: Participant</td>
<td>This attribute defines the Participant of the referenced element (e.g., a Choreography to be used in a Collaboration) that will be mapped to the parent element (e.g., the Collaboration).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outerParticipantRef: Participant</td>
<td>This attribute defines the Participant of the parent element (e.g., a Collaboration references a Choreography) that will be mapped to the referenced element (e.g., the Choreography).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.3.2 Lanes

A Lane is a sub-partition within a Process (often within a Pool) and will extend the entire length of the Process level, either vertically (see Figure 10.123) or horizontally (see Figure 10.124). See page 304 for more information on Lanes.

9.4 Message Flow

A Message Flow is used to show the flow of Messages between two Participants that are prepared to send and receive them.

- A Message Flow MUST connect two separate Pools. They connect either to the Pool boundary or to Flow Objects within the Pool boundary. They MUST NOT connect two objects within the same Pool.

- A Message Flow is a line with an open circle line start and an open arrowhead line end that MUST be drawn with a dashed single line (see Figure 9.11).

- The use of text, color, size, and lines for a Message Flow MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39.

Figure 9.11 – A Message Flow

In Collaboration Diagrams (the view showing the Choreography Process Combined with Orchestration Processes), a Message Flow can be extended to show the Message that is passed from one Participant to another (see Figure 9.12).
Figure 9.12 – A Message Flow with an Attached Message

If a Choreography is included in the Collaboration, then the Message Flow will “pass-through” a Choreography Task as it connects from one Participant to another (see Figure 9.13).

Figure 9.13 – A Message Flow passing through a Choreography Task
Figure 9.14 displays the class diagram of a Message Flow and its relationships to other BPMN elements. When a Message Flow is defined it is contained either within a Collaboration, a Choreography, or a GlobalChoreographyTask.

Figure 9.14 – The Message Flow Class Diagram

The Message Flow element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 9.8 presents the additional attributes and model associations for the Message Flow element.
9.4.1 Interaction Node

The InteractionNode element is used to provide a single element as the source and target Message Flow associations (see Figure 9.14, above) instead of the individual associations of the elements that can connect to Message Flows (see above). Only the Pool/Participant, Activity, and Event elements can connect to Message Flows. The InteractionNode element is also used to provide a single element for source and target of Conversation Links, see page 131.

The InteractionNode element does not have any attributes or model associations and does not inherit from any other BPMN element. Since Pools/Participants, Activities, and Events have their own attributes, model associations, and inheritances, additional attributes and model associations for the InteractionNode element are not necessary.

9.4.2 Message Flow Associations

These elements are used to do mapping between two elements that both contain Message Flows. The MessageFlowAssociation provides the mechanism to match up the Message Flows.

A MessageFlowAssociation is used when an (outer) diagram with Message Flows contains an (inner) diagram that also has Message Flows. It is used when:

- A Collaboration references a Choreography for inclusion between the Collaboration’s Pools (Participants). The Message Flows of the Choreography (the inner diagram) need to be mapped to the Message Flows of the Collaboration (the outer diagram).

- A Collaboration references a Conversation that contains Message Flows. The Message Flows of the Conversation can serve as a partial requirement for the Collaboration. Thus, the Message Flows of the Conversation (the inner diagram) need to be mapped to the Message Flows of the Collaboration (the outer diagram).

- A Choreography references a Conversation that contains Message Flows. The Message Flows of the Conversation can serve as a partial requirement for the Choreography. Thus, the Message Flows of the Conversation (the inner diagram) need to be mapped to the Message Flows of the Choreography (the outer diagram).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>Name is a text description of the Message Flow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sourceRef: InteractionNode</td>
<td>The InteractionNode that the Message Flow is connecting from. Of the types of InteractionNode, only Pools/Participants, Activities, and Events can be the source of a Message Flow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>targetRef: InteractionNode</td>
<td>The InteractionNode that the Message Flow is connecting to. Of the types of InteractionNode, only Pools/Participants, Activities, and Events can be the target of a Message Flow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>messageRef: Message [0..1]</td>
<td>The messageRef model association defines the Message that is passed via the Message Flow (see page 91 for more details).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 9.15 shows the class diagram for the MessageFlowAssociation element.

![Diagram of MessageFlowAssociation class diagram](image)

The MessageFlowAssociation element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 9.9 presents the additional model associations for the MessageFlowAssociation element.

**Table 9.9 – MessageFlowAssociation attributes and model associations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>innerMessageFlowRef: Message Flow</td>
<td>This attribute defines the Message Flow of the referenced element (e.g., a Choreography to be used in a Collaboration) that will be mapped to the parent element (e.g., the Collaboration).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outerMessageFlowRef: Message Flow</td>
<td>This attribute defines the Message Flow of the parent element (e.g., a Collaboration references a Choreography) that will be mapped to the referenced element (e.g., the Choreography).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**9.5 Conversations**

The Conversation diagram is particular usage of and an informal description of a Collaboration diagram. In general, it is a simplified version of Collaboration, but Conversation diagrams do maintain all the features of a Collaboration. In particular, Processes can appear within the Participants (Pools) of Conversation diagrams, to show how Conversation and Activities are related.

The view includes two additional graphical elements that do not exist in other BPMN views:

1. Conversation Node elements (Conversation, Sub-Conversation, and Call Conversation)
2. A Conversation Link
A **Conversation** is a logical grouping of **Message** exchanges (**Message Flows**) that can share a **Correlation**. A **Conversation** is the logical relation of **Message** exchanges. The logical relation, in practice, often concerns a business object(s) of interest, e.g., “Order,” “Shipment and Delivery,” and “Invoice.” Hence, a **Conversation** is associated with a set of name-value pairs, or a **Correlation Key** (e.g., “Order Identifier,” “Delivery Identifier”), which is recorded in the **Messages** that are exchanged. In this way, a **Message** can be routed to the specific **Process instance** responsible for receiving and processing the **Message**.

Figure 9.16 shows a simple example of a **Conversation** diagram.

![Figure 9.16 – A Conversation diagram](image)

**Figure 9.16 – A Conversation diagram**

Figure 9.17 shows a variation of the example above where the **Conversation** node has been expanded into its component **Message Flows**. Note that the diagram looks the same as a simple **Collaboration** diagram (as in Figure 9.3, above).

![Figure 9.17 – A Conversation diagram where the Conversation is expanded into Message Flows](image)

**Message** exchanges are related to each other and reflect distinct business scenarios. The relation is sometimes simple, for example, a request followed by a response, and can be described as part of a structural interface of a service (e.g., as a WSDL operation definition). However for commercial business transactions managed through **Business Processes**, the relation can be complex, involving long-running, reciprocal **Message** exchanges, and that could extend beyond bilateral to complex, multilateral **Collaborations**. For example, in logistics, stock replenishments involve the following types scenarios: creation of sales orders, assignment of carriers for shipments combining different sales orders, crossing customs/quarantine, processing payment, and investigating exceptions.
In addition to an orchestration Process, Conversations are relevant to a Choreography, but the Conversations are not visualized in a Choreography. The difference is that a Choreography provides a multi-party perspective of a Conversation. This is because the Message exchanges modeled using Choreography Activities concern multiple Participants, unlike an orchestration Process where the Message sending and receiving elements relate to one Participant only. Other than the difference in perspective, the notion of Conversation remains the same across Choreography and orchestration, and the Message exchanges of a Conversation will be executed ultimately through an orchestration Process.

Since Collaboration provides a top-down, design-time modeling perspective for Message exchanges and their Conversations, an abstracted view of the all Conversations pertaining to a domain being modeled is available through a Conversation diagram. A Conversation diagram, as depicted in Figure 9.18, shows Conversations (as hexagons) between Participants. This provides a “bird’s eye” perspective of the different Conversations that relate to the domain.

![Conversation diagram](image)

Figure 9.18 – Conversation diagram depicting several conversations between Participants in a related domain

Figure 9.18 depicts 13 distinct Conversations between collaborating Participants in a logistics domain. As examples, Retailer and Supplier are involved in a Delivery Negotiations Conversation, and Consignee converses with Retailer and Supplier through Delivery/Dispatch Plan and Shipment Schedule Conversations respectively. More than two participants MAY be involved in a Conversation, e.g., Consignee, Consolidator and Shipper in Detailed Shipment
Schedule. The association of Participants to a **Conversation** are constrained to indicate whether one or many of Participants are involved. For example, one instance of Retailer converses with one instance of Supplier for Deliver Negotiations. However, one instance of Shipper converses with multiple instances of Carrier (indicated by the multi-instance symbol of the Pool for Carrier) for Carrier Planning. Note, multiplicity in constraints of Conversation diagrams means one or more (not zero or more).

The behavior of different Conversations is modeled through separate Choreographies, detailing the Message exchange sequences. In practice, Conversations which are closely related could be combined in the same Choreography models. For example, a Message exchange in the Delivery Negotiation leads to Shipment Schedule, Delivery Planning, and Delivery/Dispatch Conversations and these could be combined together in the same Choreography. Alternatively, they could be separated in different models.

Figure 9.19 shows a subset of the larger Conversation diagram of Figure 9.18, above. Figure 9.20 and Figure 9.21 show the drill down into the “Delivery Negotiations” Sub-Conversation. This expands the Conversation with the Message Flows, providing a structural view of a Conversation without the “clutter” of sequencing details in the same diagram. Figure 9.19 also indicates the CorrelationKey involved in the Message Flows of the Conversation. For example, Order Id is necessary for all Messages of Message Flows in Delivery Negotiation. In addition, some Message Flows also require Variation Id (for dealing with shipment variations on a per line item basis).

![Figure 9.19 – An example of a Sub-Conversation](image)

Figure 9.20 shows how the Sub-Conversation of Figure 9.19, above, is expanded into a set of Message Flows and a lower-level Conversation.

![Figure 9.20 – An example of a Sub-Conversation expanded to a Conversation and Message Flow](image)
Figure 9.21 shows how the Conversation of Figure 9.20 is also expanded into a set of Message Flows, combined with the previous Message Flows. Note that the newly exposed Message Flows of the lower-level Conversation will be correlated by the CorrelationKey of both the lower-level Conversation (Variation Id) and the higher-level Sub-Conversations (Order Id).

In Figure 9.19 a hierarchical structure of Conversations can be seen with one set of Message Flows occurring within another in a parent-child relationship. In particular, after Planned Order Variations (keyed on Order Id) at the parent, a number of Message Flows of the child follow till Retailer Order and Delivery Variations Ack (keyed on Variation Id and Order Id). The remaining Message Flows (keyed on Order Id) are at the parent level. The child Conversation, as such, is part of the parent Conversation. Nesting is indicated graphically on a Conversation symbol (by a “+”), indicating a Sub-Conversation or a Call Conversation calling a Collaboration. Nesting can go to an arbitrary number of levels.

A common dependency between Conversations is overlap. Overlap occurs when two or more Conversations have some Message exchanges in common but not others. As an example in Figure 9.18, a Message is sent as part of Detailed Shipment Schedule (keyed on Carrier Schedule Id) to trigger Delivery Monitoring (keyed on Shipment Id). During Delivery Monitoring, Message could be sent to Detailed Shipment Schedule (to request modifications when transportation exceptions occur).

Splits and joins are special types of overlap scenarios. A Conversation split arises when, as part of a Conversation, a message is exchanged between two or more Participants that at the same time spawns a new, distinct Conversation (either between the same set of Participants or another set). Additionally, no further Message exchanges are shared by the split Conversations as well as no subsequent merges of them occur. An example is Delivery Planning which leads to Carrier Planning and Special Cover. A Conversation join occurs when several Conversations are merged into one Conversation and no further Message exchanges occur in the original Conversations, i.e., these Conversations are finalized. The generalization of a split and join is a Conversation refactor where Conversations are split into parallel Conversations and then are merged at a later point in time.

9.5.1 Conversation Node

ConversationNode is the abstract super class for all elements that can comprise the Conversation elements of a Collaboration diagram, which are Conversation (see page 129), Sub-Conversation (see page 129), and Call Conversation (see page 130).
Conversations are linked to and from Participants using **Conversation Links** (see page 131).

The ConversationNode element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 9.10 presents the additional attributes and model associations for the ConversationNode element.
9.5.2 Conversation

A Conversation is an atomic element for a Conversation (Collaboration) diagram. It represents a set of Message Flows grouped together based on a concept and/or a CorrelationKey. A Conversation will involve two or more Participants.

- A Conversation is a hexagon that MUST be drawn with a single thin line (see Figure 9.23).

![Figure 9.23 – A Communication element]

The Conversation element inherits the attributes and model associations of ConversationNode (see Table 9.10), but does not contain any additional attributes or model associations.

9.5.3 Sub-Conversation

A Sub-Conversation is a ConversationNode that is a hierarchical division within the parent Collaboration. A Sub-Conversation is a graphical object within a Collaboration, but it also can be “opened up” to show the lower-level details of the Conversation, which consist of Message Flows, Conversations, and/or other Sub-Conversations. The Sub-Conversation shares the Participants of its parent Conversation.

- A Sub-Conversation is a hexagon that MUST be drawn with a single thin line (see Figure 9.24).
- The Sub- Conversation marker MUST be a small square with a plus sign (+) inside. The square MUST be positioned at the bottom center of the shape.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string [0..1]</td>
<td>Name is a text description of the ConversationNode element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>participantRefs: Participant [2..*]</td>
<td>This provides the list of Participants that are used in the ConversationNode's parent Conversation. This reference is visualized through a Conversation Link (see page 131).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>messageFlowRefs: MessageFlow [0..*]</td>
<td>A reference to all Message Flows (and consequently Messages) grouped by a Conversation element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correlationKeys: CorrelationKey [0..*]</td>
<td>This is a list of the ConversationNode’s CorrelationKeys, which are used to group Message Flows for the ConversationNode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The **Sub-Conversation** element inherits the attributes and model associations of ConversationNode (see Table 9.10). Table 9.11 presents the additional model associations for the **Sub-Conversation** element.

### Table 9.11 – Sub-Conversation Model Associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conversationNodes: ConversationNode [0..*]</td>
<td>The ConversationNodes model aggregation relationship allows a Sub-Conversation to contain other ConversationNodes, in order to group Message Flows of the Sub-Conversation and associate correlation information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 9.5.4 Call Conversation

A **Call Conversation** identifies a place in the Conversation (Collaboration) where a global Conversation or a GlobalConversation is used.

- If the Call Conversation calls a GlobalConversation, then the shape will be the same as a Conversation, but the boundary of the shape will MUST have a thick line (see Figure 9.25).

- If the Call Conversation calls a Collaboration, then the shape will be the same as a Sub-Conversation, but the boundary of the shape will MUST have a thick line (see Figure 9.26).

The **Call Conversation** element inherits the attributes and model associations of ConversationNode (see Table 9.10). Table 9.12 presents the additional model associations for the **Call Conversation** element.
NOTE: The ConversationNode attribute messageFlowRef doesn’t apply to Call Conversations.

9.5.5 Global Conversation

A GlobalConversation is a reusable, atomic Conversation definition that can be called from within any Collaboration by a Call Conversation.

The GlobalConversation element inherits the attributes and model associations and Collaboration (see Table 9.1), but does not have any additional attributes or model associations.

A GlobalConversation is a restricted type of Collaboration, it is an “empty Collaboration.”

◆ A GlobalConversation MUST NOT contain any ConversationNodes.

Since a GlobalConversation does not have any Flow Elements, it does not require MessageFlowAssociations, ParticipantAssociations, or ConversationAssociations or Artifacts. It is basically a set of Participants, Message Flows, and CorrelationKeys intended for reuse. Also, the Collaboration attribute choreographyRef is not applicable to GlobalConversation.

9.5.6 Conversation Link

Conversation Links are used to connect ConversationNodes to and from Participants (Pools -- see Figure 9.27).

◆ Conversation Links MUST be drawn with double thin lines.

Figure 9.27 – A Conversation Link element
Processes can appear in the Participants (Pools) of Conversation diagrams, as shown in Figure 9.28. The invoicing and ordering Conversations have links into Activities and Events of the Process in the Order Processor. The other two Conversations do not have their links “expanded.” Conversation Links into Activities that are not Send or Receive Tasks indicate that the Activity will send or receive Messages of the Conversation at some level of nesting.
Figure 9.29 – Metamodel of Conversation Links related elements

The **Conversation Link** element inherits the attributes and model associations of **BaseElement** (see Table 8.5). Table 9.13 presents the additional attributes and model associations for the **Conversation Link** element.

**Table 9.13 – Conversation Link Attributes and Model Associations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string [0..1]</td>
<td>This attribute specifies the name of the <strong>Conversation Link</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sourceRef: InteractionNode</td>
<td>The <strong>InteractionNode</strong> that the <strong>Conversation Link</strong> is connecting from. A <strong>Conversation Link</strong> MUST connect to exactly one <strong>ConversationNode</strong>. If the sourceRef is not a <strong>ConversationNode</strong>, then the targetRef MUST be a <strong>ConversationNode</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>targetRef: InteractionNode</td>
<td>The <strong>InteractionNode</strong> that the <strong>Conversation Link</strong> is connecting to. A <strong>Conversation Link</strong> MUST connect to exactly one <strong>ConversationNode</strong>. If the targetRef is not a <strong>ConversationNode</strong>, then the sourceRef MUST be a <strong>ConversationNode</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Conversation Links** for **Call Conversations** show the names of **Participants** in nested **Collaboration** or global **Collaborations**, as identified by **ParticipantAssociations**. For example, Figure 9.30 has a **Collaboration** on the left with a **Call Conversations** to a **Collaboration** on the right. The **Conversation Links** on the left indicate
which Participants in the called Collaboration on the right correspond to which Participants in the calling Collaboration on the left. For example, the Credit Agency Participants on the right corresponds to the Financial Company Participant on the left. ParticipantAssociations (not shown) tie each Participant in the Collaboration on the left to a Participant in the Collaboration on the right. They can be used to show the names of Participants in nested Collaboration or global Collaborations.

Figure 9.30 – Call Conversation Links

9.5.7 Conversation Association

A ConversationAssociation is used within Collaborations and Choreographies to apply a reusable Conversation to the Message Flows of those diagrams.

A ConversationAssociation is used when a diagram references a Conversation to provide Message correlation information and/or to logically group Message Flows. It is used when:

- A Collaboration references a Choreography for inclusion between the Collaboration’s Pools (Participants). The ConversationNodes of the Choreography (the inner diagram) need to be mapped to the ConversationNodes of the Collaboration (the outer diagram).
The ConversationAssociation element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 9.14 presents the additional model associations for the ConversationAssociation element.

Table 9.14 – ConversationAssociation Model Associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>innerConversationNodeRef:</td>
<td>This attribute defines the ConversationNodes of the referenced element (e.g., a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConversationNode [0..1]</td>
<td>Choreography to be used in a Collaboration) that will be mapped to the parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>element (e.g., the Collaboration).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outerConversationNodeRef:</td>
<td>This attribute defines the ConversationNodes of the parent element (e.g., a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConversationNode [0..*]</td>
<td>Collaboration references a Choreography) that will be mapped to the referenced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>element (e.g., the Choreography).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.5.8 Correlations

Correlations are the mechanism that is used to assign the Messages to the proper Process instance, and can be defined for the Message Flows that belong to the Conversation. Correlations can be used to specify Conversations between Processes that follow a fairly simple Conversation pattern in the sense that:

- The conceptual data of the Conversation is well known and defined by the participating Processes. However this doesn’t mandate that underlying type systems are identical. It is sufficient that the data is known “conceptually” on a (potentially very high) business level.

- A Conversation takes place by means of simple Message exchange between Processes, no additional agreements MUST be considered.

- There exists send and receive Tasks accepting the conceptual data of the Conversation. (An Order send by a Task of a Process should be received by at least one Task of the participating Process).
The correlation itself is defined in terms of correlation fields, which denote a subset of the conceptual data that should be used for the correlation. (For example, if the conceptual data comprises an order, then the correlation field might be denoted by the order ID).

In some applications it is useful to allow more Messages to be sent between Participants when a Collaboration is carried out than are contained in the Collaboration model. This enables Participants to exchange other Messages as needed without changing the Collaboration. If the isClosed attribute of a Collaboration has a value of false or no value, then Participants MAY send Messages to each other without additional Message Flows in the Collaboration. If the isClosed attribute of a Collaboration has a value of true, then Participants MAY NOT send Messages to each other without additional Message Flows in the Collaboration. If a Collaboration contains a Choreography, then the value of the isClosed attribute MUST be the same in both. Restrictions on unmodeled messaging specified with isClosed apply only under the Collaboration containing the restriction. PartnerEntities and PartnerRoles of the Participants MAY send Messages to each other under other Choreographies, Collaborations, and Conversations.

### 9.6 Process within Collaboration

Processes can be included in a Collaboration diagram. A Participant/Pool within the Collaboration can contain a Process (but they are NOT REQUIRED). An example of this is shown in Figure 9.4.

When a Lane (in a Process) represents a Conversation, the Flow Elements in the Lane (or elements nested or called in them) that send or receive Messages MUST do so as part of the Conversation represented by the Lane.

### 9.7 Choreography within Collaboration

Choreographies can be included in a Collaboration diagram. A Collaboration specifies how the Participants and Message Flows in the Choreography are matched up with the Participants and Message Flows in the Collaboration. A Collaboration uses ParticipantAssociations and MessageFlowAssociations for this purpose.

To handle the Participants, the innerParticipant of a ParticipantAssociation refers to a Participant in the Choreography, while the outerParticipant refers to a Participant in the Collaboration containing the Choreography. This mapping matches the Participant Bands of the Choreography Activities in the Choreography to the Pools in the Collaboration. Thus, the names in the Participant Bands are NOT REQUIRED (see Figure 9.32).
Figure 9.32 – An example of a Choreography within a Collaboration

To handle Message Flows, the innerMessageFlow of a MessageFlowAssociation refers to a Message Flow in the Choreography, while the outerMessageFlow refers to a Message Flow in the Collaboration containing the Choreography. This mapping matches the Message Flows of the Choreography (which are not visible) to the Message Flows in the Collaboration (which are visible). This allows the Message Flows of the Collaboration to be “wired up” through the appropriate Choreography Activity in the Choreography (see Figure 9.32).

The ParticipantAssociations might be derived from the partnerEntities or partnerRoles of the Participants. For example, if a Choreography Activity has a Participant with the same partnerEntity as a Participant in the Collaboration containing the Choreography, then these two Participants could be assumed to be the inner and outerParticipants of a ParticipantAssociation. Similarly, Message Flows that reference the same Message in a Call Choreography Activity and the Collaboration, could be automatically synchronized by a MessageFlowAssociation, if only one Message Flow has that Message.
9.8 Collaboration Package XML Schemas

Table 9.15 – Call Conversation XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="callConversation" type="tCallConversation" substitutionGroup="conversationNode"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tCallConversation">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tConversationNode">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="participantAssociation" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="calledCollaborationRef" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 9.16 – Collaboration XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="collaboration" type="tCollaboration" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tCollaboration">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tRootElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="choreography" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 9.17 – Conversation XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="conversation" type="tConversation" substitutionGroup="conversationNode"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tConversation">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tConversationNode"/>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 9.18 – ConversationAssociation XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="conversationAssociation" type="tConversationAssociation"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tConversationAssociation">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:attribute name="innerConversationNodeRef" type="xsd:QName" use="required"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="outerConversationNodeRef" type="xsd:QName" use="required"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 9.19 – ConversationAssociation XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="conversationLink" type="tConversationLink"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tConversationLink">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string" use="optional"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="sourceRef" type="xsd:QName" use="required"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="targetRef" type="xsd:QName" use="required"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 9.20 – ConversationNode XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="conversation" type="tConversation" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tConversation">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tCallableElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="conversationNode" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="participant" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="artifact" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element name="messageFlow" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element name="messageFlowRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="correlationKey" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 9.21 – Conversation Node XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="conversationNode" type="tConversationNode"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tConversationNode" abstract="true">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="messageFlowRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element name="participantRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="conversationRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="correlationKeyRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 9.22 – Global Conversation XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="globalConversation" type="tGlobalConversation" substitutionGroup="collaboration"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tGlobalConversation">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tCollaboration"/>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 9.23 – MessageFlow XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="messageFlow" type="tMessageFlow"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tMessageFlow">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 9.24 – MessageFlowAssociation XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="messageFlowAssociation" type="tMessageFlowAssociation"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tMessageFlowAssociation">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:attribute name="innerMessageFlowRef" type="xsd:QName" use="required"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="outerMessageFlowRef" type="xsd:QName" use="required"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 9.25 – Participant XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="participant" type="tParticipant"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tParticipant">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="interfaceRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element name="endPointRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="participantMultiplicity" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="processRef" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 9.26 – ParticipantAssociation XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="participantAssociation" type="tParticipantAssociation"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tParticipantAssociation">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="innerParticipantRef" type="xsd:QName" use="required"/>
        <xsd:element name="outerParticipantRef" type="xsd:QName" use="required"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 9.27 – ParticipantMultiplicity XML schema

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="tParticipantMultiplicity">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:attribute name="minimum" type="xsd:int"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="maximum" type="xsd:int"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 9.28 – PartnerEntity XML schema

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="tPartnerEntity">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tRootElement">
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 9.29 – PartnerRole XML schema

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="tPartnerRole">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tRootElement">
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 9.30 – Sub-Conversation XML schema

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="tSubConversation">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tConversationNode">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="conversationNode" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
10 Process

10.1 General

NOTE: The content of this clause is REQUIRED for BPMN Process Modeling Conformance or for BPMN Complete Conformance. However, this clause is NOT REQUIRED for BPMN Process Choreography Conformance, BPMN Process Execution Conformance, or BPMN BPEL Process Execution Conformance. For more information about BPMN conformance types, see page 1.

A Process describes a sequence or flow of Activities in an organization with the objective of carrying out work. In BPMN a Process is depicted as a graph of Flow Elements, which are a set of Activities, Events, Gateways, and Sequence Flows that define finite execution semantics (see Figure 10.1). Processes can be defined at any level from enterprise-wide Processes to Processes performed by a single person. Low-level Processes can be grouped together to achieve a common business goal.

Figure 10.1 – An Example of a Process

Note that BPMN uses the term Process specifically to mean a set of flow elements. It uses the terms Collaboration and Choreography when modeling the interaction between Processes.

The Process package contains classes that are used for modeling the flow of Activities, Events, and Gateways, and how they are sequenced within a Process (see Figure 10.2). When a Process is defined it is contained within Definitions.
A **Process** is a CallableElement, allowing it to be referenced and reused by other **Processes** via the **Call Activity** construct. In this capacity, a **Process** **MAY** reference a set of **Interfaces** that define its external behavior.

A **Process** is a reusable element and can be imported and used within other **Definitions**.

Figure 10.3 shows the details of the attributes and model associations of a **Process**.
Figure 10.3 – Process Details class diagram

The Process element inherits the attributes and model associations of CallableElement (see Table 10.24) and of FlowElementContainer (see Table 8.45). Table 10.1 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the Process element:

Table 10.1 – Process Attributes & Model Associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>processType: ProcessType = none { None</td>
<td>Private</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**isExecutable**: boolean [0..1]

An optional Boolean value specifying whether the **Process** is executable.

An executable **Process** is a private **Process** that has been modeled for the purpose of being executed according to the semantics of Clause 14 (see page 426). Of course, during the development cycle of the **Process**, there will be stages where the **Process** does not have enough detail to be “executable.”

A non-executable **Process** is a private **Process** that has been modeled for the purpose of documenting **Process** behavior at a modeler-defined level of detail. Thus, information needed for execution, such as formal condition expressions are typically not included in a non-executable **Process**.

For public **Processes**, no value has the same semantics as if the value were *false*. The value MAY not be *true* for public **Processes**.

**auditing**: Auditing [0..1]

This attribute provides a hook for specifying audit related properties.

**monitoring**: Monitoring [0..1]

This attribute provides a hook for specifying monitoring related properties.

**artifacts**: Artifact [0..*]

This attribute provides the list of **Artifacts** that are contained within the **Process**.

**IsClosed**: boolean = false

A boolean value specifying whether interactions, such as sending and receiving **Messages** and **Events**, not modeled in the **Process** can occur when the **Process** is executed or performed. If the value is *true*, they MAY NOT occur. If the value is *false*, they MAY occur.

**supports**: Process [0..*]

Modelers can declare that they intend all executions or performances of one **Process** to also be valid for another **Process**. This means they expect all the executions or performances of the first **Processes** to also follow the steps laid out in the second **Process**.

**properties**: Property [0..*]

Modeler-defined properties MAY be added to a **Process**. These properties are contained within the Process. All **Tasks** and **Sub-Processes** SHALL have access to these properties.

**resources**: ResourceRole [0..*]

Defines the resource that will perform or will be responsible for the **Process**. The resource, e.g., a performer, can be specified in the form of a specific individual, a group, an organization role or position, or an organization.

Note that the assigned resources of the **Process** does not determine the assigned resources of the **Activities** that are contained by the **Process**. See more details about resource assignment on page 152.
In addition, a Process instance has attributes whose values MAY be referenced by Expressions (see Table 10.2). These values are only available when the Process is being executed.

### Table 10.2 – Process instance attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>state: string = None</td>
<td>See Figure 13.2 (&quot;The Lifecycle of a BPMN Activity&quot;) in Section 13.3.2 for permissible values.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 10.2 Basic Process Concepts

#### 10.2.1 Types of BPMN Processes

Business Process modeling is used to communicate a wide variety of information to a wide variety of audiences. BPMN is designed to cover many types of modeling and allows the creation of end-to-end Business Processes. There are three basic types of BPMN Processes:

1. **Private Non-executable (internal) Business Processes**
2. **Private Executable (internal) Business Processes**
3. **Public Processes**

#### 10.2.1.1 Private (Internal) Business Processes

Private Business Processes are those internal to a specific organization. These Processes have been generally called workflow or BPM Processes (see Figure 10.4). Another synonym typically used in the Web services area is the Orchestration of services. There are two types of private Processes: executable and non-executable. An executable Process is a Process that has been modeled for the purpose of being executed according to the semantics defined in Clause 14 (see page 426). Of course, during the development cycle of the Process, there will be stages where the
Process does not have enough detail to be “executable.” A non-executable Process is a private Process that has been modeled for the purpose of documenting Process behavior at a modeler-defined level of detail. Thus, information needed for execution, such as formal condition Expressions are typically not included in a non-executable Process.

If a swimlanes-like notation is used (e.g., a Collaboration, see below), then a private Business Process will be contained within a single Pool. The Process flow is therefore contained within the Pool and cannot cross the boundaries of the Pool. The flow of Messages can cross the Pool boundary to show the interactions that exist between separate private Business Processes.

![Figure 10.4 – Example of a private Business Process](image)

10.2.1.2 Public Processes

A public Process represents the interactions between a private Business Process and another Process or Participant (see Figure 10.5). Only those Activities that are used to communicate to the other Participant(s), plus the order of these Activities, are included in the public Process. All other “internal” Activities of the private Business Process are not shown in the public Process. Thus, the public Process shows to the outside world the Messages, and the order of these Messages, that are needed to interact with that Business Process. Public Processes can be modeled separately or within a Collaboration to show the flow of Messages between the public Process Activities and other Participants. Note that the public type of Process was named “abstract” in BPMN 1.2.

![Figure 10.5 – Example of a public Process](image)

10.2.2 Use of BPMN Common Elements

Some BPMN elements are common to both Process and Choreography, as well as Collaboration, they are used in these diagrams. The next few sub clauses will describe the use of Messages, Message Flows, Participants, Sequence Flows, Artifacts, Correlations, Expressions, and Services in Choreography.

The key graphical elements of Gateways and Events are also common to both Choreography and Process. Since their usage has a large impact, they are described in major sub clauses of this clause (see page 232 for Events and page 286 for Gateways).
10.3 Activities

An **Activity** is work that is performed within a **Business Process**. An **Activity** can be atomic or non-atomic (compound). The types of **Activities** that are a part of a **Process** are: **Task**, **Sub-Process**, and **Call Activity**, which allows the inclusion of re-usable **Tasks** and **Processes** in the diagram. However, a **Process** is not a specific graphical object. Instead, it is a set of graphical objects. The following sub clauses will focus on the graphical objects **Sub-Process** and **Task**.

**Activities** represent points in a **Process** flow where work is performed. They are the executable elements of a **BPMN Process**.

The **Activity** class is an abstract element, sub-classing from **FlowElement** (as shown in Figure 10.6). Concrete sub-classes of **Activity** specify additional semantics above and beyond that defined for the generic **Activity**.

![Activity class diagram](image)

**Figure 10.6 – Activity class diagram**

The **Activity** class is the abstract super class for all concrete **Activity** types.

The **Activity** element inherits the attributes and model associations of **FlowElement** (see Table 8.44). Table 10.3 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the **Activity** element.
### Table 10.3 – Activity attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>isForCompensation</strong>: boolean = false</td>
<td>A flag that identifies whether this Activity is intended for the purposes of compensation. If false, then this Activity executes as a result of normal execution flow. If true, this Activity is only activated when a Compensation Event is detected and initiated under Compensation Event visibility scope (see page 280 for more information on scopes).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>loopCharacteristics</strong>: LoopCharacteristics [0..1]</td>
<td>An Activity MAY be performed once or MAY be repeated. If repeated, the Activity MUST have loopCharacteristics that define the repetition criteria (if the isExecutable attribute of the Process is set to true).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>resources</strong>: ResourceRole [0..*]</td>
<td>Defines the resource that will perform or will be responsible for the Activity. The resource, e.g., a performer, can be specified in the form of a specific individual, a group, an organization role or position, or an organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>default</strong>: SequenceFlow [0..1]</td>
<td>The Sequence Flow that will receive a token when none of the conditionExpressions on other outgoing Sequence Flows evaluate to true. The default Sequence Flow should not have a conditionExpression. Any such Expression SHALL be ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>properties</strong>: Property [0..*]</td>
<td>Modeler-defined properties MAY be added to an Activity. These properties are contained within the Activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>boundaryEventRefs</strong>: BoundaryEvent [0..*]</td>
<td>This references the Intermediate Events that are attached to the boundary of the Activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dataInputAssociations</strong>: DataInputAssociation [0..*]</td>
<td>An optional reference to the DataInputAssociations. A DataInputAssociation defines how the DataInput of the Activity’s InputOutputSpecification will be populated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dataOutputAssociations</strong>: DataOutputAssociation [0..*]</td>
<td>An optional reference to the DataOutputAssociations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>startQuantity</strong>: integer = 1</td>
<td>The default value is 1. The value MUST NOT be less than 1. This attribute defines the number of tokens that MUST arrive before the Activity can begin. Note that any value for the attribute that is greater than 1 is an advanced type of modeling and should be used with caution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In addition, an Activity instance has attributes whose values MAY be referenced by Expressions. These values are only available when the Activity is being executed.

Table 10.4 presents the instance attributes of the Activity element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>state: string = None</td>
<td>See Figure 13.2 (“The Lifecycle of a BPMN Activity”) in Section 13.3.2 for permissible values.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sequence Flow Connections

See “Sequence Flow Connections Rules” on page 40 for the entire set of objects and how they MAY be sources or targets of Sequence Flows.

- An Activity MAY be a target for Sequence Flows; it can have multiple incoming Sequence Flows. Incoming Sequence Flows MAY be from an alternative path and/or parallel paths.
  - If the Activity does not have an incoming Sequence Flow, then the Activity MUST be instantiated when the Process is instantiated.
  - There are two exceptions to this: Compensation Activities and Event Sub-Processes.

**NOTE:** If the Activity has multiple incoming Sequence Flows, then this is considered uncontrolled flow. This means that when a token arrives from one of the Paths, the Activity will be instantiated. It will not wait for the arrival of tokens from the other paths. If another token arrives from the same path or another path, then a separate instance of the Activity will be created. If the flow needs to be controlled, then the flow should converge on a Gateway that precedes the Activities (see “Gateways” on page 286 for more information on Gateways).

- An Activity MAY be a source for Sequence Flows; it can have multiple outgoing Sequence Flows. If there are multiple outgoing Sequence Flows, then this means that a separate parallel path is being created for each Sequence Flow (i.e., tokens will be generated for each outgoing Sequence Flow from the Activity).
  - If the Activity does not have an outgoing Sequence Flow, then the Activity marks the end of one or more paths in the Process. When the Activity ends and there are no other parallel paths active, then the Process MUST be completed.
  - There are two exceptions to this: Compensation Activities and Event Sub-Processes.

### Message Flow Connections

See “Message Flow Connection Rules” on page 41 for the entire set of objects and how they MAY be sources or targets of Message Flows.
NOTE: All Message Flows MUST connect two separate Pools. They MAY connect to the Pool boundary or to Flow Objects within the Pool boundary. They MUST NOT connect two objects within the same Pool.

- An Activity MAY be the target of a Message Flow; it can have zero (0) or more incoming Message Flows.
- An Activity MAY be a source of a Message Flow; it can have zero (0) or more outgoing Message Flows.

10.3.1 Resource Assignment

The following sub clauses define how Resources can be defined for an Activity. Figure 10.7 displays the class diagram for the BPMN elements used for Resource assignment.

Figure 10.7 – The class diagram for assigning Resources

Resource Role

The ResourceRole element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 10.5 presents the additional model associations of the ResourceRole element.
Expression Assignment

Resources can be assigned to an Activity using Expressions. These Expressions MUST return Resource entity related data types, like Users or Groups. Different Expressions can return multiple Resources. All of them are assigned to the respective subclass of the ResourceRole element, for example as potential owners. The semantics is defined by the subclass.

The ResourceAssignmentExpression element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 10.6 presents the additional model associations of the ResourceAssignmentExpression element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>resourceRef: Resource [0..1]</td>
<td>The Resource that is associated with Activity. Should not be specified when resourceAssignmentExpression is provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resourceAssignmentExpression: ResourceAssignmentExpression [0..1]</td>
<td>This defines the Expression used for the Resource assignment (see below). Should not be specified when a resourceRef is provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resourceParameterBindings: Resource-ParameterBinding [0..*]</td>
<td>This defines the Parameter bindings used for the Resource assignment (see below). Is only applicable if a resourceRef is specified.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Parameterized Resource Assignment

Resources support query parameters that are passed to the Resource query at runtime. Parameters MAY refer to Task instance data using Expressions. During Resource query execution, an infrastructure can decide which of the Parameters defined by the Resource are used. It MAY use zero (0) or more of the Parameters specified. It MAY also override certain Parameters with values defined during Resource deployment. The deployment mechanism for Tasks and Resources is out of scope for this document. Resource queries are evaluated to determine the set of Resources, e.g., people, assigned to the Activity. Failed Resource queries are treated like Resource queries that return an empty result set. Resource queries return one Resource or a set of Resources.

The ResourceParameterBinding element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 10.7 presents the additional model associations of the ResourceParameterBinding element.
10.3.2 Performer

The Performer class defines the resource that will perform or will be responsible for an Activity. The performer can be specified in the form of a specific individual, a group, an organization role or position, or an organization.

The Performer element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to ResourceRole, but does not have any additional attributes or model associations.

10.3.3 Tasks

A Task is an atomic Activity within a Process flow. A Task is used when the work in the Process cannot be broken down to a finer level of detail. Generally, an end-user and/or applications are used to perform the Task when it is executed.

A Task object shares the same shape as the Sub-Process, which is a rectangle that has rounded corners (see Figure 10.8).

- A Task is a rounded corner rectangle that MUST be drawn with a single thin line.
- The use of text, color, size, and lines for a Task MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39.
- A boundary drawn with a thick line SHALL be reserved for Call Activity (Global Tasks) (see page 186).
- A boundary drawn with a dotted line SHALL be reserved for Event Sub-Processes (see page 174) and thus are not allowed for Tasks.
- A boundary drawn with a double line SHALL be reserved for Transaction Sub-Processes (see page 176) and thus are not allowed for Tasks.

Figure 10.8 – A Task object

BPMN specifies three types of markers for Task: a Loop marker or a Multi-Instance marker and a Compensation marker. A Task MAY have one or two of these markers (see Figure 10.9).
The marker for a Task that is a standard loop MUST be a small line with an arrowhead that curls back upon itself. See page 188 for more information on loop Activities.

The loop Marker MAY be used in combination with the compensation marker.

The marker for a Task that is a multi-instance MUST be a set of three vertical lines. See page 190 for more information on multi-instance Activities.

If the multi-instance instances are set to be performed in sequence rather than parallel, then the marker will be rotated 90 degrees (see Figure 10.49).

The multi-instance marker MAY be used in combination with the compensation marker.

The marker for a Task that is used for compensation MUST be a pair of left facing triangles (like a tape player “rewind” button). See page 301 for more information on compensation.

The Compensation Marker MAY be used in combination with the loop marker or the multi-instance marker.

All the markers that are present MUST be grouped and the whole group centered at the bottom of the shape.

---

Figure 10.9 – Task markers

Figure 10.10 displays the class diagram for the Task element.

The Task inherits the attributes and model associations of Activity (see Table 10.3). There are no further attributes or model associations of the Task.
10.3.3.1 Types of Tasks

There are different types of Tasks identified within BPMN to separate the types of inherent behavior that Tasks might represent. The list of Task types MAY be extended along with any corresponding indicators. A Task which is not further specified is called Abstract Task (this was referred to as the None Task in BPMN 1.2). The notation of the Abstract Task is shown in Figure 10.8.

Service Task

A Service Task is a Task that uses some sort of service, which could be a Web service or an automated application.

A Service Task object shares the same shape as the Task, which is a rectangle that has rounded corners. However, there is a graphical marker in the upper left corner of the shape that indicates that the Task is a Service Task (see Figure 10.11).

A Service Task is a rounded corner rectangle that MUST be drawn with a single thin line and includes a marker that distinguishes the shape from other Task types (as shown in Figure 10.11).

Figure 10.11 – A Service Task Object

The Service Task inherits the attributes and model associations of Activity (see Table 10.3). In addition the following constraints are introduced when the Service Task references an Operation: The Service Task has exactly one inputSet and at most one outputSet. It has a single Data Input with an ItemDefinition equivalent to the one defined by the Message referenced by the inMessageRef attribute of the associated Operation. If the Operation defines output Messages, the Service Task has a single Data Output that has an ItemDefinition equivalent to the one defined by the Message referenced by the outMessageRef attribute of the associated Operation.

The actual Participant whose service is used can be identified by connecting the Service Task to a Participant using a Message Flows within the definitional Collaboration of the Process – see Table 10.1.
The **Service Task** inherits the attributes and model associations of **Activity** (see Table 10.3). Table 10.8 presents additional the model associations of the **Service Task**.

### Table 10.8 – Service Task model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>implementation: string = ##webService</td>
<td>This attribute specifies the technology that will be used to send and receive the <strong>Messages</strong>. Valid values are &quot;##unspecified&quot; for leaving the implementation technology open, &quot;##WebService&quot; for the Web service technology or a URI identifying any other technology or coordination protocol. A Web service is the default technology.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operationRef: Operation [0..1]</td>
<td>This attribute specifies the operation that is invoked by the Service Task.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Send Task**

A **Send Task** is a simple **Task** that is designed to send a **Message** to an external **Participant** (relative to the **Process**). Once the **Message** has been sent, the **Task** is completed.

The actual **Participant** which the **Message** is sent can be identified by connecting the **Send Task** to a **Participant** using a **Message Flows** within the definitional **Collaboration** of the **Process** (see Table 10.1).

A **Send Task** object shares the same shape as the **Task**, which is a rectangle that has rounded corners. However, there is a filled envelope marker (the same marker as a **throw Message Event**) in the upper left corner of the shape that indicates that the **Task** is a **Send Task**.

---

© ISO/IEC 2013 - All rights reserved
A **Send Task** is a rounded corner rectangle that MUST be drawn with a single thin line and includes a filled envelope marker that distinguishes the shape from other **Task** types (as shown in Figure 10.13).

![Send Task Object](image)

**Figure 10.13 – A Send Task Object**

The **Send Task** inherits the attributes and model associations of **Activity** (see Table 10.3). In addition the following constraints apply when the **Send Task** references a **Message**: The **Send Task** has at most one **inputSet** and one **Data Input**. If the **Data Input** is present, it MUST have an **ItemDefinition** equivalent to the one defined by the associated **Message**. At execution time, when the **Send Task** is executed, the data automatically moves from the **Data Input** on the **Send Task** into the **Message** to be sent. If the **Data Input** is not present, the **Message** will not be populated with data from the **Process**.

Table 10.9 presents the additional model associations of the **Send Task**.
Receive Task

A Receive Task is a simple Task that is designed to wait for a Message to arrive from an external Participant (relative to the Process). Once the Message has been received, the Task is completed.

The actual Participant from which the Message is received can be identified by connecting the Receive Task to a Participant using a Message Flows within the definitional Collaboration of the Process – see Table 10.1.

A Receive Task is often used to start a Process. In a sense, the Process is bootstrapped by the receipt of the Message. In order for the Receive Task to instantiate the Process its instantiate attribute MUST be set to true and it MUST NOT have any incoming Sequence Flow.

A Receive Task object shares the same shape as the Task, which is a rectangle that has rounded corners. However, there is an unfilled envelope marker (the same marker as a catch Message Event) in the upper left corner of the shape that indicates that the Task is a Receive Task.

A Receive Task is a rounded corner rectangle that MUST be drawn with a single thin line and includes an unfilled envelope marker that distinguishes the shape from other Task types (as shown in Figure 10.15). If the instantiate attribute is set to true, the envelope marker looks like a Message Start Event (as shown in Figure 10.16).

Table 10.9 – Send Task model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>messageRef: Message [0..1]</td>
<td>A Message for the messageRef attribute MAY be entered. This indicates that the Message will be sent by the Task. The Message in this context is equivalent to an out-only message pattern (Web service). One or more corresponding outgoing Message Flows MAY be shown on the diagram. However, the display of the Message Flows is NOT REQUIRED. The Message is applied to all outgoing Message Flows and the Message will be sent down all outgoing Message Flows at the completion of a single instance of the Task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operationRef: Operation</td>
<td>This attribute specifies the operation that is invoked by the Send Task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>implementation: string = ##webService</td>
<td>This attribute specifies the technology that will be used to send and receive the Messages. Valid values are &quot;##unspecified&quot; for leaving the implementation technology open, &quot;##WebService&quot; for the Web service technology or a URI identifying any other technology or coordination protocol. A Web service is the default technology.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 10.15 – A Receive Task Object
The **Receive Task** inherits the attributes and model associations of **Activity** (see Table 10.3). In addition the following constraints apply when the **Receive Task** references a **Message**: The **Receive Task** has at most one **outputSet** and at most one **Data output**. If the **Data output** is present, it MUST have an **ItemDefinition** equivalent to the one defined by the associated **Message**. At execution time, when the **Receive Task** is executed, the data automatically moves from the **Message** to the **Data Output** on the **Receive Task**. If the **Data Output** is not present, the payload within the **Message** will not flow out of the **Receive Task** and into the **Process**.

Table 10.10 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the **Receive Task**.

### Table 10.10 – Receive Task attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>messageRef: Message [0..1]</td>
<td>A <strong>Message</strong> for the <strong>messageRef</strong> attribute MAY be entered. This indicates that the <strong>Message</strong> will be received by the <strong>Task</strong>. The <strong>Message</strong> in this context is equivalent to an <strong>in-only</strong> message pattern (Web service). One (1) or more corresponding <strong>incoming Message Flows</strong> MAY be shown on the diagram. However, the display of the <strong>Message Flows</strong> is NOT REQUIRED. The <strong>Message</strong> is applied to all <strong>incoming Message Flows</strong>, but can arrive for only one (1) of the <strong>incoming Message Flows</strong> for a single instance of the <strong>Task</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instantiate: boolean = false</td>
<td><strong>Receive Tasks</strong> can be defined as the instantiation mechanism for the <strong>Process</strong> with the <strong>instantiate</strong> attribute. This attribute MAY be set to <strong>true</strong> if the <strong>Task</strong> is the first <strong>Activity</strong> (i.e., there are no <strong>incoming Sequence Flows</strong>). Multiple <strong>Tasks</strong> MAY have this attribute set to <strong>true</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operationRef: Operation</td>
<td>This attribute specifies the operation through which the <strong>Receive Task</strong> receives the <strong>Message</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>implementation: string = ##webService</td>
<td>This attribute specifies the technology that will be used to send and receive the <strong>Messages</strong>. Valid values are &quot;##unspecified&quot; for leaving the implementation technology open, &quot;##WebService&quot; for the Web service technology or a URI identifying any other technology or coordination protocol A Web service is the default technology.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**User Task**

A **User Task** is a typical “workflow” **Task** where a human performer performs the **Task** with the assistance of a software application and is scheduled through a task list manager of some sort.
A **User Task** is a rounded corner rectangle that MUST be drawn with a single thin line and includes a human figure marker that distinguishes the shape from other **Task** types (as shown in Figure 10.17).

![Figure 10.17 – A User Task Object](image)

See “User Task” on page 160 within the larger section of “Human Interactions” for the details of **User Tasks**.

**Manual Task**

A **Manual Task** is a **Task** that is expected to be performed without the aid of any business process execution engine or any application. An example of this could be a telephone technician installing a telephone at a customer location.

A **Manual Task** is a rounded corner rectangle that MUST be drawn with a single thin line and includes a hand figure marker that distinguishes the shape from other **Task** types (as shown in Figure 10.17).

![Figure 10.18 – A Manual Task Object](image)

See “Manual Task” on page 163 within the larger section of “Human Interactions” for the details of **Manual Tasks**.

**Business Rule**

A **Business Rule Task** provides a mechanism for the **Process** to provide input to a Business Rules Engine and to get the output of calculations that the Business Rules Engine might provide. The **InputOutputSpecification** of the **Task** (see page 210) will allow the **Process** to send data to and receive data from the Business Rules Engine.

A **Business Rule Task** object shares the same shape as the **Task**, which is a rectangle that has rounded corners. However, there is a graphical marker in the upper left corner of the shape that indicates that the **Task** is a **Business Rule Task** (see Figure 10.11).

A **Business Rule Task** is a rounded corner rectangle that MUST be drawn with a single thin line and includes a marker that distinguishes the shape from other **Task** types (as shown in Figure 10.19).
The Business Rule Task inherits the attributes and model associations of Activity (see Table 10.3). Table 10.11 presents the additional attributes of the Business Rule Task.

Table 10.11 – Business Rule Task attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>implementation: string</td>
<td>This attribute specifies the technology that will be used to implement the Business Rule Task. Valid values are &quot;##unspecified&quot; for leaving the implementation technology open, &quot;##WebService&quot; for the Web service technology or a URI identifying any other technology or coordination protocol. The default technology for this task is unspecified.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Script Task

A Script Task is executed by a business process engine. The modeler or implementer defines a script in a language that the engine can interpret. When the Task is ready to start, the engine will execute the script. When the script is completed, the Task will also be completed.

A Script Task object shares the same shape as the Task, which is a rectangle that has rounded corners. However, there is a graphical marker in the upper left corner of the shape that indicates that the Task is a Script Task (see Figure 10.11).

A Script Task is a rounded corner rectangle that MUST be drawn with a single thin line and includes a marker that distinguishes the shape from other Task types (as shown in Figure 10.20).
10.3.4 Human Interactions

10.3.4.1 Tasks with Human involvement

In many business workflows, human involvement is needed to complete certain tasks specified in the workflow model. BPMN specifies two different types of tasks with human involvement, the Manual Task and the User Task.

A User Task is executed by and managed by a business process runtime. Attributes concerning the human involvement, like people assignments and UI rendering can be specified in great detail. A Manual Task is neither executed by nor managed by a business process runtime.

Notation

Both, the Manual Task and User Task share the same shape, which is a rectangle that has rounded corners. Manual Tasks and User Tasks have a icons to indicate the human involvement is REQUIRED to complete the Task (see Figure 10.15 and Figure 10.17).

Manual Task

A Manual Task is a Task that is not managed by any business process engine. It can be considered as an unmanaged Task, unmanaged in the sense of that the business process engine doesn’t track the start and completion of such a Task. An example of this could be a paper based instruction for a telephone technician to install a telephone at a customer location.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>scriptFormat: string [0..1]</td>
<td>Defines the format of the script. This attribute value MUST be specified with a mime-type format. And it MUST be specified if a script is provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>script: string [0..1]</td>
<td>The modeler MAY include a script that can be run when the Task is performed. If a script is not included, then the Task will act as the equivalent of an Abstract Task.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10.12 – Script Task attributes

Figure 10.21 – Manual Task class diagram
The **User Task** inherits the attributes and model associations of **Activity** (see Table 10.3), but does not have any additional attributes or model associations.

**User Task**

A **User Task** is a typical “workflow” **Task** where a human performer performs the **Task** with the assistance of a software application. The lifecycle of the **Task** is managed by a software component (called task manager) and is typically executed in the context of a **Process**.

![User Task class diagram](image)

**Figure 10.22 – User Task class diagram**

The **User Task** can be implemented using different technologies, specified by the `implementation` attribute. Besides the Web service technology, any technology can be used. A **User Task** for instance can be implemented using WS-HumanTask by setting the implementation attribute to “http://docs.oasis-open.org/ns/bpel4people/ws-humantask/protocol/200803.”

The **User Task** inherits the attributes and model associations of **Activity** (see Table 10.3). Table 10.13 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the **User Task**. If implementations extend these attributes (e.g., to introduce subjects or descriptions with presentation parameters), they **SHOULD** use attributes defined by the OASIS WS-HumanTask specification.

**Table 10.13 – User Task attributes and model associations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>implementation</code></td>
<td>This attribute specifies the technology that will be used to implement the <strong>User Task</strong>. Valid values are &quot;##unspecified&quot; for leaving the implementation technology open, &quot;##WebService&quot; for the Web service technology or a URI identifying any other technology or coordination protocol. The default technology for this task is unspecified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>renderings</code></td>
<td>This attribute acts as a hook which allows BPMN adopters to specify task rendering attributes by using the BPMN Extension mechanism.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The User Task inherits the instance attributes of Activity (see Table 8.49). Table 10.14 presents the instance attributes of the User Task element.

Table 10.14 – User Task instance attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>actualOwner: string</td>
<td>Returns the “user” who picked/claimed the User task and became the actual owner of it. The value is a literal representing the user’s id, email address etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taskPriority: integer</td>
<td>Returns the priority of the User Task.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rendering of User Tasks

BPMN User Tasks need to be rendered on user interfaces like forms clients, portlets, etc. The Rendering element provides an extensible mechanism for specifying UI renderings for User Tasks (Task UI). The element is optional. One or more rendering methods can be provided in a Task definition. A User Task can be deployed on any compliant implementation, irrespective of the fact whether the implementation supports specified rendering methods or not. The Rendering element is the extension point for renderings. Things like language considerations are opaque for the Rendering element because the rendering applications typically provide Multilanguage support. Where this is not the case, providers of certain rendering types can decide to extend the rendering type in order to provide language information for a given rendering. The content of the rendering element is not defined by this International Standard.

Human Performers

People can be assigned to Activities in various roles (called “generic human roles” in WS-HumanTask). BPMN 1.2 traditionally only has the Performer role. In addition to supporting the Performer role, BPMN 2.0 defines a specific HumanPerformer element allowing specifying more specific human roles as specialization of HumanPerformer, such as PotentialOwner.

Figure 10.23 – HumanPerformer class diagram
The HumanPerformer element inherits the attributes and model associations of ResourceRole (see Table 10.5), through its relationship to Performer, but does not have any additional attributes or model associations.

**Potential Owners**

Potential owners of a User Task are persons who can claim and work on it. A potential owner becomes the actual owner of a Task, usually by explicitly claiming it.

**XML Schema for Human Interactions**

Table 10.15 – ManualTask XML schema

```
<xsd:element name="manualTask" type="tManualTask" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tManualTask">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tTask">
            <xsd:complexType>
                <xsd:extension base="tTask"/>
            </xsd:complexType>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 10.16 – UserTask XML schema

<xsd:element name="userTask" type="tUserTask" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tUserTask">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tTask">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="rendering" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="implementation" type="tImplementation"
                       default="##unspecified"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

<xsd:element name="rendering" type="tRendering"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tRendering">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement"/>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

<xsd:simpleType name="tImplementation">
  <xsd:union memberTypes="xsd:anyURI">
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:token">
        <xsd:enumeration value="##unspecified"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="##WebService"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:union>
</xsd:simpleType>
Examples
Consider the following sample procurement Process from the Buyer perspective (see Figure 10.24).

Figure 10.24 – Procurement Process Example

The Process comprises of two User Tasks

- **Approve Order**: After the quotation handling, the order needs to be approved by some regional manager to continue with the order and shipment handling.
• **Review Order**: Once the order has been shipped to the Buyer, the order and shipment documents will be reviewed again by someone.

The details of the Resource and resource assignments are not shown in the BPMN above. See below XML sample of the “Buyer” Process for the Resource usage and resource assignments for potential owners.

**Table 10.19 – XML serialization of Buyer process**

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<definitions id="Definition"
  targetNamespace="http://www.example.org/UserTaskExample"
  typeLanguage="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  expressionLanguage="http://www.w3.org/1999/XPath"
  xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns="http://www.omg.org/spec/BPMN/20100524/MODEL"
  xmlns:tns="http://www.example.org/UserTaskExample">
  <resource id="regionalManager" name="Regional Manager">
    <resourceParameter id="buyerName" isRequired="true" name="Buyer Name" type="xsd:string"/>
    <resourceParameter id="region" isRequired="false" name="Region" type="xsd:string"/>
  </resource>
  <resource id="departmentalReviewer" name="Departmental Reviewer">
    <resourceParameter id="buyerName" isRequired="true" name="Buyer Name" type="xsd:string"/>
  </resource>
  <collaboration id="BuyerCollaboration" name="Buyer Collaboration">
    <participant id="BuyerParticipant" name="Buyer" processRef="BuyerProcess"/>
  </collaboration>
  <!-- Process definition -->
  <process id="BuyerProcess" name="Buyer Process">
    <laneSet id="BuyerLaneSet">
      <lane id="BuyerLane">
        <flowNodeRef>StartProcess</flowNodeRef>
        <flowNodeRef>QuotationHandling</flowNodeRef>
        <flowNodeRef>ApproveOrder</flowNodeRef>
        <flowNodeRef>OrderApprovedDecision</flowNodeRef>
        <flowNodeRef>TerminateProcess</flowNodeRef>
        <flowNodeRef>OrderAndShipment</flowNodeRef>
        <flowNodeRef>OrderHandling</flowNodeRef>
        <flowNodeRef>ShipmentHandling</flowNodeRef>
        <flowNodeRef>OrderAndShipmentMerge</flowNodeRef>
        <flowNodeRef>ReviewOrder</flowNodeRef>
        <flowNodeRef>EndProcess</flowNodeRef>
      </lane>
      <!-- More lanes and flows... -->
    </laneSet>
    <startEvent id="StartProcess"/>
  </process>
</definitions>
```
<sequenceFlow sourceRef="StartProcess" targetRef="QuotationHandling"/>
<task id="QuotationHandling" name="Quotation Handling"/>

<userTask id="ApproveOrder" name="ApproveOrder">
  <potentialOwner>
    <resourceRef>tns:regionalManager</resourceRef>
    <resourceParameterBinding parameterRef="tns:buyerName">
      <formalExpression>getDataInput('order')/address/name</formalExpression>
    </resourceParameterBinding>
    <resourceParameterBinding parameterRef="tns:region">
      <formalExpression>getDataInput('order')/address/country</formalExpression>
    </resourceParameterBinding>
  </potentialOwner>
</userTask>

<sequenceFlow sourceRef="ApproveOrder" targetRef="OrderApprovedDecision"/>
<exclusiveGateway id="OrderApprovedDecision" gatewayDirection="Diverging"/>
<sequenceFlow sourceRef="OrderApprovedDecision" targetRef="OrderAndShipment">
  <conditionExpression>Was the Order Approved?</conditionExpression>
</sequenceFlow>
<sequenceFlow sourceRef="OrderApprovedDecision" targetRef="TerminateProcess">
  <conditionExpression>Was the Order NOT Approved?</conditionExpression>
</sequenceFlow>
<endEvent id="TerminateProcess">
  <terminateEventDefinition id="TerminateEvent"/>
</endEvent>

<parallelGateway id="OrderAndShipment" gatewayDirection="Diverging"/>
<sequenceFlow sourceRef="OrderAndShipment" targetRef="OrderHandling"/>
<sequenceFlow sourceRef="OrderAndShipment" targetRef="ShipmentHandling"/>
<task id="OrderHandling" name="Order Handling"/>
<task id="ShipmentHandling" name="Shipment Handling"/>
<sequenceFlow sourceRef="OrderHandling" targetRef="OrderAndShipmentMerge"/>
<sequenceFlow sourceRef="ShipmentHandling" targetRef="OrderAndShipmentMerge"/>
<parallelGateway id="OrderAndShipmentMerge" gatewayDirection="Converging"/>
<sequenceFlow sourceRef="OrderAndShipmentMerge" targetRef="ReviewOrder"/>
<userTask id="ReviewOrder" name="Review Order">
  <potentialOwner>
    <resourceRef>tns:departmentalReviewer</resourceRef>
  </potentialOwner>
</userTask>
<resourceParameterBinding parameterRef="tns:buyerName">
  <formalExpression>getDataInput('order')/address/name</formalExpression>
</resourceParameterBinding>
</potentialOwner>
</userTask>
<sequenceFlow sourceRef="ReviewOrder" targetRef="EndProcess"/>
<endEvent id="EndProcess"/>
</process>
</definitions>

10.3.5 Sub-Processes

A Sub-Process is an Activity whose internal details have been modeled using Activities, Gateways, Events, and Sequence Flows. A Sub-Process is a graphical object within a Process, but it also can be “opened up” to show a lower-level Process. Sub-Processes define a contextual scope that can be used for attribute visibility, transactional scope, for the handling of exceptions (see page 274 for more details), of Events, or for compensation (see page 301 for more details).

There are different types of Sub- Processes, which will be described in the next five sub clauses.

Embedded Sub-Process (Sub-Process)

A Sub-Process object shares the same shape as the Task object, which is a rounded rectangle.

◆ A Sub-Process is a rounded corner rectangle that MUST be drawn with a single thin line.
◆ The use of text, color, size, and lines for a Sub-Process MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39 with the exception that:
  ◆ A boundary drawn with a thick line SHALL be reserved for Call Activity (Sub-Processes) (see page 182).
  ◆ A boundary drawn with a dotted line SHALL be reserved for Event Sub-Processes (see page 174).
  ◆ A boundary drawn with a double line SHALL be reserved for Transaction Sub-Processes (see page 176).

The Sub-Process can be in a collapsed view that hides its details (see Figure 10.25) or a Sub-Process can be in an expanded view that shows its details within the view of the Process in which it is contained (see Figure 10.26). In the collapsed form, the Sub-Process object uses a marker to distinguish it as a Sub-Process, rather than a Task.

◆ The Sub-Process marker MUST be a small square with a plus sign (+) inside. The square MUST be positioned at the bottom center of the shape.

Figure 10.25 – A Sub-Process object (collapsed)
Figure 10.26 – A Sub-Process object (expanded)

They are used to create a context for exception handling that applies to a group of Activities (see page 274 for more details). Compensations can be handled similarly (see page 301 for more details).

Expanded Sub-Processes can be used as a mechanism for showing a group of parallel Activities in a less-cluttered, more compact way. In Figure 10.27, Activities “C” and “D” are enclosed in an unlabeled expanded Sub-Process. These two Activities will be performed in parallel. Notice that the expanded Sub-Process does not include a Start Event or an End Event and the Sequence Flows to/from these Events. This usage of expanded Sub-Processes for “parallel boxes” is the motivation for having Start and End Events being optional objects.

Figure 10.27 – Expanded Sub-Process used as a “Parallel Box”

BPMN specifies five types of standard markers for Sub-Processes. The (Collapsed) Sub-Process marker, seen in Figure 10.24, can be combined with four other markers: a loop marker or a multi-instance marker, a Compensation marker, and an Ad-Hoc marker. A collapsed Sub-Process MAY have one to three of these other markers, in all combinations except that loop and multi-instance cannot be shown at the same time (see Figure 10.28).

- The marker for a Sub-Process that loops MUST be a small line with an arrowhead that curls back upon itself.
- The loop marker MAY be used in combination with any of the other markers except the multi-instance marker.
- The marker for a Sub-Process that has multiple instances MUST be a set of three vertical lines in parallel.
- The multi-instance marker MAY be used in combination with any of the other markers except the loop marker.
- The marker for an ad-hoc Sub-Process MUST be a “tilde” symbol.
- The ad-hoc marker MAY be used in combination with any of the other markers.
- The marker for a Sub-Process that is used for compensation MUST be a pair of left facing triangles (like a tape player “rewind” button).
- The Compensation marker MAY be used in combination with any of the other markers.
All the markers that are present MUST be grouped and the whole group centered at the bottom of the Sub-Process.

The Sub-Process now corresponds to the Embedded Sub-Process of BPMN 1.2. The Reusable Sub-Process of BPMN 1.2 corresponds to the Call Activity (calling a Process - see page 182). Figure 10.29 shows the class diagram related to Sub-Processes.

The Sub-Process element inherits the attributes and model associations of Activity (see Table 10.3) and of FlowElementContainer (see Table 8.45). Table 10.3 presents the additional attributes of the Sub-Process element.
Reusable Sub-Process (Call Activity)

The reusable Sub-Process of BPMN 1.2 corresponds to the Call Activity that calls a predefined Process. See details of a Call Activity on page 182.

Event Sub-Process

An Event Sub-Process is a specialized Sub-Process that is used within a Process (or Sub-Process). A Sub-Process is defined as an Event Sub-Process when its triggeredByEvent attribute is set to true.

An Event Sub-Process is not part of the normal flow of its parent Process—there are no incoming or outgoing Sequence Flows.

- An Event Sub-Process MUST NOT have any incoming or outgoing Sequence Flows.

An Event Sub-Process MAY or MAY NOT occur while the parent Process is active, but it is possible that it will occur many times. Unlike a standard Sub-Process, which uses the flow of the parent Process as a trigger, an Event Sub-Process has a Start Event with a trigger. Each time the Start Event is triggered while the parent Process is active, then the Event Sub-Process will start.

- The Start Event of an Event Sub-Process MUST have a defined trigger.
  - The Start Event trigger (EventDefinition) MUST be from the following types: Message, Error, Escalation, Compensation, Conditional, Signal, and Multiple (see page 259 for more details).

- An Event Sub-Process MUST have one and only one Start Event.

An Event Sub-Process object shares the same basic shape as the Sub-Process object, which is a rounded rectangle.

- An Event Sub-Process is a rounded corner rectangle that MUST be drawn with a single thin dotted line (see Figure 10.30 and Figure 10.31).

  - The use of text, color, size, and lines for an Event Sub-Process MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39 with the exception that:
    - If the Event Sub-Process is collapsed, then its Start Event will be used as a marker in the upper left corner of the shape (see Figure 10.30).

---

Table 10.20 – Sub-Process attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>triggeredByEvent:</td>
<td>A flag that identifies whether this Sub-Process is an Event Sub-Process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean = false</td>
<td>• If false, then this Sub-Process is a normal Sub-Process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If true, then this Sub-Process is an Event Sub-Process and is subject to additional constraints (see page 174).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>artifacts:</td>
<td>This attribute provides the list of Artifacts that are contained within the Sub-Process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artifact [0..*]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© ISO/IEC 2013 - All rights reserved
There are two possible consequences to the parent Process when an Event Sub-Process is triggered: 1) the parent Process can be interrupted, and 2) the parent Process can continue its work (not interrupted). This is determined by the type of Start Event that is used. See page 241 for the list of interrupting and non-interrupting Event Sub-Process Start Events.

Figure 10.32 provides an example of a Sub-Process that includes three Event Sub-Processes. The first Event Sub-Process is triggered by a Message, does not interrupt the Sub-Process, and can occur multiple times. The second Event Sub-Process is used for compensation and will only occur after the Sub-Process has completed. The third Event Sub-Process handles errors that occur while the Sub-Process is active and will stop (interrupt) the Sub-Process if triggered.
A Transaction is a specialized type of Sub-Process that will have a special behavior that is controlled through a transaction protocol (such as WS-Transaction). The boundary of the Sub-Process will be double-lined to indicate that it is a Transaction (see Figure 10.33).

- A Transaction Sub-Process is a rounded corner rectangle that MUST be drawn with a double thin line.
- The use of text, color, size, and lines for a transaction Sub-Process MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39.
The **Transaction Sub-Process** element inherits the attributes and model associations of **Activities** (see Table 10.3) through its relationship to **Sub-Process**. Table 10.21 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the **Transaction Sub-Process**.
There are three basic outcomes of a Transaction:

1. **Successful completion**: this will be shown as a normal Sequence Flow that leaves the Transaction Sub-Process.

2. **Failed completion (Cancel)**: When a Transaction is canceled, the Activities inside the Transaction will be subjected to the cancellation actions, which could include rolling back the Process and compensation (see page 301 for more information on compensation) for specific Activities. Note that other mechanisms for interrupting a Transaction Sub-Process will not cause compensation (e.g., Error, Timer, and anything for a non-Transaction Activity). A Cancel Intermediate Event, attached to the boundary of the Activity, will direct the flow after the Transaction has been rolled back and all compensation has been completed. The Cancel Intermediate Event can only be used when attached to the boundary of a Transaction Sub-Process. It cannot be used in any normal flow and cannot be attached to a non-Transaction Sub-Process. There are two mechanisms that can signal the cancellation of a Transaction:
   - A Cancel End Event is reached within the transaction Sub-Process. A Cancel End Event can only be used within a transaction Sub-Process.
   - A cancel Message can be received via the transaction protocol that is supporting the execution of the Transaction Sub-Process.

3. **Hazard**: This means that something went terribly wrong and that a normal success or cancel is not possible. Error Intermediate Events are used to show Hazards. When a Hazard happens, the Activity is interrupted (without compensation) and the flow will continue from the Error Intermediate Event.

The behavior at the end of a successful Transaction Sub-Process is slightly different than that of a normal Sub-Process. When each path of the Transaction Sub-Process reaches a non-Cancel End Event(s), the flow does not immediately move back up to the higher-level parent Process, as does a normal Sub-Process. First, the transaction protocol needs to verify that all the Participants have successfully completed their end of the Transaction. Most of the time this will be true and the flow will then move up to the higher-level Process. But it is possible that one of the Participants can end up with a problem that causes a Cancel or a Hazard. In this case, the flow will then move to the appropriate Intermediate Event, even though it had apparently finished successfully.
Ad-Hoc Sub-Process

An **Ad-Hoc Sub-Process** is a specialized type of **Sub-Process** that is a group of **Activities** that have no **REQUIRED** sequence relationships. A set of **Activities** can be defined for the **Process**, but the sequence and number of performances for the **Activities** is determined by the performers of the **Activities**.

A **Sub-Process** is marked as being **ad-hoc** with a “tilde” symbol placed at the bottom center of the **Sub-Process** shape (see Figure 10.35 and Figure 10.36).

- The marker for an **Ad-Hoc Sub-Process** MUST be a “tilde” symbol.
- The **Ad-Hoc** Marker MAY be used in combination with any of the other markers.

![Figure 10.35 – A collapsed Ad-Hoc Sub-Process](image1)

![Figure 10.36 – An expanded Ad-Hoc Sub-Process](image2)

The **Ad-Hoc Sub-Process** element inherits the attributes and model associations of **Activities** (see Table 10.3) through its relationship to **Sub-Process**. Table 10.22 presents the additional model associations of the **Ad-Hoc Sub-Process**.
Activities within the Process are generally disconnected from each other. During execution of the Process, any one or more of the Activities MAY be active and they MAY be performed multiple times. The performers determine when Activities will start, what the next Activity will be, and so on.

Examples of the types of Processes that are Ad-Hoc include computer code development (at a low level), sales support, and writing a book chapter. If we look at the details of writing a book chapter, we could see that the Activities within this Process include: researching the topic, writing text, editing text, generating graphics, including graphics in the text, organizing references, etc. (see Figure 10.37). There MAY be some dependencies between Tasks in this Process, such as writing text before editing text, but there is not necessarily any correlation between an instance of writing text to an instance of editing text. Editing can occur infrequently and based on the text of many instances of the writing text Task.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>completionCondition: Expression</td>
<td>This Expression defines the conditions when the Process will end. When the Expression is evaluated to true, the Process will be terminated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordering: AdHocOrdering = Parallel ( Parallel</td>
<td>Sequential )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancelRemaining-Instances: boolean = true</td>
<td>This attribute is used only if ordering is parallel. It determines whether running instances are canceled when the completionCondition becomes true.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Although there is no explicit Process structure, some sequence and data dependencies can be added to the details of the Process. For example, we can extend the book chapter Ad-Hoc Sub-Process shown above and add Data Objects, Data Associations, and even Sequence Flows (Figure 10.38).

Ad-Hoc Sub-Processes restrict the use of BPMN elements that would normally be used in Sub-Processes.

- The list of BPMN elements that MUST be used in an Ad-Hoc Sub-Process: Activity.
- The list of BPMN elements that MAY be used in an Ad-Hoc Sub-Process: Data Object, Sequence Flow, Association, Data Association, Group, Message Flow (as a source or target), Gateway, and Intermediate Event.
- The list of BPMN elements that MUST NOT be used in an Ad-Hoc Sub-Process: Start Event, End Event, Conversations (graphically), Conversation Links (graphically), and Choreography Activities.
The Data Objects as inputs into the Tasks act as an additional constraint for the performance of those Tasks. The performers still determine when the Tasks will be performed, but they are now constrained in that they cannot start the Task without the appropriate input. The addition of Sequence Flows between the Tasks (e.g., between “Generate Graphics” and “Include Graphics in Text”) creates a dependency where the performance of the first Task MUST be followed by a performance of the second Task. This does not mean that the second Task is to be performed immediately, but there MUST be a performance of the second Task after the performance of the first Task.

It is a challenge for a BPM engine to monitor the status of Ad-Hoc Sub-Processes, usually these kind of Processes are handled through groupware applications (such as e-mail), but BPMN allows modeling of Processes that are not necessarily executable, although there are some process engines that can follow an Ad-Hoc Sub-Process. Given this, at some point the Ad-Hoc Sub-Process will have complete and this can be determined by evaluating a completionCondition that evaluates Process attributes that will have been updated by an Activity in the Process.

### 10.3.6 Call Activity

A Call Activity identifies a point in the Process where a global Process or a Global Task is used. The Call Activity acts as a ‘wrapper’ for the invocation of a global Process or Global Task within the execution. The activation of a call Activity results in the transfer of control to the called global Process or Global Task.

The BPMN 2.0 Call Activity corresponds to the Reusable Sub-Process of BPMN 1.2. A BPMN 2.0 Sub-Process corresponds to the Embedded Sub-Process of BPMN 1.2 (see the previous sub clause).

A Call Activity object shares the same shape as the Task and Sub-Process, which is a rectangle that has rounded corners. However, the target of what the Activity calls will determine the details of its shape.

- If the Call Activity calls a Global Task, then the shape will be the same as a Task, but the boundary of the shape will MUST have a thick line (see Figure 10.39).
The **Call Activity** MUST display the marker of the type of **Global Task** (e.g., the **Call Activity** would display the **User Task** marker if calling a **Global User Task**).

If the **Call Activity** calls a **Process**, then there are two options:

- The details of the called **Process** can be hidden and the shape of the **Call Activity** will be the same as a **collapsed Sub-Process**, but the boundary of the shape MUST have a thick line (see Figure 10.40).

If the details of the called **Process** are available, then the shape of the **Call Activity** will be the same as a **expanded Sub-Process**, but the boundary of the shape MUST have a thick line (see Figure 10.41).

---

When a **Process** with a **definition Collaborations**, calls a **Process** that also has a **definition Collaborations**, the **Participants** of the two **Collaborations** can be matched to each other using **Participant Associations** of the **Collaboration** of the calling **Process**.
A **Call Activity** MUST fulfill the data requirements, as well as return the data produced by the CallableElement being invoked (see Figure 10.41). This means that the elements contained in the **Call Activity**’s InputOutputSpecification MUST exactly match the elements contained in the referenced CallableElement. This includes DataInputs, DataOutputs, InputSets, and OutputSets.

**Figure 10.42 –The Call Activity class diagram**

A **Call Activity** can override properties and attributes of the element being called, potentially changing the behavior of the called element based on the calling context. For example, when the **Call Activity** defines one or more ResourceRole elements, the elements defined by the CallableElement are ignored and the elements defined in the **Call Activity** are used instead. Also, **Events** that are propagated along the hierarchy (errors and escalations) are propagated from the called element to the **Call Activity** (and can be handled on its boundary).

The **Call Activity** inherits the attributes and model associations of **Activity** (see Table 10.3). Table 10.23 presents the additional model associations of the **Call Activity**.
Callable Element

CallableElement is the abstract super class of all Activities that have been defined outside of a Process or Choreography but which can be called (or reused), by a Call Activity, from within a Process or Choreography. It MAY reference Interfaces that define the service operations that it provides. The BPMN elements that can be called by Call Activities (i.e., are CallableElements) are: Process and GlobalTask (see Figure 10.43). CallableElements are RootElements, which can be imported and used in other Definitions. When CallableElements (e.g., Process) are defined, they are contained within Definitions.

Table 10.23 – CallActivity model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>calledElement: CallableElement [0..1]</td>
<td>The element to be called, which will be either a Process or a GlobalTask. Other CallableElements, such as Choreography, GlobalChoreographyTask, Conversation, and GlobalCommunication MUST NOT be called by the Call Conversation element.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CallableElement inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to RootElement. Table 10.24 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the CallableElement.
When a CallableElement is exposed as a Service, it has to define one or more InputOutputBinding elements. An InputOutputBinding element binds one Input and one Output of the InputOutputSpecification to an Operation of a Service Interface. Table 10.25 presents the additional model associations of the InputOutputBinding.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string [0..1]</td>
<td>The descriptive name of the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supportedInterfaceRefs:</td>
<td>The Interfaces describing the external behavior provided by this element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface [0..*]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ioSpecification: Input</td>
<td>The InputOutputSpecification defines the inputs and outputs and the InputSets and OutputSets for the Activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OutputSpecification [0..1]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ioBinding: InputOutput</td>
<td>The InputOutputBinding defines a combination of one InputSet and one OutputSet in order to bind this to an operation defined in an interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binding [0..*]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10.25 – InputOutputBinding model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>inputDataRef: DataInput</td>
<td>A reference to one specific DataInput defined as part of the InputOutputSpecification of the Activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outputDataRef: DataOutput</td>
<td>A reference to one specific DataOutput defined as part of the InputOutputSpecification of the Activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operationRef: Operation</td>
<td>A reference to one specific Operation defined as part of the Interface of the Activity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.3.7 Global Task

A Global Task is a reusable, atomic Task definition that can be called from within any Process by a Call Activity.
The `GlobalTask` inherits the attributes and model associations of `CallableElement` (see Table 10.24). Table 10.26 presents the additional model associations of the `GlobalTask`.

Table 10.26 – Global Task model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>resources: ResourceRole [0..*]</code></td>
<td>Defines the resource that will perform or will be responsible for the <code>GlobalTask</code>. In the case where the <code>CallActivity</code> that references this <code>GlobalTask</code> defines its own resources, they will override the ones defined here.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Types of Global Task

There are different types of `Tasks` identified within BPMN to separate the types of inherent behavior that `Tasks` might represent. The types of `GlobalTasks` are only a subset of standard `Tasks` types. Only `GlobalUserTask`, `GlobalManualTask`, `GlobalScriptTask`, and `GlobalBusinessRuleTask` are defined in BPMN. For the sake of efficiency in this document, the list of `Task` types is presented once on page 154. The behavior, attributes, and model associations defined in that sub clause also apply to the corresponding types of `Global Tasks`. 

Figure 10.44 – Global Tasks class diagram
10.3.8 Loop Characteristics

Activities MAY be repeated sequentially, essentially behaving like a loop. The presence of LoopCharacteristics signifies that the Activity has looping behavior. LoopCharacteristics is an abstract class. Concrete subclasses define specific kinds of looping behavior.

The LoopCharacteristics inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). There are no further attributes or model associations of the LoopCharacteristics.

However, each Loop Activity instance has attributes whose values MAY be referenced by Expressions. These values are only available when the Loop Activity is being executed.

Figure 10.45 displays the class diagram for an Activity’s loop characteristics, including the details of both the standard loop and a multi-instance.

Figure 10.45 – LoopCharacteristics class diagram

The LoopCharacteristics element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5), but does not have any further attributes or model associations. However, a Loop Activity does have additional instance attributes as shown in Table 10.27.
Table 10.27 – Loop Activity instance attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>loopCounter: integer</td>
<td>The LoopCounter attribute is used at runtime to count the number of loops and is automatically updated by the process engine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Standard Loop Characteristics

The StandardLoopCharacteristics class defines looping behavior based on a boolean condition. The Activity will loop as long as the boolean condition is true. The condition is evaluated for every loop iteration, and MAY be evaluated at the beginning or at the end of the iteration. In addition, a numeric cap can be optionally specified. The number of iterations MAY NOT exceed this cap.

- The marker for a Task or a Sub-Process that is a standard loop MUST be a small line with an arrowhead that curls back upon itself (see Figure 10.46 and Figure 10.47).
- The loop Marker MAY be used in combination with the Compensation Marker.

Figure 10.46 – A Task object with a Standard Loop Marker

Figure 10.47 – A Sub-Process object with a Standard Loop Marker

The StandardLoopCharacteristics element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Figure 8.5), through its relationship to LoopCharacteristics. Table 10.28 presents the additional attributes and model associations for the StandardLoopCharacteristics element.
Multi-Instance Characteristics

The MultiInstanceLoopCharacteristics class allows for creation of a desired number of Activity instances. The instances MAY execute in parallel or MAY be sequential. Either an Expression is used to specify or calculate the desired number of instances or a data driven setup can be used. In that case a data input can be specified, which is able to handle a collection of data. The number of items in the collection determines the number of Activity instances. This data input can be produced by an input Data Association. The modeler can also configure this loop to control the tokens produced.

- The marker for a Task or Sub-Process that is a multi-instance MUST be a set of three vertical lines.
- If the multi-instance instances are set to be performed in parallel rather than sequential (the isSequential attribute set to false), then the lines of the marker will be vertical (see Figure 10.48).
- If the multi-instance instances are set to be performed in sequence rather than parallel (the isSequential attribute set to true), then the marker will be horizontal (see Figure 10.49).
- The Multi-Instance marker MAY be used in combination with the Compensation marker.

Table 10.28 – StandardLoopCharacteristics attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>testBefore: boolean = false</td>
<td>Flag that controls whether the loop condition is evaluated at the beginning (testBefore = true) or at the end (testBefore = false) of the loop iteration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loopMaximum: integer [0..1]</td>
<td>Serves as a cap on the number of iterations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loopCondition: Expression [0..1]</td>
<td>A boolean Expression that controls the loop. The Activity will only loop as long as this condition is true. The looping behavior MAY be underspecified, meaning that the modeler can simply document the condition, in which case the loop cannot be formally executed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 10.48 – Activity Multi-Instance marker for parallel instances

Figure 10.49 – Activity Multi-Instance marker for sequential instances
The MultiInstanceLoopCharacteristics element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5), through its relationship to LoopCharacteristics. Table 10.29 presents the additional attributes and model associations for the MultiInstanceLoopCharacteristics element.

Table 10.29 – MultiInstanceLoopCharacteristics attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>isSequential: boolean = false</td>
<td>This attribute is a flag that controls whether the Activity instances will execute sequentially or in parallel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| loopCardinality: Expression [0..1] | A numeric Expression that controls the number of Activity instances that will be created. This Expression MUST evaluate to an integer. This MAY be underspecified, meaning that the modeler MAY simply document the condition. In such a case the loop cannot be formally executed.  
In order to initialize a valid multi-instance, either the loopCardinality Expression or the loopDataInput MUST be specified. |
| loopDataInputRef: ItemAwareElement [0..1] | This ItemAwareElement is used to determine the number of Activity instances, one Activity instance per item in the collection of data stored in that ItemAwareElement element. 
For Tasks it is a reference to a Data Input which is part of the Activity's InputOutputSpecification.  
For Sub-Processes it is a reference to a collection-valued Data Object in the context that is visible to the Sub-Processes. 
In order to initialize a valid multi-instance, either the loopCardinality Expression or the loopDataInput MUST be specified. |
| loopDataOutputRef: ItemAwareElement [0..1] | This ItemAwareElement specifies the collection of data, which will be produced by the multi-instance. 
For Tasks it is a reference to a Data Output which is part of the Activity's InputOutputSpecification.  
For Sub-Processes it is a reference to a collection-valued Data Object in the context that is visible to the Sub-Processes. |
| inputDataItem: DataInput [0..1] | A Data Input, representing for every Activity instance the single item of the collection stored in the loopDataInput. This Data Input can be the source of DataInputAssociation to a data input of the Activity's InputOutputSpecification. The type of this Data Input MUST the scalar of the type defined for the loopDataInput. |
| outputDataItem: DataOutput [0..1] | A Data Output, representing for every Activity instance the single item of the collection stored in the loopDataOutput. This Data Output can be the target of DataOutputAssociation to a data output of the Activity's InputOutputSpecification. The type of this Data Output MUST the scalar of the type defined for the loopDataOutput. |
Table 10.30 lists all instance attributes available at runtime. For each instance of the Multi-Instance Activity (outer instance), there exists a number of generated (inner) instances of the Activity at runtime.

Table 10.29 – MultiInstanceLoopCharacteristics attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>attribute</th>
<th>description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>behavior</td>
<td>The attribute behavior acts as a shortcut for specifying when events SHALL be thrown from an Activity instance that is about to complete. It can assume values of None, One, All, and Complex, resulting in the following behavior:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>None</strong>: the EventDefinition which is associated through the noneEvent association will be thrown for each instance completing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>One</strong>: the EventDefinition referenced through the oneEvent association will be thrown upon the first instance completing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>All</strong>: no Event is ever thrown; a token is produced after completion of all instances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Complex</strong>: the complexBehaviorDefinitions are consulted to determine if and which Events to throw.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complexBehaviorDefinition</td>
<td>Controls when and which Events are thrown in case behavior is set to complex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>completionCondition</td>
<td>This attribute defines a boolean Expression that when evaluated to true, cancels the remaining Activity instances and produces a token.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oneBehaviorEventRef</td>
<td>The EventDefinition which is thrown when behavior is set to one and the first internal Activity instance has completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noneBehaviorEventRef</td>
<td>The EventDefinition which is thrown when the behavior is set to none and an internal Activity instance has completed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 10.30 – Multi-instance Activity instance attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>loopCounter: integer</td>
<td>This attribute is provided for each generated (inner) <em>instance</em> of the <em>Activity</em>. It contains the sequence number of the generated <em>instance</em>, i.e., if this value of some <em>instance</em> in n, the <em>instance</em> is the n-th <em>instance</em> that was generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numberOfInstances: integer</td>
<td>This attribute is provided for the outer <em>instance</em> of the <em>Multi-Instance Activity</em> only. This attribute contains the total number of inner <em>instances</em> created for the <em>Multi-Instance Activity</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numberOfActiveInstances: integer</td>
<td>This attribute is provided for the outer <em>instance</em> of the <em>Multi-Instance Activity</em> only. This attribute contains the number of currently active inner <em>instances</em> for the <em>Multi-Instance Activity</em>. In case of a sequential <em>Multi-Instance Activity</em>, this value can’t be greater than 1. For parallel <em>Multi-Instance Activities</em>, this value can’t be greater than the value contained in numberOfInstances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numberOfCompletedInstances: integer</td>
<td>This attribute is provided for the outer <em>instance</em> of the <em>Multi-Instance Activity</em> only. This attribute contains the number of already completed inner <em>instances</em> for the <em>Multi-Instance Activity</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numberOfTerminatedInstances: integer</td>
<td>This attribute is provided for the outer <em>instance</em> of the <em>Multi-Instance Activity</em> only. This attribute contains the number of terminated inner <em>instances</em> for the <em>Multi-Instance Activity</em>. The sum of numberOfTerminatedInstances, numberOfCompletedInstances, and numberOfActiveInstances always sums up to numberOfInstances.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complex Behavior Definition**

This element controls when and which *Events* are thrown in case *behavior* of the *Multi-Instance Activity* is set to *complex*.

The ComplexBehaviorDefinition element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 10.31 presents the additional attributes and model associations for the ComplexBehaviorDefinition element.
10.3.9 XML Schema for Activities

Table 10.32 – Activity XML schema
<xs:element name="activity" type="tActivity"/>
<xs:complexType name="tActivity" abstract="true">
    <xs:complexContent>
        <xs:extension base="tFlowNode">
            <xs:sequence>
                <xs:element ref="ioSpecification" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
                <xs:element ref="property" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xs:element ref="dataInputAssociation" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xs:element ref="dataOutputAssociation" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xs:element ref="resourceRole" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xs:element ref="loopCharacteristics" minOccurs="0"/>
            </xs:sequence>
            <xs:attribute name="isForCompensation" type="xsd:boolean" default="false"/>
            <xs:attribute name="startQuantity" type="xsd:integer" default="1"/>
            <xs:attribute name="completionQuantity" type="xsd:integer" default="1"/>
            <xs:attribute name="default" type="xsd:IDREF" use="optional"/>
        </xs:extension>
    </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
Table 10.33 – AdHocSubProcess XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="adHocSubProcess" type="tAdHocSubProcess" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tAdHocSubProcess">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tSubProcess">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="completionCondition" type="tExpression" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

```xml
<xsd:simpleType name="tAdHocOrdering">
  <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
    <xsd:enumeration value="Parallel"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="Sequential"/>
  </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
```

Table 10.34 – BusinessRuleTask XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="businessRuleTask" type="tBusinessRuleTask" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tBusinessRuleTask">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tTask">
      <xsd:attribute name="implementation" type="tImplementation" default="##unspecified"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 10.35 – CallableElement XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="callableElement" type="tCallableElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tCallableElement">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tRootElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="supportedInterfaceRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="ioSpecification" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <xsd:element ref="ioBinding" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.36 – CallActivity XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="callActivity" type="tCallActivity" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tCallActivity">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tActivity">
      <xsd:attribute name="calledElement" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.37 – GlobalBusinessRuleTask XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="globalBusinessRuleTask" type="tGlobalBusinessRuleTask" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tGlobalBusinessRuleTask">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tGlobalTask">
      <xsd:attribute name="implementation" type="tImplementation" default="##unspecified"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
### Table 10.38 – GlobalScriptTask XML schema

```
<xsd:element name="globalScriptTask" type="tGlobalScriptTask" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tGlobalScriptTask">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tGlobalTask">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="script" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="scriptLanguage" type="xsd:anyURI"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

### Table 10.39 – GlobalTask XML schema

```
<xsd:element name="globalTask" type="tGlobalTask" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tGlobalTask">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tCallableElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="resourceRole" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

### Table 10.40 – LoopCharacteristics XML schema

```
<xsd:element name="loopCharacteristics" type="tLoopCharacteristics"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tLoopCharacteristics" abstract="true">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement"/>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 10.41 – MultiInstanceLoopCharacteristics XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="multiInstanceLoopCharacteristics" type="tMultiInstanceLoopCharacteristics"
    substitutionGroup="loopCharacteristics"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tMultiInstanceLoopCharacteristics">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tLoopCharacteristics">
            <xsd:sequence>
                <xsd:element name="loopCardinality" type="tExpression" minOccurs="0"
                    maxOccurs="1"/>
                <xsd:element name="loopDataInputRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0"
                    maxOccurs="1"/>
                <xsd:element name="loopDataOutputRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0"
                    maxOccurs="1"/>
                <xsd:element name="inputDataItem" type="tDataInput" minOccurs="0"
                    maxOccurs="1"/>
                <xsd:element name="outputDataItem" type="tDataOutput" minOccurs="0"
                    maxOccurs="1"/>
                <xsd:element ref="complexBehaviorDefinition" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xsd:element name="completionCondition" type="tExpression" minOccurs="0"
                    maxOccurs="1"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:attribute name="isSequential" type="xsd:boolean" default="false"/>
            <xsd:attribute name="behavior" type="tMultiInstanceFlowCondition" default="All"/>
            <xsd:attribute name="oneBehaviorEventRef" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
            <xsd:attribute name="noneBehaviorEventRef" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

```xml
<xsd:simpleType name="tMultiInstanceFlowCondition">
    <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:enumeration value="None"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="One"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="All"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Complex"/>
    </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
```
Table 10.42 – ReceiveTask XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="receiveTask" type="tReceiveTask" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tReceiveTask">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tTask">
      <xsd:attribute name="implementation" type="tImplementation" default="##WebService"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="instantiate" type="xsd:boolean" default="false"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="messageRef" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="operationRef" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.43 – ResourceRole XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="resourceRole" type="tResourceRole"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tResourceRole">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:choice>
        <xsd:sequence>
          <xsd:element name="resourceRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
          <xsd:element ref="resourceParameterBinding" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="resourceAssignmentExpression" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 10.44 – ScriptTask XML schema

```
<xsd:element name="scriptTask" type="tScriptTask" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tScriptTask">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tTask">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="script" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="scriptFormat" type="xsd:anyURI"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.45 – SendTask XML schema

```
<xsd:element name="sendTask" type="tSendTask" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tSendTask">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tTask">
      <xsd:attribute name="implementation" type="tImplementation" default="##WebService"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="messageRef" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="operationRef" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.46 – ServiceTask XML schema

```
<xsd:element name="serviceTask" type="tServiceTask" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tServiceTask">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tTask">
      <xsd:attribute name="implementation" type="tImplementation" default="##WebService"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="operationRef" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 10.47 – StandardLoopCharacteristics XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="standardLoopCharacteristics" type="tStandardLoopCharacteristics"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tStandardLoopCharacteristics">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tLoopCharacteristics">
            <xsd:sequence>
                <xsd:element name="loopCondition" type="tExpression" minOccurs="0"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:attribute name="testBefore" type="xsd:boolean" default="false" use="optional"/>
            <xsd:attribute name="loopMaximum" type="xsd:integer" use="optional"/>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.48 – SubProcess XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="subProcess" type="tSubProcess" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tSubProcess">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tActivity">
            <xsd:sequence>
                <xsd:element ref="laneSet" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xsd:element ref="flowElement" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xsd:element ref="artifact" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:attribute name="triggeredByEvent" type="xsd:boolean" default="false"/>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.49 – Task XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="task" type="tTask" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tTask">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tActivity"/>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
10.4 Items and Data

A traditional requirement of Process modeling is to be able to model the items (physical or information items) that are created, manipulated, and used during the execution of a Process. An important aspect of this is the ability to capture the structure of that data and to query or manipulate that structure.

BPMN does not itself provide a built-in model for describing structure of data or an Expression language for querying that data. Instead it formalizes hooks that allow for externally defined data structures and Expression languages. In addition, BPMN allows for the co-existence of multiple data structure and Expression languages within the same model. The compatibility and verification of these languages is outside the scope of this International Standard and becomes the responsibility of the tool vendor.

BPMN designates XML Schema and XPath as its default data structure and Expression languages respectively, but vendors are free to substitute their own languages.

10.4.1 Data Modeling

A traditional requirement of Process modeling is to be able to model the items (physical or information items) that are created, manipulated, and used during the execution of a Process.

This requirement is realized in BPMN through various constructs: Data Objects, ItemDefinition, Properties, Data Inputs, Data Outputs, Messages, Input Sets, Output Sets, and Data Associations.

Item-Aware Elements

Several elements in BPMN are subject to store or convey items during process execution. These elements are referenced generally as “item-aware elements.” This is similar to the variable construct common to many languages. As with variables, these elements have an ItemDefinition.
The data structure these elements hold is specified using an associated ItemDefinition. An ItemAwareElement MAY be underspecified, meaning that the structure attribute of its ItemDefinition is optional if the modeler does not wish to define the structure of the associated data.

The elements in the specification defined as item-aware elements are: **Data Objects, Data Object References, Data Stores, Properties, DataInputs and DataOutputs**.

![Figure 10.50 – ItemAware class diagram](image)

The ItemAwareElement element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 10.51 presents the additional model associations of the ItemAwareElement element.

**Table 10.51 – ItemAwareElement model associations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>itemSubjectRef: ItemDefinition [0..1]</td>
<td>Specification of the items that are stored or conveyed by the ItemAwareElement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dataState: DataState [0..1]</td>
<td>A reference to the DataState, which defines certain states for the data contained in the Item.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Data Objects

The primary construct for modeling data within the Process flow is the DataObject element. A DataObject has a well-defined lifecycle, with resulting access constraints.

DataObject

The Data Object class is an item-aware element. Data Object elements MUST be contained within Process or SubProcess elements. Data Object elements are visually displayed on a Process diagram. Data Object References are a way to reuse Data Objects in the same diagram. They can specify different states of the same Data Object at different points in a Process. Data Object Reference cannot specify item definitions, and Data Objects cannot specify states. The names of Data Object References are derived by concatenating the name of the referenced Data Object the state of the Data Object Reference in square brackets as follows: <Data Object Name> [ <Data Object Reference State> ].

Figure 10.51 – DataObject class diagram

The DataObject element inherits the attributes and model associations of FlowElement (see Table 8.44) and ItemAwareElement (Table 10.52). Table 10.54 presents the additional attributes of the DataObject element.
The Data Object Reference element inherits the attributes and model associations of ItemAwareElement (Table 10.52) and FlowElement (see Table 8.44). Table 10.53 presents the additional attributes of the Data Object Reference element.

Table 10.52 – DataObject attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>isCollection: boolean = false</td>
<td>Defines if the Data Object represents a collection of elements. It is needed when no itemDefinition is referenced. If an itemDefinition is referenced, then this attribute MUST have the same value as the isCollection attribute of the referenced itemDefinition. The default value for this attribute is false.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Data Object Reference element inherits the attributes and model associations of ItemAwareElement (Table 10.52) and FlowElement (see Table 8.44). Table 10.53 presents the additional attributes of the Data Object Reference element.

Table 10.53 – DataObjectReference attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dataObjectRef: DataObject</td>
<td>The Data Object referenced by the Data Object Reference.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

States

Data Object elements can optionally reference a DataState element, which is the state of the data contained in the Data Object (see an example of DataStates used for Data Objects in Figure 7.8). The definition of these states, e.g., possible values and any specific semantic are out of scope of this International Standard. Therefore, BPMN adopters can use the State element and the BPMN extensibility capabilities to define their states.

The DataState element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 10.54 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the DataObject element.

Table 10.54 – DataState attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>Defines the name of the DataState.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Data Objects representing a Collection of Data

A DataObject element that references an ItemDefinition marked as collection has to be visualized differently, compared to single instance data structures. The notation looks as follows:

Single instance (see Figure 10.52)
Figure 10.52 – A DataObject Collection (see Figure 10.53)

Figure 10.53 – A DataObject that is a collection

Visual representations of Data Objects

Data Object can appear multiple times in a Process diagram. Each of these appearances references the same Data Object instance. Multiple occurrences of a Data Object in a diagram are allowed to simplify diagram connections.

Lifecycle and Accessibility

The lifecycle of a Data Object is tied to the lifecycle of its parent Process or Sub-Process. When a Process or Sub-Process is instantiated, all Data Objects contained within it are also instantiated. When a Process or Sub-Process instance is disposed, all Data Object instances contained within it are also disposed. At this point the data within these instances are no longer available.

The accessibility of a Data Object is driven by its lifecycle. The data within a Data Object can only be accessed when there is guaranteed to be a live Data Object instance present. As a result, a Data Object can only be accessed by its immediate parent (Process or Sub-Process), or by its sibling Flow Elements and their children, including Data Object References referencing the Data Object.

For example - Consider the follow structure:

Process A
  Data object 1
  Task A
  Sub-process A
    Data object 2
    Task B
  Sub-process B
    Data object 3
    Sub-process C
      Data object 4
      Task C
  Task D

“Data object 2” can be accessed by “Sub-Process A” and “Task B.”

“Data object 3” can be accessed by “Sub-Process B,” “Sub-Process C,” “Task C,” and “Task D.”

“Data object 4” can be accessed by “Sub-Process C” and “Task C.”

**Data Stores**

A DataStore provides a mechanism for Activities to retrieve or update stored information that will persist beyond the scope of the Process. The same DataStore can be visualized, through a Data Store Reference, in one or more places in the Process.

The Data Store Reference is an ItemAwareElement and can thus be used as the source or target for a Data Association. When data flows into or out of a Data Store Reference, it is effectively flowing into or out of the DataStore that is being referenced.

The notation looks as follows (see Figure 10.54):

![Data Store](image)

**Figure 10.54 – A Data Store**

![DataStore class diagram](image)

**Figure 10.55 – DataStore class diagram**
The DataStore element inherits the attributes and model associations of FlowElement (see Table 8.44) through its relationship to RootElement, and ItemAwareElement (see Table 10.51). Table 10.55 presents the additional attributes of the DataStore element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>A descriptive name for the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capacity: integer [0..1]</td>
<td>Defines the capacity of the Data Store. This is not needed if the isUnlimited attribute is set to true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isUnlimited: boolean = false</td>
<td>If isUnlimited is set to true, then the capacity of a Data Store is set as unlimited and will override any value of the capacity attribute.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Data Store Reference element inherits the attributes and model associations of FlowElement (see Table 8.44) and ItemAwareElement (see Table 10.51). Table 10.56 presents the additional model associations of the Data Store Reference element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dataStoreRef: DataStore</td>
<td>Provides the reference to a global DataStore.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Properties

Properties, like Data Objects, are item-aware elements. But, unlike Data Objects, they are not visually displayed on a Process diagram. Certain flow elements MAY contain properties, in particular only Processes, Activities, and Events MAY contain Properties.

The Property class is a DataElement element that acts as a container for data associated with flow elements. Property elements MUST be contained within a FlowElement. Property elements are not visually displayed on a Process diagram.
The Property element inherits the attributes and model associations of ItemAwareElement (Table 10.51). Table 10.54 presents the additional attributes of the Property element.

### Table 10.57 – Property attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>Defines the name of the Property.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lifecycle and Accessibility**

The lifecycle of a Property is tied to the lifecycle of its parent Flow Element. When a Flow Element is instantiated, all Properties contained by it are also instantiated. When a Flow Element instance is disposed, all Property instances contained by it are also disposed. At this point the data within these instances are no longer available.

The accessibility of a Property is driven by its lifecycle. The data within a Property can only be accessed when there is guaranteed to be a live Property instance present. As a result, a Property can only be accessed by its parent Process, Sub-Process, or Flow Element. In case the parent is a Process or Sub-Process, then a property can be accessed by the immediate children (including children elements) of that Process or Sub-Process. For example, consider the following structure:

```
Process A
  Task A
  Sub-Process A
    Task B
  Sub-Process B
    Sub-Process C
```
Task C

Task D


The Properties of “Sub-Process A” are accessible by: “Sub-Process A” and “Task B.”

The Properties of “Task C” are accessible by: “Task C.”

Data Inputs and Outputs

Activities and Processes often need data in order to execute. In addition they can produce data during or as a result of execution. Data requirements are captured as Data Inputs and InputSets. Data that is produced is captured using Data Outputs and OutputSets. These elements are aggregated in a InputOutputSpecification class.

Certain Activities and CallableElements contain a InputOutputSpecification element to describe their data requirements. Execution semantics are defined for the InputOutputSpecification and they apply the same way to all elements that extend it. Not every Activity type defines inputs and outputs, only Tasks. CallableElements (Global Tasks and Processes) MAY define their data requirements. Embedded Sub-Processes MUST NOT define Data Inputs and Data Outputs directly, however they MAY define them indirectly via MultiInstanceLoopCharacteristics.
The `InputOutputSpecification` element inherits the attributes and model associations of `BaseElement` (see Table 8.5). Figure 10.54 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the `InputOutputSpecification` element.
Data Input

A **Data Input** is a declaration that a particular kind of data will be used as input of the InputOutputSpecification. There may be multiple **Data Inputs** associated with an InputOutputSpecification.

The **Data Input** is an item-aware element. **Data Inputs** are visually displayed on a **Process** diagram to show the inputs to the top-level **Process** or to show the inputs of a called **Process** (i.e., one that is referenced by a **Call Activity**, where the **Call Activity** has been expanded to show the called **Process** within the context of a calling **Process**).

- Visualized **Data Inputs** have the same notation as **Data Objects**, except that they MUST contain a small, unfilled block arrow (see Figure 10.58).

- **Data Inputs** MAY have **incoming Data Associations**:

  - If the **Data Input** is directly contained by the top-level **Process**, it MUST not be the target of **Data Associations** within the underlying model. Only **Data Inputs** that are contained by **Activities** or **Events** MAY be the target of **Data Associations** in the model.

  - If the **Process** is being called from a **Call Activity**, the **Data Associations** that target the **Data Inputs** of the **Call Activity** in the underlying model MAY be visualized such that they connect to the corresponding **Data Inputs** of the called **Process**, visually crossing the **Call Activity** boundary. But note that this is visualization only. In the underlying model, the **Data Associations** target the **Data Inputs** of the **Call Activity** and not the **Data Inputs** of the called **Process**.

---

Table 10.58 – InputOutputSpecification Attributes and Model Associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>inputSets: InputSet [1..*]</td>
<td>A reference to the <strong>InputSets</strong> defined by the <strong>InputOutputSpecification</strong>. Every <strong>InputOutputSpecification</strong> MUST define at least one <strong>InputSet</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outputSets: OutputSet [1..*]</td>
<td>A reference to the <strong>OutputSets</strong> defined by the <strong>InputOutputSpecification</strong>. Every <strong>Data Interface</strong> MUST define at least one <strong>OutputSet</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dataInputs: DataInput [0..*]</td>
<td>An optional reference to the <strong>Data Inputs</strong> of the <strong>InputOutputSpecification</strong>. If the <strong>InputOutputSpecification</strong> defines no <strong>Data Input</strong>, it means no data is REQUIRED to start the <strong>Activity</strong>. This is an ordered set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dataOutputs: DataOutput [0..*]</td>
<td>An optional reference to the <strong>Data Outputs</strong> of the <strong>InputOutputSpecification</strong>. If the <strong>InputOutputSpecification</strong> defines no <strong>Data Output</strong>, it means no data is REQUIRED to finish the <strong>Activity</strong>. This is an ordered set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 10.58 – A DataInput

The “optional” attribute defines if a DataInput is valid even if the state is “unavailable.” The default value is false. If the value of this attribute is true, then the execution of the Activity will not begin until a value is assigned to the DataInput element, through the corresponding Data Associations.

States

DataInput elements can optionally reference a DataState element, which is the state of the data contained in the DataInput. The definition of these states, e.g., possible values, and any specific semantics are out of scope of this International Standard. Therefore, BPMN adopters can use the DataState element and the BPMN extensibility capabilities to define their states.

Figure 10.59 – Data Input class diagram

The DataInput element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) and ItemAwareElement (Table 10.52). Table 10.59 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the DataInput element.
Data Output

A **Data Output** is a declaration that a particular kind of data can be produced as output of the **InputOutputSpecification**. There MAY be multiple **Data Outputs** associated with a **InputOutputSpecification**.

The **Data Output** is an item-aware element. **Data Output** are visually displayed on a top-level **Process** diagram to show the outputs of the **Process** (i.e., one that is referenced by a Call Activity, where the **Call Activity** has been expanded to show the called **Process** within the context of a calling **Process**).

- Visualized **Data Outputs** have the same notation as **Data Objects**, except that they MUST contain a small, filled block arrow (see Figure 10.60).

- **Data Outputs** MAY have **outgoing DataAssociations**.
  - If the **Data Output** is directly contained by the top-level **Process**, it MUST not be the source of **Data Associations** within the underlying model. Only **Data Outputs** that are contained by **Activities** or **Events** MAY be the target of **Data Associations** in the model.
  - If the **Process** is being called from a **Call Activity**, the **Data Associations** that target the **Data Outputs** of the **Call Activity** in the underlying model MAY be visualized such that they connect to the corresponding **Data Outputs** of the called **Process**, visually crossing the **Call Activity** boundary. But note that this is visualization only. In the underlying model, the **Data Associations** originate the **Data Outputs** of the **Call Activity** and not the **Data Outputs** of the called **Process**.

### Table 10.59 – DataInput attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string [0..1]</td>
<td>A descriptive name for the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inputSetRefs: InputSet [1..*]</td>
<td>A <strong>DataInput</strong> is used in one or more <strong>InputSets</strong>. This attribute is derived from the <strong>InputSets</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inputSetwithOptional: InputSet [0..*]</td>
<td>Each InputSet that uses this <strong>DataInput</strong> can determine if the <strong>Activity</strong> can start executing with this <strong>DataInput</strong> state in “unavailable.” This attribute lists those <strong>InputSets</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inputSetWithWhileExecuting: Inputset [0..*]</td>
<td>Each InputSet that uses this <strong>DataInput</strong> can determine if the <strong>Activity</strong> can evaluate this <strong>DataInput</strong> while executing. This attribute lists those <strong>InputSets</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isCollection: boolean = false</td>
<td>Defines if the <strong>DataInput</strong> represents a collection of elements. It is needed when no <strong>itemDefinition</strong> is referenced. If an <strong>itemDefinition</strong> is referenced, then this attribute MUST have the same value as the <strong>isCollection</strong> attribute of the referenced <strong>itemDefinition</strong>. The default value for this attribute is <strong>false</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
States

DataOutput elements can optionally reference a DataState element, which is the state of the data contained in the DataOutput. The definition of these states, e.g., possible values, and any specific semantics are out of scope of this International Standard. Therefore, BPMN adopters can use the DataState element and the BPMN extensibility capabilities to define their states.

Figure 10.61 – Data Output class diagram

The DataOutput element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) and ItemAwareElement (Table 10.52). Table 10.60 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the DataInput element.
The following describes the mapping of data inputs and outputs to the specific Activity and Event implementations.

**Service Task Mapping**

If the Service Task is associated with an Operation, there MUST be a Message Data Input on the Service Task and it MUST have an itemDefinition equivalent to the one defined by the Message referred to by the inMessageRef attribute of the operation. If the operation defines output Messages, there MUST be a single Data Output and it MUST have an itemDefinition equivalent to the one defined by Message referred to by the outMessageRef attribute of the Operation.

**Send Task Mapping**

If the Send Task is associated with a Message, there MUST be at most inputSet set and at most one Data Input on the Send Task. If the Data Input is present, it MUST have an itemDefinition equivalent to the one defined by the associated Message. If the Data Input is not present, the Message will not be populated with data at execution time.

**Receive Task Mapping**

If the Receive Task is associated with a Message, there MUST be at most outputSet set and at most one Data Output on the Receive Task. If the Data Output is present, it MUST have an itemDefinition equivalent to the one defined by the associated Message. If the Data Output is not present, the payload within the Message will not flow out of the Receive Task and into the Process.

**User Task Mapping**

User Tasks have access to the Data Input, Data Output and the data aware elements available in the scope of the User Task.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string [0..1]</td>
<td>A descriptive name for the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outputSetRefs: OutputSet [1..*]</td>
<td>A DataOutput is used in one or more OutputSets. This attribute is derived from the OutputSets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outputSetwithOptional: OutputSet [0..*]</td>
<td>Each OutputSet that uses this DataOutput can determine if the Activity can complete executing without producing this DataInput. This attribute lists those OutputSets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outputSetWithWhileExecuting: OutputSet [0..*]</td>
<td>Each OutputSet that uses this DataInput can determine if the Activity can produce this DataOutput while executing. This attribute lists those OutputSets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isCollection: boolean = false</td>
<td>Defines if the DataOutput represents a collection of elements. It is needed when no itemDefinition is referenced. If an itemDefinition is referenced, then this attribute MUST have the same value as the isCollection attribute of the referenced itemDefinition. The default value for this attribute is false.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Call Activity Mapping
The DataInputs and DataOutputs of the Call Activity are mapped to the corresponding elements in the CallableElement without any explicit DataAssociation.

Script Task Mapping
Script Tasks have access to the Data Input, Data Output and the data aware elements available in the scope of the Script Task.

Events
If any of the EventDefinitions for the Event is associated with an element that has an ItemDefinition (such as a Message, Escalation, Error, or Signal), the following constraints apply:

- If the Event is associated with multiple EventDefinitions, there MUST be one Data Input (in the case of throw Events) or one Data Output (in the case of catch Event) for each EventDefinition. The order of the EventDefinitions and the order of the Data Inputs/Outputs determine which Data Input/Output corresponds with which EventDefinition.

- For each EventDefinition and Data Input/Output pair, if the Data Input/Output is present, it MUST have an ItemDefinition equivalent to the one defined by the Message, Escalation, Error, or Signal on the associated EventDefinition. In the case of a throw Event, if the Data Input is not present, the Message, Escalation, Error, or Signal will not be populated with data. In the case of a catch Event, if the Data Output is not present, the payload within the Message, Escalation, Error, or Signal will not flow out of the Event and into the Process.

InputSet
An InputSet is a collection of DataInput elements that together define a valid set of data inputs for an InputOutputSpecification. An InputOutputSpecification MUST have at least one InputSet element. An InputSet MAY reference zero or more DataInput elements. A single DataInput MAY be associated with multiple InputSet elements, but it MUST always be referenced by at least one InputSet.

An “empty” InputSet, one that references no DataInput elements, signifies that the Activity requires no data to start executing (this implies that either there are no data inputs or they are referenced by another input set).

InputSet elements are contained by InputOutputSpecification elements; the order in which these elements are included defines the order in which they will be evaluated.
The `InputSet` element inherits the attributes and model associations of `BaseElement` (see Table 8.5). Table 10.61 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the `InputSet` element.

**Table 10.61 – InputSet attributes and model associations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string [0..1]</td>
<td>A descriptive name for the input set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dataInputRefs: DataInput [0..*]</td>
<td>The DataInput elements that collectively make up this data requirement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optionalInputRefs: DataInput [0..*]</td>
<td>The DataInput elements that are a part of the InputSet that can be in the state of “unavailable” when the Activity starts executing. This association MUST NOT reference a DataInput that is not listed in the dataInputRefs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whileExecutingInputRefs: DataInput [0..*]</td>
<td>The DataInput elements that are a part of the InputSet that can be evaluated while the Activity is executing. This association MUST NOT reference a DataInput that is not listed in the dataInputRefs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outputSetRefs: OutputSet [0..*]</td>
<td>Specifies an Input/Output rule that defines which OutputSet is expected to be created by the Activity when this InputSet became valid. This attribute is paired with the inputSetRefs attribute of OutputSets. This combination replaces the IORules attribute for Activities in BPMN 1.2.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**OutputSet**

An `OutputSet` is a collection of `DataOutputs` elements that together can be produced as output from an Activity or Event. An `InputOutputSpecification` element MUST define at least one `OutputSet` element. An `OutputSet` MAY reference zero or more `DataOutput` elements. A single `DataOutput` MAY be associated with multiple `OutputSet` elements, but it MUST always be referenced by at least one `OutputSet`. 
An “empty” OutputSet, one that is associated with no DataOutput elements, signifies that the **Activity** produces no data.

The implementation of the element where the OutputSet is defined determines the OutputSet that will be produced. So it is up to the **Activity** implementation or the **Event**, to define which OutputSet will be produced.

![OutputSet class diagram](image)

**Figure 10.63 – OutputSet class diagram**

The OutputSet element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 10.62 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the OutputSet element.
Data Associations

Data Associations are used to move data between Data Objects, Properties, and inputs and outputs of Activities, Processes, and GlobalTasks. Tokens do not flow along a Data Association, and as a result they have no direct effect on the flow of the Process.

The purpose of retrieving data from Data Objects or Process Data Inputs is to fill the Activities inputs and later push the output values from the execution of the Activity back into Data Objects or Process Data Outputs.

DataAssociation

The DataAssociation class is a BaseElement contained by an Activity or Event, used to model how data is pushed into or pulled from item-aware elements. DataAssociation elements have one or more sources and a target; the source of the association is copied into the target.

The ItemDefinition from the sourceRef and targetRef MUST have the same ItemDefinition or the DataAssociation MUST have a transformation Expression that transforms the source ItemDefinition into the target ItemDefinition.
Figure 10.64 – DataAssociation class diagram

Optionally, Data Associations can be visually represented in the diagram by using the Association connector style (see Figure 10.65 and Figure 10.66).

Figure 10.65 – A Data Association

Figure 10.66 – A Data Association used for an Outputs and Inputs into an Activities

The core concepts of a DataAssociation are that they have sources, a target, and an optional transformation.

When a data association is “executed,” data is copied to the target. What is copied depends if there is a transformation defined or not.

If there is no transformation defined or referenced, then only one source MUST be defined, and the contents of this source will be copied into the target.
If there is a transformation defined or referenced, then this transformation Expression will be evaluated and the result of the evaluation is copied into the target. There can be zero (0) to many sources defined in this case, but there is no requirement that these sources are used inside the Expression.

In any case, sources are used to define if the data association can be “executed,” if any of the sources is in the state of “unavailable,” then the data association cannot be executed, and the Activity or Event where the data association is defined MUST wait until this condition is met.

Data Associations are always contained within another element that defines when these data associations are going to be executed. Activities define two sets of data associations, while Events define only one.

For Events, there is only one set, but they are used differently for catch or throw Events. For a catch Event, data associations are used to push data from the Message received into Data Objects and properties. For a throw Event, data associations are used to fill the Message that is being thrown.

As Data Associations are used in different stages of the Process and Activity lifecycle, the possible sources and targets vary according to that stage. This defines the scope of possible elements that can be referenced as source and target. For example: when an Activity starts executing, the scope of valid targets include the Activity data inputs, while at the end of the Activity execution, the scope of valid sources include Activity data outputs.

The DataAssociation element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 10.63 presents the additional model associations of the DataAssociation element.

**Table 10.63 – DataAssociation model associations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>transformation: Expression [0..1]</td>
<td>Specifies an optional transformation Expression. The actual scope of accessible data for that Expression is defined by the source and target of the specific Data Association types.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assignment: Assignment [0..*]</td>
<td>Specifies one or more data elements Assignments. By using an Assignment, single data structure elements can be assigned from the source structure to the target structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sourceRef: ItemAwareElement [0..*]</td>
<td>Identifies the source of the Data Association. The source MUST be an ItemAwareElement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>targetRef: ItemAwareElement</td>
<td>Identifies the target of the Data Association. The target MUST be an ItemAwareElement.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assignment**

The Assignment class is used to specify a simple mapping of data elements using a specified Expression language.

The default Expression language for all Expressions is specified in the Definitions element, using the expressionLanguage attribute. It can also be overridden on each individual Assignment using the same attribute.

The Assignment element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 10.64 presents the additional attributes of the Assignment element.
**DataInputAssociation**

The DataInputAssociation can be used to associate an ItemAwareElement element with a DataInput contained in an Activity. The source of such a DataAssociation can be every ItemAwareElement accessible in the current scope, e.g., a Data Object, a Property, or an Expression.

The DataInputAssociation element inherits the attributes and model associations of DataAssociation (see Table 10.64), but does not contain any additional attributes or model associations.

**DataOutputAssociation**

The DataOutputAssociation can be used to associate a DataOutput contained within an ACTIVITY with any ItemAwareElement accessible in the scope the association will be executed in. The target of such a DataAssociation can be every ItemAwareElement accessible in the current scope, e.g., a Data Object, a Property, or an Expression.

The DataOutputAssociation element inherits the attributes and model associations of DataAssociation (see Table 10.64), but does not contain any additional attributes or model associations.

**Data Objects associated with a Sequence Flow**

Figure 10.67 repeats Figure 10.66, above, and shows how Data Associations are used to represent inputs and outputs of Activities.

Alternatively, Data Objects MAY be directly associated with a Sequence Flow connector (see Figure 10.68) to represent the same input/output relationships. This is a visual short cut that normalizes two Data Associations (e.g., as seen in Figure 10.67): one from an item-aware element (e.g., an Activity) contained by the source of the Sequence Flow, connecting to the Data Object; and the other from the Data Object connecting to a item-aware element contained by the target of the Sequence Flow.

Table 10.64 – Assignment attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>from: Expression</td>
<td>The Expression that evaluates the source of the Assignment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to: Expression</td>
<td>The Expression that defines the actual Assignment operation and the target data element.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.4.2 Execution Semantics for Data

When an element that defines an InputOutputSpecification is ready to begin execution by means of Sequence Flow or Event being caught, the inputs of the interface are filled with data coming from elements in the context, such as Data Objects or Properties. The way to represent these assignments is the Data Association elements.

Each defined InputSet element will be evaluated in the order they are included in the InputOutputSpecification. For each InputSet, the data inputs it references will be evaluated if it is valid.

All data associations that define as target the data input will be evaluated, and if any of the sources of the data association is “unavailable,” then the InputSet is “unavailable” and the next InputSet is evaluated.

The first InputSet where all data inputs are “available” (by means of data associations) is used to start the execution of the Activity. If no InputSet is “available,” then the execution will wait until this condition is met.

The time and frequency of when and how often this condition is evaluated is out of scope for this International Standard. Implementations will wait for the sources of data associations to become available and then re-evaluate the InputSets.

In the case of throw and catch Events, given their nature, the execution semantics for data is different.

When a throw Event is activated, all DataInputAssociations of the event are executed, filling the Data Inputs of the Event. Finally, DataInputs are then copied to the elements thrown by the Event (Messages, Signals, etc.). Since there are no InputSets defined for Events, the execution will never wait.

When a catch Event is activated, Data Outputs of the event are filled with the element that triggered the Event. Then all DataOutputAssociations of the Event are executed. There are no OutputSets defined for Events.

To allow invoking a Process from both a Call Activity and via Message Flow, the Start Event and End Event support an additional case.

In the case of a Start Event, the Data Inputs of the enclosing process are available as targets to the DataOutputAssociations of the Event. This way the Process Data Inputs can be filled using the elements that triggered the Start Event.

In the case of an End Event, the Data Outputs of the enclosing process are available as sources to the DataInputAssociations of the Event. This way the resulting elements of the End Event can use the Process Data Outputs as sources.
Once an InputSet becomes “available,” all Data Associations whose target is any of the Data Inputs of the InputSet are executed. These executions fill the Activity Data Inputs and the execution of the Activity can begin. When an Activity finishes execution, all Data Associations whose sources are any of the Data Outputs of the OutputSet are executed. These executions copy the values from the Data Outputs back to the container’s context (Data Object, Properties, etc.).

**Execution Semantics for DataAssociation**

The execution of any Data Associations MUST follow these semantics:

- If the Data Association specifies a “transformation” Expression, this expression is evaluated and the result is copied to the targetRef. This operation replaces completely the previous value of the targetRef element.

- For each “assignment” element specified:
  - Evaluate the Assignment’s “from” expression and obtain the *source value*.
  - Evaluate the Assignment’s “to” expression and obtain the *target element*. The *target element* can be any element in the context or a sub-element of it (e.g., a DataObject or a sub-element of it).
  - Copy the *source value* to the *target element*.

- If no “transformation” Expression nor any “assignment” elements are defined in the Data Association:
  - Copy the Data Association “sourceRef” value into the “targetRef.” Only one sourceRef element is allowed in this case.

### 10.4.3 Usage of Data in XPath Expressions

BPMN extensibility mechanism enables the usage of various languages for Expressions and queries. This sub clause describes how XPath is used in BPMN. It introduces a mechanism to access BPMN Data Objects, BPMN Properties, and various instance attributes from XPath Expressions. The accessibility by the Expression language is defined based on the entities accessibility by the Activity that contains the Expression. All elements accessible from the enclosing element of an XPath Expression MUST be made available to the XPath processor.

**BPMN Data Objects** and **BPMN Properties** are defined using ItemDefinition. The XPath binding assumes that the ItemDefinition is either an XSD complex type or an XSD element. If XSD element is used, it MUST be manifested as a node-set XPath variable with a single member node. If XSD complex type is used, it MUST be manifested as a node-set XPath variable with one member node containing the anonymous document element that contains the actual value of the **BPMN Data Object** or **Property**.

**Access to BPMN Data Objects**

Table 10.65 introduces an XPath function used to access BPMN Data Objects. Argument `processName` names Process and is of type string. Argument `dataObjectName` names Data Object and is of type string. It MUST be a literal string.
Because XPath 1.0 functions do not support returning faults, an empty node set is returned in the event of an error.

**Access to BPMN Data Input and Data Output**

Table 10.66 introduces XPath functions used to access **BPMN Data Inputs** and **BPMN Data Outputs**. Argument `dataInputName` names a **Data Input** and is of type `string`. Argument `dataOutput` names a **Data Output** and is of type `string`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XPath Extension Function</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Element <code>getDataInput</code> ('dataInputName')</td>
<td>This extension function returns the value of the submitted <strong>Data Input</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element <code>getDataOutput</code> ('dataOutputName')</td>
<td>This extension function returns the value of the submitted <strong>Data Output</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Access to BPMN Properties**

Table 10.67 introduces XPath functions used to access **BPMN Properties**.

Argument `processName` names a **Process** and is of type `string`. Argument `propertyName` names property and is of type `string`. Argument `activityName` names a **Activity** and is of type `string`. Argument `eventName` names a **Event** and is of type `string`. These strings MUST be literal strings. The XPath extension functions return value of the submitted property. Because XPath 1.0 functions do not support returning faults, an empty node set is returned in the event of an error.
For BPMN Instance Attributes

Table 10.68 introduces XPath functions used to access BPMN instance Attributes.

Argument `processName` names Process and is of type string. Argument `attributeName` names instance attribute and is of type string. Argument `activityName` names Activity and is of type string. These strings MUST be literal strings.

These functions return value of the submitted instance Activity. Because XPath 1.0 functions do not support returning faults, an empty node set is returned in the event of an error.
Table 10.68 – XPath extension functions for instance attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XPath Extension Function</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Element getProcessInstanceAttribute**  
(`processName`, `attributeName`) | This extension function returns value of submitted **Process instance** attribute. Argument `processName` is optional. If omitted, the **Process** enclosing the **Activity** that contains the Expression is assumed. In order to access **instance Attributes** of a parent **Process** the `processName` MUST be used. Otherwise it MUST be omitted. |
| **Element getChoreographyInstanceAttribute**  
(`attributeName`) | This extension function returns value of submitted **Choreography instance** attribute. |
| **Element getActivityInstanceAttribute**  
(`activityName`, `attributeName`) | This extension function returns value of submitted **Activity instance** attribute. **User Task** and loop are examples of **Activities**. |

10.4.4 XML Schema for Data

Table 10.69 – Assignment XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="assignment" type="tAssignment" />
<xsd:complexType name="tAssignment">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="from" type="tExpression" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <xsd:element name="to" type="tExpression" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 10.70 – DataAssociation XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="dataAssociation" type="tDataAssociation" />
<xsd:complexType name="tDataAssociation" abstract="true">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="sourceRef" type="xsd:IDREF" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element name="targetRef" type="xsd:IDREF" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <xsd:element name="transformation" type="tFormalExpression" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <xsd:element ref="assignment" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.71 – DataInput XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="dataInput" type="tDataInput" />
<xsd:complexType name="tDataInput">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string" use="optional" />
      <xsd:attribute name="itemSubjectRef" type="xsd:QName" />
      <xsd:attribute name="isCollection" type="xsd:boolean" default="false"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="dataState" type="xsd:IDREF"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.72 – DataInputAssociation XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="dataInputAssociation" type="tDataInputAssociation" />
<xsd:complexType name="tDataInputAssociation">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tDataAssociation"/>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 10.73 – DataObject XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="dataObject" type="tDataObject" />  
<xsd:complexType name="tDataObject">  
  <xsd:complexContent>  
    <xsd:extension base="tFlowElement">  
      <xsd:sequence>  
        <xsd:element ref="dataState" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>  
      </xsd:sequence>  
      <xsd:attribute name="itemSubjectRef" type="xsd:QName"/>  
      <xsd:attribute name="isCollection" type="xsd:boolean"/>  
    </xsd:extension>  
  </xsd:complexContent>  
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.74 – DataState XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="dataState" type="tDataState" />  
<xsd:complexType name="tDataState">  
  <xsd:complexContent>  
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">  
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string"/>  
    </xsd:extension>  
  </xsd:complexContent>  
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.75 – DataOutput XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="dataOutput" type="tDataOutput" />  
<xsd:complexType name="tDataOutput">  
  <xsd:complexContent>  
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">  
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string" use="optional"/>  
      <xsd:attribute name="itemSubjectRef" type="xsd:QName"/>  
      <xsd:attribute name="isCollection" type="xsd:boolean" default="false"/>  
      <xsd:attribute name="dataState" type="xsd:IDREF"/>  
    </xsd:extension>  
  </xsd:complexContent>  
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.76 – DataOutputAssociation XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="dataOutputAssociation" type="tDataOutputAssociation" />  
<xsd:complexType name="tDataOutputAssociation">  
  <xsd:complexContent>  
    <xsd:extension base="tDataAssociation"/>  
  </xsd:complexContent>  
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 10.77 – InputOutputSpecification XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="ioSpecification" type="tInputOutputSpecification" />  
<xsd:complexType name="tInputOutputSpecification">  
  <xsd:complexContent>  
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">  
      <xsd:sequence>  
        <xsd:element ref="dataInput" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  
        <xsd:element ref="dataOutput" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  
        <xsd:element ref="inputSet" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  
        <xsd:element ref="outputSet" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  
      </xsd:sequence>  
    </xsd:extension>  
  </xsd:complexContent>  
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.78 – InputSet XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="inputSet" type="tInputSet" />  
<xsd:complexType name="tInputSet">  
  <xsd:complexContent>  
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">  
      <xsd:sequence>  
        <xsd:element name="dataInputRefs" type="xsd:IDREF" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  
        <xsd:element name="optionalInputRefs" type="xsd:IDREF" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  
        <xsd:element name="whileExecutingInputRefs" type="xsd:IDREF" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  
        <xsd:element name="outputSetRefs" type="xsd:IDREF" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  
      </xsd:sequence>  
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string" />  
    </xsd:extension>  
  </xsd:complexContent>  
</xsd:complexType>
```
10.5 Events

An Event is something that “happens” during the course of a Process. These Events affect the flow of the Process and usually have a cause or an impact and in general require or allow for a reaction. The term “event” is general enough to cover many things in a Process. The start of an Activity, the end of an Activity, the change of state of a document, a Message that arrives, etc., all could be considered Events.

Events allow for the description of “event-driven” Processes. In these Processes, there are three main types of Events:

1. Start Events (see page 237), which indicate where a Process will start.
2. End Events (see page 245), which indicate where a path of a Process will end.
3. Intermediate Events (see page 248), which indicate where something happens somewhere between the start and end of a Process.

Table 10.79 – OutputSet XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="outputSet" type="tOutputSet" />
<xsd:complexType name="tOutputSet">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
            <xsd:sequence>
                <xsd:element name="dataOutputRefs" type="xsd:IDREF" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xsd:element name="optionalOutputRefs" type="xsd:IDREF" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xsd:element name="whileExecutingOutputRefs" type="xsd:IDREF" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xsd:element name="inputSetRefs" type="xsd:IDREF" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.80 – Property XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="property" type="tProperty" />
<xsd:complexType name="tProperty">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
            <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
            <xsd:attribute name="itemSubjectRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Within these three types, **Events** come in two flavors:

1. **Events** that *catch* a *trigger*. All **Start Events** and some **Intermediate Events** are *catching Events*.

2. **Events** that *throw* a *Result*. All **End Events** and some **Intermediate Events** are *throwing Events* that MAY eventually be *caught* by another Event. Typically the *trigger* carries information out of the scope where the *throw Event* occurred into the scope of the catching **Events**. The *throwing* of a *trigger* MAY be either implicit as defined by this standard or an extension to it or explicit by a *throw Event*.

![Figure 10.69 – The Event Class Diagram](image)

10.5.1 Concepts

Depending on the type of the **Event** there are different strategies to forward the *trigger* to catching **Events**: publication, direct resolution, propagation, *cancellations*, and *compensations*. 
With publication a trigger MAY be received by any catching Events in any scope of the system where the trigger is published. Events for which publication is used are grouped to Conversations. Published Events MAY participate in several Conversations. Messages are triggers, which are generated outside of the Pool they are published in. They typically describe B2B communication between different Processes in different Pools. When Messages need to reach a specific Process instance, correlation is used to identify the particular instance. Signals are triggers generated in the Pool they are published. They are typically used for broadcast communication within and across Processes, across Pools, and between Process diagrams.

Timer and Conditional triggers are implicitly thrown. When they are activated they wait for a time based or status based condition respectively to trigger the catch Event.

A trigger that is propagated is forwarded from the location where the Event has been thrown to the innermost enclosing scope instance (e.g., Process level) which has an attached Event being able to catch the trigger. Error triggers are critical and suspend execution at the location of throwing. Escalations are non critical and execution continues at the location of throwing. If no catching Event is found for an error or escalation trigger, this trigger is unresolved. Termination, compensation, and cancellation are directed towards a Process or a specific Activity instance. Termination indicates that all Activities in the Process or Activity should be immediately ended. This includes all instances of multi-instances. It is ended without compensation or Event handling.

Compensation of a successfully completed Activity triggers its compensation handler. The compensation handler is either user defined or implicit. The implicit compensation handler of a Sub Process calls all compensation handlers of its enclosed Activities in the reverse order of Sequence Flow dependencies. If compensation is invoked for an Activity that has not yet completed, or has not completed successfully, nothing happens (in particular, no error is raised). Cancellation will terminate all running Activities and compensate all successfully completed Activities in the Sub-Process it is applied to. If the Sub-Process is a Transaction, the Transaction is rolled back.

Data Modeling and Events

Some Events (like the Message, Escalation, Error, Signal, and Multiple Event) have the capability to carry data. Data Association is used to push data from a Catch Event to a data element. For such Events, the following constraints apply:

- If the Event is associated with multiple EventDefinitions, there MUST be one Data Input (in the case of throw Events) or one Data Output (in the case of catch Events) for each EventDefinition. The order of the EventDefinitions and the order of the Data Inputs/Outputs determine which Data Input/Output corresponds with which EventDefinition.
- For each EventDefinition and Data Input/Output pair, if the Data Input/Output is present, it MUST have an ItemDefinition equivalent to the one defined by the Message, Escalation, Error, or Signal on the associated EventDefinition. In the case of a throw Event, if the Data Input is not present, the Message, Escalation, Error, or Signal will not be populated with data. In the case of a catch Event, if the Data Output is not present, the payload within the Message, Escalation, Error, or Signal will not flow out of the Event and into the Process.

The execution behavior is then as follows:

- For throw Events: When the Event is activated, the data in the Data Input is assigned automatically to the Message, Escalation, Error, or Signal referenced by the corresponding EventDefinition.
- For catch Events: When the trigger of the Event occurs (for example, the Message is received), the data is assigned automatically to the Data Output that corresponds to the EventDefinition that described that trigger.
Common Event attributes

The Event element inherits the attributes and model associations of FlowElement (see Table 8.44). Table 10.81 presents the additional model associations of the Event element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>properties: Property</td>
<td>Modeler-defined properties MAY be added to an Event. These properties are contained within the Event.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Common Catch Event attributes

The CatchEvent element inherits the attributes and model associations of Event element (see Table 10.81). Table 10.82 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the CatchEvent element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eventDefinitionRefs: EventDefinition</td>
<td>References the reusable EventDefinitions that are triggers expected for a catch Event. Reusable EventDefinitions are defined as top-level elements. These EventDefinitions can be shared by different catch and throw Events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If there is no EventDefinition defined, then this is considered a catch None Event and the Event will not have an internal marker (see Figure 10.91).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If there is more than one EventDefinition defined, this is considered a Catch Multiple Event and the Event will have the pentagon internal marker (see Figure 10.90).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is an ordered set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eventDefinitions: EventDefinition</td>
<td>Defines the event EventDefinitions that are triggers expected for a catch Event. These EventDefinitions are only valid inside the current Event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If there is no EventDefinition defined, then this is considered a catch None Event and the Event will not have an internal marker (see Figure 10.91).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If there is more than one EventDefinition defined, this is considered a catch Multiple Event and the Event will have the pentagon internal marker (see Figure 10.90).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is an ordered set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Common Throw Event Attributes

The **ThrowEvent** element inherits the attributes and model associations of **Event** element (see Table 10.81). Table 10.83 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the **ThrowEvent** element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **eventDefinitionRefs**: EventDefinition [0..*] | References the reusable **EventDefinitions** that are *results* expected for a **throw Event**. Reusable **EventDefinitions** are defined as top-level elements. These **EventDefinitions** can be shared by different **catch** and **throw Events**.  
  - If there is no **EventDefinition** defined, then this is considered a **throw None Event** and the **Event** will not have an internal marker (see Figure 10.91).  
  - If there is more than one **EventDefinition** defined, this is considered a **throw Multiple Event** and the **Event** will have the pentagon internal marker (see Figure 10.90).  
  This is an ordered set. |
Implicit Throw Event

A sub-type of throw Event is the ImplicitThrowEvent. This is a non-graphical Event that is used for Multi-Instance Activities (see page 190). The ImplicitThrowEvent element inherits the attributes and model associations of ThrowEvent (see Table 10.84), but does not have any additional attributes or model associations.

10.5.2 Start Event

As the name implies, the Start Event indicates where a particular Process will start. In terms of Sequence Flows, the Start Event starts the flow of the Process, and thus, will not have any incoming Sequence Flows—no Sequence Flow can connect to a Start Event.

The Start Event shares the same basic shape of the Intermediate Event and End Event, a circle with an open center so that markers can be placed within the circle to indicate variations of the Event.

- A Start Event is a circle that MUST be drawn with a single thin line (see Figure 10.70).
- The use of text, color, size, and lines for a Start Event MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39 with the exception that:
  - The thickness of the line MUST remain thin so that the Start Event can be distinguished from the Intermediate and End Events.
Throughout this document, we discuss how **Sequence Flows** are used within a **Process**. To facilitate this discussion, we employ the concept of a **token** that will traverse the **Sequence Flows** and pass through the elements in the **Process**. A **token** is a theoretical concept that is used as an aid to define the behavior of a **Process** that is being performed. The behavior of **Process** elements can be defined by describing how they interact with a **token** as it “traverses” the structure of the **Process**.

**NOTE:** A **token** does not traverse a **Message Flow** since it is a **Message** that is passed down a **Message Flow** (as the name implies).

Semantics of the **Start Event** include:

- A **Start Event** is OPTIONAL: a **Process** level—a top-level **Process**, a **Sub-Process** (embedded), or a Global **Process** (called **Process**)—MAY (is NOT REQUIRED to) have a **Start Event**.

  **NOTE:** A **Process** MAY have more than one **Process** level (i.e., it can include Expanded **Sub-Processes** or **Call Activities** that call other **Processes**). The use of **Start** and **End Events** is independent for each level of the Diagram.

- If a **Process** is complex and/or the starting conditions are not obvious, then it is RECOMMENDED that a **Start Event** be used.
- If a **Start Event** is not used, then the implicit **Start Event** for the **Process** SHALL NOT have a trigger.
- If there is an **End Event**, then there MUST be at least one **Start Event**.
- All **Flow Objects** that do not have an **incoming** **Sequence Flow** (i.e., are not a target of a **Sequence Flow**) SHALL be instantiated when the **Process** is instantiated.
  - Exceptions to this are **Activities** that are defined as being **Compensation Activities** (it has the **Compensation** marker). **Compensation Activities** are not considered a part of the normal flow and MUST NOT be instantiated when the **Process** is instantiated. See page 301 for more information on **Compensation Activities**.
  - An exception to this is a catching **Link Intermediate Event**, which is not allowed to have **incoming** **Sequence Flows**. See page 266 for more information on **Link Intermediate Events**.
  - An exception to this is an **Event Sub-Process**, which is not allowed to have **incoming** **Sequence Flows** and will only be instantiated when its **Start Event** is triggered. See page 174 for more information on **Event Sub-Processes**.
  - There MAY be multiple **Start Events** for a given **Process** level.
  - Each **Start Event** is an independent **Event**. That is, a **Process instance** SHALL be generated when the **Start Event** is triggered.

If the **Process** is used as a global **Process** (a callable **Process** that can be invoked from **Call Activities** of other **Processes**) and there are multiple **None Start Events**, then when flow is transferred from the parent **Process** to the global **Process**, only one of the global **Process’s Start Events** will be triggered. The **targetRef** attribute of a **Sequence Flow incoming** to the **Call Activity** object can be extended to identify the appropriate **Start Event**.
NOTE: The behavior of Process can be harder to understand if there are multiple Start Events. It is RECOMMENDED that this feature be used sparingly and that the modeler be aware that other readers of the Diagram could have difficulty understanding the intent of the Diagram.

When the trigger for a Start Event occurs, a new Process will be instantiated and a token will be generated for each outgoing Sequence Flow from that Event.

Start Event Triggers
Start Events can be used for these types of Processes:

- Top-level Processes
- Sub-Processes (embedded)
- Global Process (called)
- Event Sub-Processes

The next three sub clauses describe the types of Start Events that can be used for each of these three types of Processes.

Start Events for Top-level Processes
There are many ways that top-level Processes can be started (instantiated). The trigger for a Start Event is designed to show the general mechanisms that will instantiate that particular Process. There are seven (7) types of Start Events for top-level Processes in BPMN (see Table 10.84): None, Message, Timer, Conditional, Signal, Multiple, and Parallel.

A top-level Process that has at least one None Start Event MAY be called by a Call Activity in another Process. The None Start Event is used for invoking the Process from the Call Activity. All other types of Start Events are only applicable when the Process is used as a top-level Process.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trigger</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Marker</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>The None Start Event does not have a defined trigger. There is no specific EventDefinition subclass (see page 259) for None Start Events. If the Start Event has no associated EventDefinition, then the Event MUST be displayed without a marker (see the figure on the right).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>A Message arrives from a Participant and triggers the start of the Process. See page 91 for more details on Messages. If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass MessageEventDefinition, then the Event is a Message Start Event and MUST be displayed with an envelope marker (see the figure to the right). The actual Participant from which the Message is received can be identified by connecting the Event to a Participant using a Message Flow within the definitional Collaboration of the Process – see Table 10.1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Timer
A specific time-date or a specific cycle (e.g., every Monday at 9am) can be set that will trigger the start of the Process. If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass TimerEventDefinition, then the Event is a Timer Start Event and MUST be displayed with a clock marker (see the figure to the right).

### Conditional
This type of event is triggered when a condition such as “S&P 500 changes by more than 10% since opening,” or “Temperature above 300C” become true. The condition Expression for the Event MUST become false and then true before the Event can be triggered again. The Condition Expression of a Conditional Start Event MUST NOT refer to the data context or instance attribute of the Process (as the Process instance has not yet been created). Instead, it MAY refer to static Process attributes and states of entities in the environment. The specification of mechanisms to access such states is out of scope of the standard. If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass ConditionalEventDefinition, then the Event is a Conditional Start Event and MUST be displayed with a lined paper marker (see the figure to the right).

### Signal
A Signal arrives that has been broadcast from another Process and triggers the start of the Process. Note that the Signal is not a Message, which has a specific target for the Message. Multiple Processes can have Start Events that are triggered from the same broadcasted Signal. If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass SignalEventDefinition, then the Event is a Signal Start Event and MUST be displayed with a triangle marker (see the figure to the right).

### Multiple
This means that there are multiple ways of triggering the Process. Only one of them is REQUIRED. There is no specific EventDefinition subclass for Multiple Start Events. If the Start Event has more than one associated EventDefinition, then the Event MUST be displayed with the Multiple Event marker (a pentagon—see the upper figure to the right).

### Parallel Multiple
This means that there are multiple triggers REQUIRED before the Process can be instantiated. All of the types of triggers that are listed in the Start Event MUST be triggered before the Process is instantiated. There is no specific EventDefinition subclass for Parallel Multiple Start Events. If the Start Event has more than one associated EventDefinition and the parallelMultiple attribute of the Start Event is true, then the Event MUST be displayed with the Parallel Multiple Event marker (an open plus sign—see the figure to the right).

---

### Table 10.84 – Top-Level Process Start Event Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Timer</td>
<td>A specific time-date or a specific cycle (e.g., every Monday at 9am) can be set that will trigger the start of the Process. If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass TimerEventDefinition, then the Event is a Timer Start Event and MUST be displayed with a clock marker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional</td>
<td>This type of event is triggered when a condition such as “S&amp;P 500 changes by more than 10% since opening,” or “Temperature above 300C” become true. The condition Expression for the Event MUST become false and then true before the Event can be triggered again. The Condition Expression of a Conditional Start Event MUST NOT refer to the data context or instance attribute of the Process (as the Process instance has not yet been created). Instead, it MAY refer to static Process attributes and states of entities in the environment. The specification of mechanisms to access such states is out of scope of the standard. If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass ConditionalEventDefinition, then the Event is a Conditional Start Event and MUST be displayed with a lined paper marker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signal</td>
<td>A Signal arrives that has been broadcast from another Process and triggers the start of the Process. Note that the Signal is not a Message, which has a specific target for the Message. Multiple Processes can have Start Events that are triggered from the same broadcasted Signal. If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass SignalEventDefinition, then the Event is a Signal Start Event and MUST be displayed with a triangle marker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple</td>
<td>This means that there are multiple ways of triggering the Process. Only one of them is REQUIRED. There is no specific EventDefinition subclass for Multiple Start Events. If the Start Event has more than one associated EventDefinition, then the Event MUST be displayed with the Multiple Event marker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallel Multiple</td>
<td>This means that there are multiple triggers REQUIRED before the Process can be instantiated. All of the types of triggers that are listed in the Start Event MUST be triggered before the Process is instantiated. There is no specific EventDefinition subclass for Parallel Multiple Start Events. If the Start Event has more than one associated EventDefinition and the parallelMultiple attribute of the Start Event is true, then the Event MUST be displayed with the Parallel Multiple Event marker.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Start Events for Sub-Processes

There is only one type of **Start Event** for **Sub-Processes** in **BPMN** (see Figure 10.82): None.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trigger</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Marker</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>The <strong>None Start Event</strong> is used for all <strong>Sub-Processes</strong>, either embedded or called (reusable). Other types of <strong>triggers</strong> are not used for a <strong>Sub-Process</strong>, since the flow of the <strong>Process</strong> (a <strong>token</strong>) from the parent <strong>Process</strong> is the <strong>trigger</strong> of the <strong>Sub-Process</strong>. If the <strong>Sub-Process</strong> is called (reusable) and has multiple <strong>Start Events</strong>, some of the other <strong>Start Events</strong> <strong>MAY</strong> have <strong>triggers</strong>, but these <strong>Start Events</strong> would not be used in the context of a <strong>Sub-Process</strong>. When the other <strong>Start Events</strong> are triggered, they would instantiate top-level <strong>Processes</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Start Events for Event Sub-Processes

A **Start Event** can also initiate an inline **Event Sub-Process** (see page 174). In that case, the same **Event** types as for boundary **Events** are allowed (see Table 10.86), namely: **Message**, **Timer**, **Escalation**, **Error**, **Compensation**, **Conditional**, **Signal**, **Multiple**, and **Parallel**.

- An **Event Sub-Process** **MUST** have a single **Start Event**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trigger</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Marker</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Message  | If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the **Start Event** and that EventDefinition is of the subclass MessageEventDefinition, then the Event is a Message Start Event and uses an envelope marker (see the figures to the right).  
  - For a Message Event Sub-Process that interrupts its containing Process, the boundary of the Event is solid (see the upper figure to the right).  
  - For a Message Event Sub-Process that does not interrupt its containing Process, the boundary of the Event is dashed (see the lower figure on the right).  
  The actual Participant from which the Message is received can be identified by connecting the Event to a Participant using a Message Flow within the definitional Collaboration of the Process – see Table 10.1. | Interrupting / Non-Interrupting |
Timer

If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass TimerEventDefinition, then the Event is a Timer Start Event and uses a clock marker (see the figures to the right).

- For a Timer Event Sub-Process that interrupts its containing Process, the boundary of the Event is solid (see the upper figure to the right).
- For a Timer Event Sub-Process that does not interrupt its containing Process, the boundary of the Event is dashed (see the lower figure on the right).

Escalation

Escalation Event Sub-Processes implement measures to expedite the completion of a business Activity, should it not satisfy a constraint specified on its execution (such as a time-based deadline).

The Escalation Start Event is only allowed for triggering an in-line Event Sub-Process.

If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass EscalationEventDefinition, then the Event is an Escalation Start Event and uses an arrowhead marker (see the figures to the right).

For an Escalation Event Sub-Process that interrupts its containing Process, the boundary of the Event is solid (see the upper figure to the right).

For an Escalation Event Sub-Process that does not interrupt its containing Process, the boundary of the Event is dashed (see the lower figure on the right).

Error

The Error Start Event is only allowed for triggering an in-line Event Sub-Process.

If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass ErrorEventDefinition, then the Event is an Error Start Event and uses a lightning marker (see the figures to the right).

Given the nature of Errors, an Event Sub-Process with an Error trigger will always interrupt its containing Process.

Compensation

The Compensation Start Event is only allowed for triggering an in-line Compensation Event Sub-Process (see “Compensation Handler” on page 302). This type of Event is triggered when compensation occurs.

If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass CompensationEventDefinition, then the Event is a Compensation Start Event and uses a double triangle marker (see the figure to the right).

This Event does not interrupt the Process since the Process has to be completed before this Event can be triggered.
### Conditional Start Event

If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass ConditionalEventDefinition, then the Event is a **Conditional Start Event** and uses an lined page marker (see the figures to the right).

For a **Conditional Event Sub-Process** that interrupts its containing Process, then the boundary of the Event is solid (see the upper figure to the right).

For a **Conditional Event Sub-Process** that does not interrupt its containing Process, the boundary of the Event is dashed (see the lower figure on the right).

### Signal Start Event

If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass SignalEventDefinition, then the Event is a **Signal Start Event** and uses an triangle marker (see the figures to the right).

For a **Signal Event Sub-Process** that interrupts its containing Process, then the boundary of the Event is solid (see the upper figure to the right).

For a **Signal Event Sub-Process** that does not interrupt its containing Process, the boundary of the Event is dashed (see the lower figure on the right).

### Multiple Start Events

A **Multiple Event** indicates that there are multiple ways of triggering the Event Sub-Process. Only one of them is REQUIRED to actually start the Event Sub-Process. There is no specific EventDefinition subclass (see page 259) for Multiple Start Events. If the Start Event has more than one associated EventDefinition, then the Event MUST be displayed with the Multiple Event marker (a pentagon—see the figures on the right).

For a **Multiple Event Sub-Process** that interrupts its containing Process, the boundary of the Event is solid (see the upper figure to the right).

For a **Multiple Event Sub-Process** that does not interrupt its containing Process, the boundary of the Event is dashed (see the lower figure on the right).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Interrupting</th>
<th>Non-Interrupting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conditional</td>
<td>If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass ConditionalEventDefinition, then the Event is a Conditional Start Event and uses an lined page marker (see the figures to the right). For a <strong>Conditional Event Sub-Process</strong> that interrupts its containing Process, then the boundary of the Event is solid (see the upper figure to the right). For a <strong>Conditional Event Sub-Process</strong> that does not interrupt its containing Process, the boundary of the Event is dashed (see the lower figure on the right).</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Conditional Interrupting" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Conditional Non-Interrupting" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signal</td>
<td>If there is only one EventDefinition associated with the Start Event and that EventDefinition is of the subclass SignalEventDefinition, then the Event is a Signal Start Event and uses an triangle marker (see the figures to the right). For a <strong>Signal Event Sub-Process</strong> that interrupts its containing Process, then the boundary of the Event is solid (see the upper figure to the right). For a <strong>Signal Event Sub-Process</strong> that does not interrupt its containing Process, the boundary of the Event is dashed (see the lower figure on the right).</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Signal Interrupting" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Signal Non-Interrupting" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple</td>
<td>A <strong>Multiple Event</strong> indicates that there are multiple ways of triggering the Event Sub-Process. Only one of them is REQUIRED to actually start the Event Sub-Process. There is no specific EventDefinition subclass (see page 259) for Multiple Start Events. If the Start Event has more than one associated EventDefinition, then the Event MUST be displayed with the Multiple Event marker (a pentagon—see the figures on the right). For a <strong>Multiple Event Sub-Process</strong> that interrupts its containing Process, the boundary of the Event is solid (see the upper figure to the right). For a <strong>Multiple Event Sub-Process</strong> that does not interrupt its containing Process, the boundary of the Event is dashed (see the lower figure on the right).</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Multiple Interrupting" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Multiple Non-Interrupting" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Attributes for Start Events

For Start Events, the following additional attribute exists:

- The Start Event element inherits the attributes and model associations of CatchEvent (see Table 10.82). Table 10.87 presents the additional attributes of the Start Event element:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>isInterrupting: boolean = true</td>
<td>This attribute only applies to Start Events of Event Sub-Processes; it is ignored for other Start Events. This attribute denotes whether the Sub-Process encompassing the Event Sub-Process should be canceled or not. If the encompassing Sub-Process is not canceled, multiple instances of the Event Sub-Process can run concurrently. This attribute cannot be applied to Error Events (where it's always true), or Compensation Events (where it doesn't apply).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sequence Flow Connections

See “Sequence Flow Connections Rules” on page 40 for the entire set of objects and how they MAY be a source or target of a Sequence Flow.

- A Start Event MUST NOT be a target for Sequence Flows; it MUST NOT have incoming Sequence Flows.
  - An exception to this is when a Start Event is used in an Expanded Sub-Process and is attached to the boundary of that Sub-Process. In this case, a Sequence Flow from the higher-level Process MAY connect to that Start Event in lieu of connecting to the actual boundary of the Sub-Process.
- A Start Event MUST be a source for a Sequence Flow.
  - Multiple Sequence Flows MAY originate from a Start Event. For each Sequence Flow that has the Start Event as a source, a new parallel path SHALL be generated.
  - The conditionExpression attribute for all outgoing Sequence Flows MUST be set to None.
When a Start Event is not used, then all Flow Objects that do not have an incoming Sequence Flow SHALL be the start of a separate parallel path.

Each path will have a separate unique token that will traverse the Sequence Flow.

Message Flow Connections

NOTE: All Message Flows MUST connect two separate Pools. They MAY connect to the Pool boundary or to Flow Objects within the Pool boundary. They MUST NOT connect two objects within the same Pool.

See “Message Flow Connection Rules” on page 41 for the entire set of objects and how they MAY be a source or targets of a Message Flow.

A Start Event MAY be the target for a Message Flow; it can have zero (0) or more incoming Message Flows. Each Message Flow targeting a Start Event represents an instantiation mechanism (a trigger) for the Process. Only one of the triggers is REQUIRED to start a new Process.

A Start Event MUST NOT be a source for a Message Flow; it MUST NOT have outgoing Message Flows.

10.5.3 End Event

As the name implies, the End Event indicates where a Process will end. In terms of Sequence Flows, the End Event ends the flow of the Process, and thus, will not have any outgoing Sequence Flows—no Sequence Flow can connect from an End Event.

The End Event shares the same basic shape of the Start Event and Intermediate Event, a circle with an open center so that markers can be placed within the circle to indicate variations of the Event.

A End Event is a circle that MUST be drawn with a single thick line (see Figure 10.71).

The use of text, color, size, and lines for an End Event MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39 with the exception that:

The thickness of the line MUST remain thick so that the End Event can be distinguished from the Intermediate and Start Events.

Figure 10.71 – End Event

To continue discussing how flow proceeds throughout the Process, an End Event consumes a token that had been generated from a Start Event within the same level of Process. If parallel Sequence Flows targets the End Event, then the tokens will be consumed as they arrive. All the tokens that were generated within the Process MUST be consumed by an End Event before the Process has been completed. In other circumstances, if the Process is a Sub-Process, it can be stopped prior to normal completion through interrupting Intermediate Events (See 10.2.2, “exception flow,” on page 274 for more details). In this situation the tokens will be consumed by an Intermediate Event attached to the boundary of the Sub-Process.

Semantics of the End Event include:

There MAY be multiple End Events within a single level of a Process.
An End Event is OPTIONAL: a given Process level—a Process or an expanded Sub-Process—MAY (is NOT REQUIRED to) have this shape:

- If an End Event is not used, then the implicit End Event for the Process SHALL NOT have a Result.
- If there is a Start Event, then there MUST be at least one End Event.
- If the End Event is not used, then all Flow Objects that do not have any outgoing Sequence Flow (i.e., are not a source of a Sequence Flow) mark the end of a path in the Process. However, the Process MUST NOT end until all parallel paths have completed.

NOTE: A Process MAY have more than one Process level (i.e., it can include Expanded Sub-Processes or a Call Activity that call other Processes). The use of Start and End Events is independent for each level of the Diagram.

For Processes without an End Event, a token entering a path-ending Flow Object will be consumed when the processing performed by the object is completed (i.e., when the path has completed), as if the token had then gone on to reach an End Event. When all tokens for a given instance of the Process are consumed, then the Process will reach a state of being completed.

## End Event Results

There are nine types of End Events in BPMN: None, Message, Escalation, Error, Cancel, Compensation, Signal, Terminate, and Multiple. These types define the consequence of reaching an End Event. This will be referred to as the End Event Result.

### Table 10.88 – End Event Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trigger</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Marker</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>The None End Event does not have a defined result. There is no specific EventDefinition subclass (see page 259) for None End Events. If the End Event has no associated EventDefinition, then the Event will be displayed without a marker (see the figure on the right).</td>
<td>🟨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>This type of End indicates that a Message is sent to a Participant at the conclusion of the Process. See page 91 for more details on Messages. The actual Participant from which the Message is received can be identified by connecting the Event to a Participant using a Message Flow within the definitional Collaboration of the Process – see Table 10.1.</td>
<td>💌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error</td>
<td>This type of End indicates that a named Error should be generated. All currently active threads in the particular Sub-Process are terminated as a result. The Error will be caught by a Catch Error Intermediate Event with the same errorCode or no errorCode which is on the boundary of the nearest enclosing parent Activity (hierarchically). The behavior of the Process is unspecified if no Activity in the hierarchy has such an Error Intermediate Event. The system executing the process can define additional Error handling in this case, a common one being termination of the Process instance.</td>
<td>🚫</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 10.88 – End Event Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Escalation</td>
<td>This type of <strong>End</strong> indicates that an <strong>Escalation</strong> should be triggered. Other active threads are not affected by this and continue to be executed. The <strong>Escalation</strong> will be caught by a <strong>Catch Escalation Intermediate Event</strong> with the same escalationCode or no escalationCode which is on the boundary of the nearest enclosing parent <strong>Activity</strong> (hierarchically). The behavior of the <strong>Process</strong> is unspecified if no <strong>Activity</strong> in the hierarchy has such an <strong>Escalation Intermediate Event</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancel</td>
<td>This type of <strong>End</strong> is used within a <strong>Transaction Sub-Process</strong>. It will indicate that the Transaction should be canceled and will trigger a <strong>Cancel Intermediate Event</strong> attached to the <strong>Sub-Process</strong> boundary. In addition, it will indicate that a <strong>TransactionProtocol Cancel Message</strong> should be sent to any <strong>Entities</strong> involved in the <strong>Transaction</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Compensation | This type of **End** indicates that compensation is necessary. If an **Activity** is identified, and it was successfully completed, then that **Activity** will be compensated. The **Activity** MUST be visible from the **Compensation End Event**, i.e., one of the following MUST be true:  
  - The **Compensation End Event** is contained in normal flow at the same level of **Sub-Process**.  
  - The **Compensation End Event** is contained in a **Compensation Event Sub-Process** that is contained in the **Sub-Process** containing the **Activity**.  
  - If no **Activity** is identified, all successfully completed **Activities** visible from the **Compensation End Event** are compensated, in reverse order of their **Sequence Flows**. Visible means one of the following:  
    - The **Compensation End Event** is contained in normal flow and at the same level of **Sub-Process** as the **Activities**.  
    - The **Compensation End Event** is contained in a **Compensation Event Sub-Process** that is contained in the **Sub-Process** containing the **Activities**.  
To be compensated, an **Activity** MUST have a boundary **Compensation Event** or contain a **Compensation Event Sub-Process**. |
| Signal | This type of **End** indicates that a **Signal** will be broadcasted when the **End** has been reached. Note that the **Signal**, which is broadcast to any **Process** that can receive the **Signal**, can be sent across **Process** levels or **Pools**, but is not a **Message** (that has a specific **source** and **target**). The attributes of a **Signal** can be found on page 272. |
| Terminate | This type of **End** indicates that all **Activities** in the **Process** should be immediately ended. This includes all **instances** of **multi-instances**. The **Process** is ended without compensation or event handling. |
Sequence Flow Connections
See “Sequence Flow Connections Rules” on page 40 for the entire set of objects and how they MAY be a source or target of a Sequence Flow.

- An End Event MUST be a target for a Sequence Flow.
- An End Event MAY have multiple incoming Sequence Flows.

The Flow MAY come from either alternative or parallel paths. For modeling convenience, each path MAY connect to a separate End Event object. The End Event is used as a Sink for all tokens that arrive at the Event. All tokens that are generated at the Start Event for that Process MUST eventually arrive at an End Event. The Process will be in a running state until all tokens are consumed.

- An End Event MUST NOT be a source for Sequence Flows; that is, there MUST NOT be outgoing Sequence Flows.
  - An exception to this is when an End Event is used in an Expanded Sub-Process and is attached to the boundary of that Sub-Process. In this case, a Sequence Flow from the higher-level Process MAY connect from that End Event in lieu of connecting from the actual boundary of the Sub-Process.

Message Flow Connections
See “Message Flow Connection Rules” on page 41 for the entire set of objects and how they MAY be a source or target of a Message Flow.

NOTE: All Message Flows MUST connect two separate Pools. They MAY connect to the Pool boundary or to Flow Objects within the Pool boundary. They MUST NOT connect two objects within the same Pool.

- An End Event MUST NOT be the target of a Message Flow; it can have no incoming Message Flows.
- An End Event MAY be the source of a Message Flow; it can have zero (0) or more outgoing Message Flows. Each Message Flow leaving the End Event will have a Message sent when the Event is triggered.
  - The Result attribute of the End Event MUST be set to Message or Multiple if there are any outgoing Message Flows.
  - The Result attribute of the End Event MUST be set to Multiple if there is more than one outgoing Message Flows.

10.5.4 Intermediate Event
As the name implies, the Intermediate Event indicates where something happens (an Event) somewhere between the start and end of a Process. It will affect the flow of the Process, but will not start or (directly) terminate the Process. Intermediate Events can be used to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Multiple</th>
<th>This means that there are multiple consequences of ending the Process. All of them will occur (e.g., there might be multiple Messages sent). There is no specific EventDefinition subclass (see page 259) for Multiple End Events. If the End Event has more than one associated EventDefinition, then the Event will be displayed with the Multiple Event marker (a pentagon—see the figure on the right).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Table 10.88 – End Event Types
• Show where Messages are expected or sent within the Process.
• Show delays are expected within the Process.
• Disrupt the normal flow through exception handling, or
• Show the extra work needed for compensation.

The Intermediate Event shares the same basic shape of the Start Event and End Event, a circle with an open center so that markers can be placed within the circle to indicate variations of the Event.

◆ An Intermediate Event is a circle that MUST be drawn with a double thin line (see Figure 10.72).
◆ The use of text, color, size, and lines for an Intermediate Event MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39 with the exception that the thickness of the line MUST remain double so that the Intermediate Event can be distinguished from the Start and End Events.

Figure 10.72 – Intermediate Event

One use of Intermediate Events is to represent exception or compensation handling. This will be shown by placing the Intermediate Event on the boundary of a Task or Sub-Process (either collapsed or expanded). The Intermediate Event can be attached to any location of the Activity boundary and the outgoing Sequence Flows can flow in any direction. However, in the interest of clarity of the Diagram, we RECOMMEND that the modeler choose a consistent location on the boundary. For example, if the Diagram orientation is horizontal, then the Intermediate Events can be attached to the bottom of the Activity and the Sequence Flows directed down, then to the right. If the Diagram orientation is vertical, then the Intermediate Events can be attached to the left or right side of the Activity and the Sequence Flows directed to the left or right, then down.

Intermediate Event Triggers

There are twelve types of Intermediate Events in BPMN: None, Message, Timer, Escalation, Error, Cancel, Compensation, Conditional, Link, Signal, Multiple, and Parallel Multiple. Each type of Intermediate Event will have a different icon placed in the center of the Intermediate Event shape to distinguish one from another.

There are two ways that Intermediate Events are used in BPMN:

1. An Intermediate Event that is placed within the normal flow of a Process can be used for one of two purposes. The Event can respond to (“catch”) the Event trigger or the Event can be used to set off (“throw”) the Event trigger.

2. An Intermediate Event that is attached to the boundary of an Activity can only be used to “catch” the Event trigger.

Intermediate Events in Normal Flow

When a token arrives at an Intermediate Event that is placed within the normal flow of a Process, one of two things will happen.
- If the Event is used to “throw” the Event trigger, then trigger of the Event will immediately occur (e.g., the Message will be sent) and the token will move down the outgoing Sequence Flow.

- If the Event is used to “catch” the Event trigger, then the token will remain at the Event until the trigger occurs (e.g., the Message is received). Then the token will move down the outgoing Sequence Flow.

Ten of the twelve Intermediate Events can be used in normal flow as shown in Table 10.89.

**Table 10.89 – Intermediate Event Types in Normal Flow**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trigger</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Marker</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>The None Intermediate Event is only valid in normal flow, i.e., it MAY NOT be used on the boundary of an Activity. Although there is no specific trigger for this Event, it is defined as throw Event. It is used for modeling methodologies that use Events to indicate some change of state in the Process. There is no specific EventDefinition subclass (see page 259) for None Intermediate Events. If the (throw) Intermediate Event has no associated EventDefinition, then the Event MUST be displayed without a marker (see the figure on the right).</td>
<td>Throw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>A Message Intermediate Event can be used to either send a Message or receive a Message. When used to “throw” the Message, the Event marker MUST be filled (see the upper figure on the right). When used to “catch” the Message, then the Event marker MUST be unfilled (see the lower figure on the right). This causes the Process to continue if it was waiting for the Message, or changes the flow for exception handling. The actual Participant from which the Message is received can be identified by connecting the Event to a Participant using a Message Flow within the definitional Collaboration of the Process – see Table 10.1. See page 91 for more details on Messages.</td>
<td>Throw/Catch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timer</td>
<td>In normal flow the Timer Intermediate Event acts as a delay mechanism based on a specific time-date or a specific cycle (e.g., every Monday at 9am) can be set that will trigger the Event. This Event MUST be displayed with a clock marker (see the figure on the right).</td>
<td>Catch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigger</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Marker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation</td>
<td>In <em>normal flow</em>, the Escalation Intermediate Event raises an Escalation. Since this is a <em>Throw Event</em>, the arrowhead marker will be filled (see the figure to the right).</td>
<td>Throw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Compensation | In *normal flow*, this Intermediate Event indicates that compensation is necessary. Thus, it is used to "throw" the Compensation Event, and the Event marker MUST be filled (see figure on the right). If an Activity is identified, and it was successfully completed, then that Activity will be compensated. The Activity MUST be visible from the Compensation Intermediate Event, i.e., one of the following MUST be true:  
- The Compensation Intermediate Event is contained in *normal flow* at the same level of Sub-Process.  
- The Compensation Intermediate Event is contained in a Compensation Event Sub-Process which is contained in the Sub-Process containing the Activity.  
If no Activity is identified, all successfully completed Activities visible from the Compensation Intermediate Event are compensated, in reverse order of their Sequence Flows. Visible means one of the following:  
- The Compensation Intermediate Event is contained in *normal flow* and at the same level of Sub-Process as the Activities.  
- The Compensation Intermediate Event is contained in a Compensation Event Sub-Process which is contained in the Sub-Process containing the Activities.  
To be compensated, an Activity MUST have a boundary Compensation Event, or contain a Compensation Event Sub-Process. | Throw |
| Conditional | This type of Event is triggered when a condition becomes true. A condition is a type of Expression. The attributes of an Expression can be found on page 82. | Catch |
### Link

The **Link Intermediate Events** are only valid in *normal flow*, i.e., they MAY NOT be used on the boundary of an **Activity**. A **Link** is a mechanism for connecting two sections of a **Process**. **Link Events** can be used to create looping situations or to avoid long **Sequence Flow** lines. **Link Event** uses are limited to a single **Process** level (i.e., they cannot link a *parent Process* with a *Sub-Process*). Paired **Intermediate Events** can also be used as “Off-Page Connectors” for printing a **Process** across multiple pages. They can also be used as generic “Go To” objects within the **Process** level. There can be multiple *source Link Events*, but there can only be one *target Link Event*. When used to “throw” to the *target Link*, the **Event** marker will be filled (see the top figure on the right). When used to “catch” from the *source Link*, the **Event** marker will be unfilled (see the bottom figure on the right).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Throw</th>
<th>Catch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Signal

This type of **Event** is used for sending or receiving **Signals**. A **Signal** is for general communication within and across **Process** levels, across **Pools**, and between **Business Process Diagrams**. A **BPMN Signal** is similar to a signal flare that shot into the sky for anyone who might be interested to notice and then react. Thus, there is a source of the **Signal**, but no specific intended target. This type of **Intermediate Event** can send or receive a **Signal** if the **Event** is part of a *normal flow*. The **Event** can only receive a **Signal** when attached to the boundary of an **Activity**. The **Signal Event** differs from an **Error Event** in that the **Signal** defines a more general, non-error condition for interrupting **Activities** (such as the successful completion of another **Activity**) as well as having a larger scope than **Error Events**. When used to “catch” the **Signal**, the **Event** marker will be unfilled (see the middle figure on the right). When used to “throw” the **Signal**, the **Event** marker will be filled (see the top figure on the right). The attributes of a **Signal** can be found on page 272.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Throw</th>
<th>Catch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Multiple

This means that there are multiple *triggers* assigned to the **Event**. If used within *normal flow*, the **Event** can “catch” the *trigger* or “throw” the *triggers*. When attached to the boundary of an **Activity**, the **Event** can only “catch” the *trigger*. When used to “catch” the *trigger*, only one of the assigned *triggers* is REQUIRED and the **Event** marker will be unfilled (see the middle figure on the right). When used to “throw” the *trigger* (the same as a **Multiple End Event**), all the assigned *triggers* will be thrown and the **Event** marker will be filled (see the top figure on the right). There is no specific **EventDefinition** subclass (see page 259) for **Multiple Intermediate Events**. If the **Intermediate Event** has more than one associated **EventDefinition**, then the **Event** will be displayed with the **Multiple Event** marker.

| Throw | Catch |
Intermediate Events Attached to an Activity Boundary

Table 10.90 describes the Intermediate Events that can be attached to the boundary of an Activity.

Table 10.90 – Intermediate Event Types Attached to an Activity Boundary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trigger</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Marker</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>A Message arrives from a participant and triggers the Event. If a Message Event is attached to the boundary of an Activity, it will change the normal flow into an exception flow upon being triggered. For a Message Event that interrupts the Activity to which it is attached, the boundary of the Event is solid (see upper figure on the right). Note that if using this notation, the attribute cancelActivity of the Activity to which the Event is attached is implicitly set to true. For a Message Event that does not interrupt the Activity to which it is attached, the boundary of the Event is dashed (see lower figure on the right). Note that if using this notation, the attribute cancelActivity of the Activity to which the Event is attached is implicitly set to false. The actual Participant from which the Message is received can be identified by connecting the Event to a Participant using a Message Flow within the definitional Collaboration of the Process – see Table 10.1.</td>
<td>Interrupting Non-Interrupting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timer</td>
<td>A specific time-date or a specific cycle (e.g., every Monday at 9am) can be set that will trigger the Event. If a Timer Event is attached to the boundary of an Activity, it will change the normal flow into an exception flow upon being triggered. For a Timer Event that interrupts the Activity to which it is attached, the boundary of the Event is solid (see upper figure on the right). Note that if using this notation, the attribute cancelActivity of the Activity to which the Event is attached is implicitly set to true. For a Timer Event that does not interrupt the Activity to which it is attached, the boundary of the Event is dashed (see lower figure on the right). Note that if using this notation, the attribute cancelActivity of the Activity to which the Event is attached is implicitly set to false.</td>
<td>Interrupting Non-Interrupting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Escalation

This type of Event is used for handling a named Escalation. If attached to the boundary of an Activity, the Intermediate Event catches an Escalation. In contrast to an Error, an Escalation by default is assumed to not abort the Activity to which the boundary Event is attached. However, a modeler can decide to override this setting by using the notation described in the following:

- For an Escalation Event that interrupts the Activity to which it is attached, the boundary of the Event is solid (see upper figure on the right). Note that if using this notation, the attribute cancelActivity of the Activity to which the Event is attached is implicitly set to true.
- For an Escalation Event that does not interrupt the Activity to which it is attached, the boundary of the Event is dashed (see lower figure on the right). Note that if using this notation, the attribute cancelActivity of the Activity to which the Event is attached is implicitly set to false.

Error

A catch Intermediate Error Event can only be attached to the boundary of an Activity, i.e., it MAY NOT be used in normal flow. If used in this context, it reacts to (catches) a named Error, or to any Error if a name is not specified.

Note that an Error Event always interrupts the Activity to which it is attached, i.e., there is not a non-interrupting version of this Event. The boundary of the Event thus always solid (see figure on the right).

Cancel

This type of Intermediate Event is used within a Transaction Sub-Process. This type of Event MUST be attached to the boundary of a Sub-Process. It SHALL be triggered if a Cancel End Event is reached within the Transaction Sub-Process. It also SHALL be triggered if a TransactionProtocol “Cancel” Message has been received while the transaction is being performed.

Note that a Cancel Event always interrupts the Activity to which it is attached, i.e., there is not a non-interrupting version of this Event. The boundary of the Event thus always solid (see figure on the right).

Compensation

When attached to the boundary of an Activity, this Event is used to "catch" the Compensation Event, thus the Event marker MUST be unfilled (see figure on the right). The Event will be triggered by a thrown compensation targeting that Activity. When the Event is triggered, the Compensation Activity that is associated to the Event will be performed (see page 301).

Note that the interrupting a non-interrupting aspect of other Events does not apply in the case of a Compensation Event. Compensations can only be triggered after completion of the Activity to which they are attached. Thus they cannot interrupt the Activity. The boundary of the Event is always solid.
Table 10.90 – Intermediate Event Types Attached to an Activity Boundary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conditional</td>
<td>This type of Event is triggered when a condition becomes true. A condition is a type of Expression. The attributes of an Expression can be found page 82. If a Conditional Event is attached to the boundary of an Activity, it will change the normal flow into an exception flow upon being triggered. For a Conditional Event that interrupts the Activity to which it is attached, the boundary of the Event is solid (see upper figure on the right). Note that if using this notation, the attribute cancelActivity of the Activity to which the Event is attached is implicitly set to true. For a Conditional Event that does not interrupt the Activity to which it is attached, the boundary of the Event is dashed (see lower figure on the right). Note that if using this notation, the attribute cancelActivity of the Activity to which the Event is attached is implicitly set to false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signal</td>
<td>The Signal Event can receive a Signal when attached to the boundary of an Activity. In this context, it will change the normal flow into an exception flow upon being triggered. The Signal Event differs from an Error Event in that the Signal defines a more general, non-error condition for interrupting Activities (such as the successful completion of another Activity) as well as having a larger scope than Error Events. When used to “catch” the Signal, the Event marker will be unfilled. The attributes of a Signal can be found on page 272. For a Signal Event that interrupts the Activity to which it is attached, the boundary of the Event is solid (see upper figure on the right). Note that if using this notation, the attribute cancelActivity of the Activity to which the Event is attached is implicitly set to true. For a Signal Event that does not interrupt the Activity to which it is attached, the boundary of the Event is dashed (see lower figure on the right). Note that if using this notation, the attribute cancelActivity of the Activity to which the Event is attached is implicitly set to false.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Attributes for Boundary Events**

For boundary **Events**, the following additional attributes exist:

- The `BoundaryEvent` element inherits the attributes and model associations of `CatchEvent` (see Table 8.44). Table 8.46 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the `Boundary Event` element.

---

**Table 10.90 – Intermediate Event Types Attached to an Activity Boundary**

| Multiple       | A **Multiple Event** indicates that there are multiple triggers assigned to the **Event**. When attached to the boundary of an **Activity**, the **Event** can only "catch" the trigger. In this case, only one of the assigned triggers is REQUIRED and the **Event** marker will be unfilled upon being triggered, the **Event** that occurred will change the normal flow into an exception flow.
|               | There is no specific `EventDefinition` subclass (see page 259) for **Multiple Intermediate Events**. If the **Intermediate Event** has more than one associated `EventDefinition`, then the **Event** will be displayed with the **Multiple Event** marker.
|               | For a **Multiple Event** that interrupts the **Activity** to which it is attached, the boundary of the **Event** is solid (see upper figure on the right). Note that if using this notation, the attribute `cancelActivity` of the **Activity** to which the **Event** is attached is implicitly set to `true`.
|               | For a **Multiple Event** that does not interrupt the **Activity** to which it is attached, the boundary of the **Event** is dashed (see lower figure on the right). Note that if using this notation, the attribute `cancelActivity` of the **Activity** to which the **Event** is attached is implicitly set to `false`.

| Parallel Multiple         | This means that there are multiple triggers assigned to the **Event**. When attached to the boundary of an **Activity**, the **Event** can only "catch" the trigger. Unlike the normal **Multiple Intermediate Event**, all of the assigned triggers are REQUIRED for the **Event** to be triggered. The **Event** marker will be an unfilled plus sign (see the figures on the right).
|                           | There is no specific `EventDefinition` subclass (see page 259) for **Parallel Multiple Intermediate Events**. If the **Intermediate Event** has more than one associated `EventDefinition` and the `parallelMultiple` attribute of the **Intermediate Event** is `true`, then the **Event** will be displayed with the **Parallel Multiple Event** marker.
|                           | For a **Parallel Multiple Event** that interrupts the **Activity** to which it is attached, the boundary of the **Event** is solid (see the upper figure to the right). Note that if using this notation, the attribute `cancelActivity` of the **Activity** to which the **Event** is attached is implicitly set to `true`.
|                           | For a **Parallel Multiple Event** that does not interrupt the **Activity** to which it is attached, the boundary of the **Event** is dashed (see the lower figure to the right). Note that if using this notation, the attribute `cancelActivity` of the **Activity** to which the **Event** is attached is implicitly set to `false`.

---
Table 10.91 – Boundary Event attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>attachedTo: Activity</td>
<td>Denotes the Activity that boundary Event is attached to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancelActivity:</td>
<td>Denotes whether the Activity should be canceled or not, i.e., whether the boundary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>catch Event acts as an Error or an Escalation. If the Activity is not canceled,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>multiple instances of that handler can run concurrently. This attribute cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>be applied to Error Events (where it’s always true), or Compensation Events (where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>it doesn’t apply).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10.92 specifies whether the cancel Activity attribute can be set on a boundary Event depending on the EventDefinition it catches.

Table 10.92 – Possible Values of the cancelActivity Attribute

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trigger</th>
<th>Possible Values for the cancelActivity Attribute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>N/A as this event cannot be attached to the Activity border.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>True/false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timer</td>
<td>True/false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation</td>
<td>True/false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error</td>
<td>True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancel</td>
<td>True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compensation</td>
<td>N/A as the scope was already executed and can no longer be canceled when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>compensation is triggered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional</td>
<td>True/false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signal</td>
<td>True/false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple</td>
<td>True/false if all Event triggers allow this option (see this table for details).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Otherwise the more restrictive option, i.e., Yes in case any Error or cancel triggers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>are used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity Boundary Connections

An Intermediate Event can be attached to the boundary of an Activity under the following conditions:

- (One or more) Intermediate Events MAY be attached directly to the boundary of an Activity.
- To be attached to the boundary of an Activity, an Intermediate Event MUST be one of the following triggers (EventDefinition): Message, Timer, Error, Escalation, Cancel, Compensation, Conditional, Signal, Multiple, and Parallel Multiple.
- An Intermediate Event with a Cancel trigger MAY be attached to a Sub-Process boundary only if the Transaction attribute of the Sub-Process is set to true.
Sequence Flow Connections
See “Sequence Flow Connections Rules” on page 40 for the entire set of objects and how they MAY be a source or target of a Sequence Flow.

◆ If the Intermediate Event is attached to the boundary of an Activity:
  ◆ The Intermediate Event MUST NOT be a target for a Sequence Flow; it cannot have an incoming Sequence Flows.
  ◆ The Intermediate Event MUST be a source for a Sequence Flow.
  ◆ Multiple Sequence Flows MAY originate from an Intermediate Event. For each Sequence Flow that has the Intermediate Event as a source, a new parallel path SHALL be generated.
  ◆ An exception to this: an Intermediate Event with a Compensation trigger MUST NOT have an outgoing Sequence Flow (it MAY have an outgoing Association).
  ◆ The Intermediate Events with the following triggers (EventDefinition) MAY be used in normal flow: None, Message, Timer, Escalation, Compensation, Conditional, Link, Signal, Multiple, and ParallelMultiple. Thus, the following MUST NOT: Cancel and Error.
  ◆ If the Intermediate Event is used within normal flow:
    ◆ Intermediate Events MUST be a target of a Sequence Flow.

NOTE: This is a change from BPMN 1.2 semantics, which allowed some Intermediate Events to not have an incoming Sequence Flow.

◆ An Intermediate Event MAY have multiple incoming Sequence Flows.

NOTE: If the Event has multiple incoming Sequence Flows, then this is considered uncontrolled flow. This means that when a token arrives from one of the Paths, the Event will be enabled (to catch or throw). It will not wait for the arrival of tokens from the other paths. If another token arrives from the same path or another path, then a separate instance of the Event will be created. If the flow needs to be controlled, then the flow should converge with a Gateway that precedes the Event (see page 286 for more information on Gateways).

◆ An Intermediate Event MUST be a source for a Sequence Flow.

◆ Multiple Sequence Flows MAY originate from an Intermediate Event. For each Sequence Flow that has the Intermediate Event as a source, a new parallel path SHALL be generated.

◆ An exception to this: a source Link Intermediate Event (as defined below), it is NOT REQUIRED to have an outgoing Sequence Flow.

◆ A Link Intermediate Event MUST NOT be both a target and a source of a Sequence Flow.

To define the use of a Link Intermediate Event as an “Off-Page Connector” or a “Go To” object:

◆ A Link Intermediate Event MAY be the target (target Link) or a source (source Link) of a Sequence Flow, but MUST NOT be both a target and a source.

◆ If there is a source Link, there MUST be a matching target Link (they have the same name).

◆ There MAY be multiple source Links for a single target Link.

◆ There MUST NOT be multiple target Links for a single source Link.

Message Flow Connections
See “Message Flow Connection Rules” on page 41 for the entire set of objects and how they MAY be a source or target of a Message Flow.
NOTE: All Message Flows MUST connect two separate Pools. They MAY connect to the Pool boundary or to Flow Objects within the Pool boundary. They MUST NOT connect two objects within the same Pool.

- A Message Intermediate Event MAY be the target for a Message Flow; it can have one incoming Message Flow.
- A Message Intermediate Event MAY be a source for a Message Flow; it can have one outgoing Message Flow.
- A Message Intermediate Event MAY have an incoming Message Flow or an outgoing Message Flow, but not both.

10.5.5 Event Definitions

Event Definitions refers to the triggers of Catch Events (Start and receive Intermediate Events) and the Results of Throw Events (End Events and send Intermediate Events). The types of Event Definitions are: CancelEventDefinition, CompensationEventDefinition, ConditionalEventDefinition, ErrorEventDefinition, EscalationEventDefinition, MessageEventDefinition, LinkEventDefinition, SignalEventDefinition, TerminateEventDefinition, and TimerEventDefinition (see Table 10.93). A None Event is determined by an Event that does not specify an Event Definition. A Multiple Event is determined by an Event that specifies more than one Event Definition. The different types of Events (Start, End, and Intermediate) utilize a subset of the available types of Event Definitions.

Table 10.93 – Types of Events and their Markers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types</th>
<th>Start</th>
<th>Intermediate</th>
<th>End</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Top-Level</td>
<td>Sub-Process Interrupting</td>
<td>Sub-Process Non-Interrupting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© ISO/IEC 2013 - All rights reserved
The following sub clauses will present the attributes common to all Event Definitions and the specific attributes for the Event Definitions that have additional attributes. Note that the Cancel and Terminate Event Definitions do not have additional attributes.

**Event Definition Metamodel**

Figure 10.73 shows the class diagram for the abstract class EventDefinition. When one of the EventDefinition sub-types (e.g., TimerEventDefinition) is defined it is contained in Definitions, or a contained EventDefinition contained in a throw/catch Event.
The EventDefinition element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to RootElement, but does not contain any additional attributes or model associations.

The ErrorEventDefinition, EscalationEventDefinition, and SignalEventDefinition subclasses comprise of attributes to carry data. The data is defined as part of the Events package. The MessageEventDefinition subclass comprises of an attribute that refers to a Message which is defined as part of the Collaboration package.

The following sub clauses will present the sub-types of EventDefinitions.

**Cancel Event**

Cancel Events are only used in the context of modeling Transaction Sub-Processes (see page 176 for more details on Transactions). There are two variations: a catch Intermediate Event and an End Event.

- The catch Cancel Intermediate Event MUST only be attached to the boundary of a Transaction Sub-Process and, thus, MAY NOT be used in normal flow.
- The Cancel End Event MUST only be used within a Transaction Sub-Process and, thus, MAY NOT be used in any other type of Sub-Process or Process.

Figure 10.74 shows the variations of Cancel Events.
The CancelEventDefinition element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to the EventDefinition element (see page 259).

Compensation Event

Compensation Events are used in the context of triggering or handling compensation (see page 301 for more details on compensation). There are four variations: a Start Event, both a catch and throw Intermediate Event, and an End Event.

◆ The Compensation Start Event MAY NOT be used for a top-level Process.
◆ The Compensation Start Event MAY be used for an Event Sub-Process.
◆ The catch Compensation Intermediate Event MUST only be attached to the boundary of an Activity and, thus, MAY NOT be used in normal flow.
◆ The throw Compensation Intermediate Event MAY be used in normal flow.
◆ The Compensation End Event MAY be used within any Sub-Process or Process.

Figure 10.75 shows the variations of Compensation Events.

Figure 10.75 – Compensation Events

Figure 10.76 displays the class diagram for the CompensationEventDefinition.

Figure 10.76 – CompensationEventDefinition Class Diagram

The CompensationEventDefinition element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to the EventDefinition element (see page 259). Table 10.94 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the CompensationEventDefinition element.
Table 10.94 – CompensationEventDefinition attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>activityRef: Activity [0..1]</td>
<td>For a Start Event:                                                                                                           This Event “catches” the compensation for an Event Sub-Process. No further information is REQUIRED. The Event Sub-Process will provide the Id necessary to match the Compensation Event with the Event that threw the compensation, or the compensation will have been a broadcast. For an End Event: The Activity to be compensated MAY be supplied. If an Activity is not supplied, then the compensation is broadcast to all completed Activities in the current Sub-Process (if present), or the entire Process instance (if at the global level). For an Intermediate Event within normal flow: The Activity to be compensated MAY be supplied. If an Activity is not supplied, then the compensation is broadcast to all completed Activities in the current Sub-Process (if present), or the entire Process instance (if at the global level). This “throws” the compensation. For an Intermediate Event attached to the boundary of an Activity: This Event “catches” the compensation. No further information is REQUIRED. The Activity the Event is attached to will provide the Id necessary to match the Compensation Event with the Event that threw the compensation, or the compensation will have been a broadcast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waitForCompletion: boolean = true</td>
<td>For a throw Compensation Event, this flag determines whether the throw Intermediate Event waits for the triggered compensation to complete (the default), or just triggers the compensation and immediately continues (the BPMN 1.2 behavior).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Conditional Event

Figure 10.77 shows the variations of Conditional Events.

Figure 10.77 – Conditional Events

The ConditionalEventDefinition element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to the EventDefinition element (see page 259). Table 10.95 presents the additional model associations of the ConditionalEventDefinition element.

Figure 10.78 displays the class diagram for the ConditionalEventDefinition.
The `ConditionalEventDefinition` element inherits the attributes and model associations of `BaseElement` (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to the `EventDefinition` element (see page 259). Table 10.95 presents the additional model associations of the `ConditionalEventDefinition` element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>condition</code>: Expression</td>
<td>The Expression might be underspecified and provided in the form of natural language. For executable Processes (isExecutable = true), if the trigger is Conditional, then a FormalExpression MUST be entered.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Error Event**

Figure 10.79 shows the variations of Conditional Events.

![Error Events](image)

**Figure 10.79 – Error Events**

Figure 10.80 displays the class diagram for the `ErrorEventDefinition`. 
Figure 10.80 – ErrorEventDefinition Class Diagram

The ErrorEventDefinition element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to the EventDefinition element (see page 259). Table 10.96 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the ErrorEventDefinition element.

Table 10.96 – ErrorEventDefinition attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>error: Error [0..1]</td>
<td>If the trigger is an Error, then an Error payload MAY be provided.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Escalation Event Definition

Figure 10.81 shows the variations of Escalation Events.

Figure 10.81 – Escalation Events

Figure 10.82 displays the class diagram for the EscalationEventDefinition.
The EscalationEventDefinition element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to the EventDefinition element (see page 259). Table 10.97 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the EscalationEventDefinition element.

### Table 10.97 – EscalationEventDefinition attributes and model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>escalationRef: Escalation [0..1]</td>
<td>If the trigger is an Escalation, then an Escalation payload MAY be provided.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Link Event Definition

A Link Event is a mechanism for connecting two sections of a Process. Link Events can be used to create looping situations or to avoid long Sequence Flow lines. The use of Link Events is limited to a single Process level (i.e., they cannot link a parent Process with a Sub-Process).

Figure 10.83 shows the variations of Link Events.

### Figure 10.83 – Link Events

Paired Link Events can also be used as “Off-Page Connectors” for printing a Process across multiple pages. They can also be used as generic “Go To” objects within the Process level. There can be multiple source Link Events, but there can only be one target Link Event. When used to “catch” from the source Link, the Event marker will be unfilled (see Figure 10.84: upper right). When used to “throw” to the target Link, the Event marker will be filled (see Figure 10.84: upper: lower Left).
Since Process models often extend beyond the length of one printed page, there is often a concern about showing how Sequence Flow connections extend across the page breaks. One solution that is often employed is the use of Off-Page connectors to show where one page leaves off and the other begins. BPMN provides Intermediate Events of type Link for use as Off-Page connectors (see Figure 10.84 --Note that the figure shows two different printed pages, not two Pools in one diagram). A pair of Link Events is used. One of the pair is shown at the end of one page. This Event is named and has an incoming Sequence Flow and no outgoing Sequence Flows. The second Link Event is at the beginning of the next page, shares the same name, and has an outgoing Sequence Flow and no incoming Sequence Flow.

![Diagram of Process Model](image)

**Figure 10.84 – Link Events Used as Off-Page Connector**

Another way that Link Events can be used is as “Go To” objects. Functionally, they would work the same as for Off-Page Connectors (described above), except that they could be used anywhere in the diagram on the same page or across multiple pages. The general idea is that they provide a mechanism for reducing the length of Sequence Flow lines. Some modelers can consider long lines as being hard to follow or trace. Go To Objects can be used to avoid very long
**Sequence Flows** (see Figure 10.85 and Figure 10.86). Both diagrams will behave equivalently. For Figure 10.86, if the “Order Rejected” path is taken from the Decision, then the *token* traversing the **Sequence Flow** would reach the source **Link Event** and then “jump” to the target **Link Event** and continue down the **Sequence Flow**. The **Process** would continue as if the **Sequence Flow** had directly connected the two objects.

![Figure 10.85 – A Process with a long Sequence Flow](image)

![Figure 10.86 – A Process with Link Intermediate Events used as Go To Objects](image)

Some methodologies prefer that all **Sequence Flows** only move in one direction; that is, forward in time. These methodologies do not allow **Sequence Flows** to connect directly to upstream objects. Some consistency in modeling can be gained by such a methodology, but situations that require looping become a challenge. **Link Events** can be used to make upstream connections and create *loops* without violating the **Sequence Flow** direction restriction (see Figure 10.87).
Figure 10.87 – Link Events Used for looping

The LinkEventDefinition element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to the EventDefinition element (see page 259). Table 10.98 presents the additional attributes of the LinkEventDefinition element.

Table 10.98 – LinkEventDefinition attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>If the trigger is a Link, then the name MUST be entered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sources: LinkEventDefinition [1..*]</td>
<td>Used to reference the corresponding 'catch' or 'target' LinkEventDefinition, when this LinkEventDefinition represents a 'throw' or 'source' LinkEventDefinition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target: LinkEventDefinition [1]</td>
<td>Used to reference the corresponding 'throw' or 'source' LinkEventDefinition, when this LinkEventDefinition represents a 'catch' or 'target' LinkEventDefinition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Message Event Definition

Figure 10.88 shows the variations of Message Events.

Figure 10.88 – Message Events
Figure 10.89 displays the class diagram for the MessageEventDefinition.

The MessageEventDefinition element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to the EventDefinition element (see page 259). Table 10.99 presents the additional model associations of the MessageEventDefinition element.

**Table 10.99 – MessageEventDefinition model associations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>messageRef: Message [0..1]</td>
<td>The Message MUST be supplied (if the isExecutable attribute of the Process is set to true).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operationRef: Operation [0..1]</td>
<td>This attribute specifies the Operation that is used by the Message Event. It MUST be specified for executable Processes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Multiple Event**

For a **Start Event**:

If the trigger is Multiple, there are multiple ways of starting the Process. Only one of them is necessary to trigger the start of the Process. The EventDefinition subclasses will define which triggers apply.

For an **End Event**:

If the Result is Multiple, there are multiple consequences of ending the Process. All of them will occur. The EventDefinition subclasses will define which Results apply.

For an **Intermediate Event** within normal flow:

If the trigger is Multiple, only one EventDefinition is REQUIRED to catch the trigger. When used to throw, all of the EventDefinitions are considered and the subclasses will define which Results apply.
For an **Intermediate Event** attached to the boundary of an **Activity**:

If the *trigger* is *Multiple*, only one **EventDefinition** is REQUIRED to “catch” the *trigger*.

Figure 10.90 shows the variations of **Multiple Events**.

![Multiple Events](image)

**Figure 10.90 – Multiple Events**

**None Event**

**None Events** are **Events** that do not have a defined **EventDefinition**. There are three (3) variations of **None Events**: a **Start Event**, a *catch Intermediate Event*, and an **End Event** (see Figure 10.91).

- The **None Start Event** MAY be used for a *top-level Process* or any type of **Sub-Process** (except an **Event Sub-Process**).
- The **None Start Event** MAY NOT be used for an **Event Sub-Process**.
- The *catch None Intermediate Event* MUST only be used in *normal flow* and, thus, MAY NOT be attached to the boundary of an **Activity**.
- The **None End Event** MAY be used within any **Sub-Process** or **Process**.

Figure 10.91 shows the variations of **None Events**.

![None Events](image)

**Figure 10.91 – None Events**

**Parallel Multiple Event**

For a **Start Event**:

- If the *trigger* is *Multiple*, there are multiple *triggers* REQUIRED to start the **Process**. All of them are necessary to trigger the start of the **Process**. The **EventDefinition** subclasses will define which *triggers* apply. In addition, the *parallelMultiple* attribute of the **Start Event** MUST be set to *true*.

For an **Intermediate Event** within *normal flow*:

- If the *trigger* is *Multiple*, all of the defined **EventDefinitions** are REQUIRED to trigger the **Event**. In addition, the *parallelMultiple* attribute of the **Intermediate Event** MUST be set to *true*.

For an **Intermediate Event** attached to the boundary of an **Activity**:

- If the *trigger* is *Multiple*, all of the defined **EventDefinitions** are REQUIRED to trigger the **Event**. In addition, the *parallelMultiple* attribute of the **Intermediate Event** MUST be set to *true*.

Figure 10.92 shows the variations of **Parallel Multiple Events**.
Signal Event

The **SignalEventDefinition** element inherits the attributes and model associations of **BaseElement** (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to the **EventDefinition** element (see page 259). Table 10.100 presents the additional model associations of the **ConditionalSignalDefinition** element.

**Table 10.100 – SignalEventDefinition model associations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>signalRef: Signal [0..1]</td>
<td>If the <em>trigger</em> is a Signal, then a Signal is provided.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Terminate Event**

Figure 10.95 shows the **Terminate Event**.
The TerminateEventDefinition element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5) through its relationship to the EventDefinition element (see page 259).

**Timer Event**

Figure 10.96 shows the variations of Timer Events.

**Table 10.101 – TimerEventDefinition model associations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timeDate: Expression [0..1]</td>
<td>If the trigger is a Timer, then a timeDate MAY be entered. Timer attributes are mutually exclusive and if any of the other Timer attributes is set, timeDate MUST NOT be set (if the isExecutable attribute of the Process is set to true). The return type of the attribute timeDate MUST conform to the ISO-8601 format for date and time representations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeCycle: Expression [0..1]</td>
<td>If the trigger is a Timer, then a timeCycle MAY be entered. Timer attributes are mutually exclusive and if any of the other Timer attributes is set, timeCycle MUST NOT be set (if the isExecutable attribute of the Process is set to true). The return type of the attribute timeCycle MUST conform to the ISO-8601 format for recurring time interval representations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeDuration: Expression [0..1]</td>
<td>If the trigger is a Timer, then a timeDuration MAY be entered. Timer attributes are mutually exclusive and if any of the other Timer attributes is set, timeDuration MUST NOT be set (if the isExecutable attribute of the Process is set to true). The return type of the attribute timeDuration MUST conform to the ISO-8601 format for time interval representations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.5.6 Handling Events

BPMN provides advanced constructs for dealing with Events that occur during the execution of a Process (i.e., the “catching” of an Event). Furthermore, BPMN supports the explicit creation of an Event in the Process (i.e., the “throwing” of an Event). Both catching and throwing of an Event as well as the resulting Process behavior is referred to as Event handling. There are three types of Event handlers: those that start a Process, those that are part of the normal Sequence Flow, and those that are attached to Activities, either via boundary Events or via separate inline handlers in case of an Event Sub-Process.

Handling Start Events

There are multiple ways in which a Process can be started. For single Start Events, handling consists of starting a new Process instance each time the Event occurs. Sequence Flows leaving the Event are then followed as usual. For multiple Start Events, BPMN supports several modeling scenarios that can be applied depending on the scenario.

Exclusive start: the most common scenario for starting a Process is its instantiation by exactly one out of many possible Start Events. Each occurrence of one of these Events will lead to the creation of a new Process instance. The following example shows two Events connected to a single Activity (see Figure 10.97). At runtime, each occurrence of one of the Events will lead to the creation of a new instance of the Process instance and activation of the Activity. Note that a single Multiple Start Event that contains the Message Event Definitions would behave in the same way.

A Process can also be started via an Event-Based Gateway, as in the following example (Figure 10.98).
Figure 10.98 – A Process initiated by an Event-Based Gateway

In that case, the first matching Event will create a new instance of the Process, and waiting for the other Events originating from the same decision stops, following the usual semantics of the Event-Based Exclusive Gateway. Note that this is the only scenario where a Gateway can exist without an incoming Sequence Flows.

It is possible to have multiple groups of Event-Based Gateways starting a Process, provided they participate in the same Conversation and hence share the same correlation information. In that case, one Event out of each group needs to arrive; the first one creates a new Process instance, while the subsequent ones are routed to the existing instance, which is identified through its correlation information.

Event synchronization: if the modeler requires several disjoint Start Events to be merged into a single Process instance, then the following notation MUST be applied (Figure 10.99).

Figure 10.99 – Event synchronization at Process start

The Parallel Start Event MAY group several disjoint Start Events each of which MUST occur once in order for an instance of the Process to be created. Sequence Flows leaving the Event are then followed as usual.

See page 439 for the execution semantics for the Event Handling of Start Events.

Handling Events within normal Sequence Flow (Intermediate Events)

For Intermediate Events, the handling consists of waiting for the Event to occur. Waiting starts when the Intermediate Event is reached. Once the Event occurs, it is consumed. Sequence flows leaving the Event are followed as usual.
Handling Events attached to an Activity (Intermediate boundary Events and Event Sub-Processes)

For boundary Events, handling consists of consuming the Event occurrence and either canceling the Activity the Event is attached to, followed by normal Sequence Flows leaving that Activity, or by running an Event Handler without canceling the Activity (only for Message, Signal, Timer and Conditional Events, not for Error Events).

An interrupting boundary Event is defined by a true value of its cancelActivity attribute. Whenever the Event occurs, the associated Activity is terminated. A downstream token is then generated, which activates the next element of the Process (connected to the Event by an unconditional Sequence Flow called an exception flow).

For non-interrupting boundary Events, the cancelActivity attribute is set to false. Whenever the Event occurs, the associated Activity continues to be active. As a token is generated for the Sequence Flow from the boundary Event in parallel to the continuing execution of the Activity, care MUST be taken when this flow is merged into the main flow of the Process – typically it should be ended with its own End Event.

The following example shows a fragment (see Figure 10.100) from a trip booking Process. It contains a Sub-Process that consists of a main part, and three Event Sub-Processes to deal with Events within the same context: an error Event Sub-Process that cancels the Sub-Process, a Message Event Sub-Process that updates the state of the Sub-Process while allowing it to continue, and a Compensation Event Sub-Process.
The following example (see Figure 10.101) shows the same fragment of that Process, using boundary Event handlers rather than inline Event Sub-Processes. Note that in this example, the handlers do not have access to the context of the “Booking” Sub-Process, as they run outside of it. Therefore, the actually compensation logic is shown as a black box.
Figure 10.101 – Example of boundary Event Handling

Note that there is a distinction between interrupting and non-interrupting Events and the handling of these Events, which is described in the sub clauses below. For an interrupting Event (Error, Escalation, Message, Signal, Timer, Conditional, Multiple, and Parallel Multiple), only one Event Sub-Process for the same Event Declaration MUST be modeled. This excludes any further non-interrupting handlers for that Event Declaration.

The reason for this restriction lies in the nature of interrupting Event Sub-Processes and boundary Events. They interrupt normal execution of the parent Activity and after their completion, the parent Activity is immediately terminated. This implies that only one such handler can be executed at a time. However, this does not restrict the modeler in specifying several interrupting handlers, if each handler refers to a different Event Declaration.

For non-interrupting Events (Escalation, Message, Signal, Timer, Conditional, Multiple, and Parallel Multiple), an unlimited number of Event Sub-Processes for the same Event Declaration can be modeled and executed in parallel. At runtime, they will be invoked in a non-deterministic order. The same restrictions apply for boundary Events. During execution of a non-interrupting Event Sub-Process, execution of the parent Activity continues as normal.

If for a given Sub-Process, both an inline Event Sub-Process and a boundary Event handler are modeled that Process the same EventDefinition, the following semantics apply:

- If the inline Event Sub-Process “re-throws” the Event after completion, the boundary Event is triggered.
If the inline Event Sub-Process completes without “re-throwing” the Event, the Activity is considered to have completed and normal Sequence Flow resumes. In other terms, the Event Sub-Process “absorbs” the Event.

Interrupting Event Handlers (Error, Escalation, Message, Signal, Timer, Conditional, Multiple, and Parallel Multiple)

Interrupting Event Handlers are those that have the cancelActivity attribute is set to true. Whenever the Event occurs, regardless of whether the Event is handled inline or on the boundary, the associated Activity is interrupted. If an inline error handler is specified (in case of a Sub-Process), it is run within the context of that Sub-Process. If a boundary Error Event is present, Sequence Flows from that boundary Event are then followed. The parent Activity is canceled after either the error handler completes or Sequence Flow from the boundary Event is followed.

In the example above, the “Booking” Sub-Process has an Error handler that defines what should happen in case a “Booking” Error occurs within the Sub-Process, namely, the already performed bookings are canceled using compensation. The Error handler is then continued outside the Sub-Process through a boundary Error Event.

Non-interrupting Event Handlers (Escalation, Message, Signal, Timer, Conditional, Multiple, and Parallel Multiple)

Interrupting Event Handlers are those that have the cancelActivity attribute is set to false.

For Event Sub-Processes, whenever the Event occurs it is consumed and the associated Event Sub-Process is performed. If there are several Events that happen in parallel, then they are handled concurrently, i.e., several Event Sub-Process instances are created concurrently. The non-interrupting Start Event indicates that the Event Sub-Process instance runs concurrently to the Sub-Process proper.

For boundary Events, whenever the Event occurs the handler runs concurrently to the Activity. If an Event Sub-Process is also specified for that Event (in case of a Sub-Process), it is run within the context of that Sub-Process. Then, Sequence Flows from the boundary Event are followed. As a token is generated for the Sequence Flow from the boundary Event in parallel to the continuing execution of the Activity, care MUST be taken when this flow is merged into the main flow of the Process – typically it should be ended with its own End Event.

In the example above, an Event Handler allows to update the credit card information during the “Booking” Sub-Process. It is triggered by a credit card information Message: such a Message can be received whenever the control flow is within the main body of the Sub-Process. Once such a Message is received, the Activities within the corresponding Event Handler run concurrently with the Activities within the body of the Sub-Process.

See “Intermediate Events” on page 440 for the exact semantics of boundary Intermediate Events and “Event Sub-Processes” on page 440 for the operational semantics of non-interrupting Event Sub-Processes.

Handling End Events

For a Terminate End Event, all remaining active Activities within the Process are terminated.

A Cancel End Event is only allowed in the context of a Transaction Sub-Process and, as such, cancels the Sub-Process and aborts an associated Transaction of the Sub-Process.

For all other End Events, the behavior associated with the EventDefinition is performed. When there are no further active Activities, then the Sub-Process or Process instance is completed. See page 443 for exact semantics.
10.5.7 Scopes

A scope describes the context in which execution of an Activity happens. This consists of the set of:

- Data Objects available (including DataInput and DataOutput)
- Events available for catching or throwing triggers
- Conversations going on in that scope

In general, a scope contains exactly one main flow of Activities which is started, when the scope gets activated. Vice versa, all Activities are enclosed by a scope. Scopes are hierarchically nested.

Scopes can have several scope instances at runtime. They are also hierarchically nested according to their generation. In a scope instance several tokens can be active.

Scope instances in turn have a lifecycle containing among others the states:

- Activated
- In execution
- Completed
- In Compensation
- Compensation
- In Error
- In Cancellation
- Cancelled

BPMN has the following model elements with scope characteristics:

- Choreography
- Pool
- Sub-Process
- Task
- Activity
- Multi-instances body

Scopes are used to define the semantics of:

- Visibility of Data Objects (including DataInput and DataOutput)
- Event resolution
- Starting/stopping of token execution

The Data Objects, Events, and correlation keys described by a scope can be explicitly modeled or implicitly defined.
10.5.8 Events Package XML Schemas

Table 10.102 – BoundaryEvent XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="boundaryEvent" type="tBoundaryEvent" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tBoundaryEvent">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tCatchEvent">
      <xsd:attribute name="cancelActivity" type="xsd:boolean" default="true"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="attachedToRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.103 – CancelEventDefinition XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="cancelEventDefinition" type="tCancelEventDefinition" substitutionGroup="eventDefinition"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tCancelEventDefinition">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tEventDefinition"/>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.104 – CatchEvent XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="catchEvent" type="tCatchEvent"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tCatchEvent" abstract="true">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tEvent">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="dataOutput" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="dataOutputAssociation" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="outputSet" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <xsd:element ref="eventDefinition" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element name="eventDefinitionRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="parallelMultiple" type="xsd:boolean" default="false"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.105 – CancelEventDefinition XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="cancelEventDefinition" type="tCancelEventDefinition" substitutionGroup="eventDefinition"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tCancelEventDefinition">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tEventDefinition"/>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 10.106 – CompensateEventDefinition XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="compensateEventDefinition" type="tCompensateEventDefinition" substitutionGroup="eventDefinition"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tCompensateEventDefinition">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tEventDefinition">
      <xsd:attribute name="waitForCompletion" type="xsd:boolean"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="activityRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.107 – ConditionalEventDefinition XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="conditionalEventDefinition" type="tConditionalEventDefinition" substitutionGroup="eventDefinition"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tConditionalEventDefinition">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tEventDefinition">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="condition" type="tExpression"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.108 – ErrorEventDefinition XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="errorEventDefinition" type="tErrorEventDefinition" substitutionGroup="eventDefinition"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tErrorEventDefinition">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tEventDefinition">
      <xsd:attribute name="errorRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.109 – EscalationEventDefinition XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="escalationEventDefinition" type="tEscalationEventDefinition" substitutionGroup="eventDefinition"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tEscalationEventDefinition">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tEventDefinition">
      <xsd:attribute name="escalationRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 10.110 – Event XML schema
```
<xs:element name="event" type="tEvent" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xs:complexType name="tEvent" abstract="true">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="tFlowNode"/>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
```

Table 10.111 – EventDefinition XML schema
```
<xs:element name="eventDefinition" type="tEventDefinition"/>
<xs:complexType name="tEventDefinition" abstract="true">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="tBaseElement"/>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
```

Table 10.112 – ImplicitThrowEvent XML schema
```
<xs:element name="implicitThrowEvent" type="tImplicitThrowEvent" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xs:complexType name="tImplicitThrowEvent">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="tThrowEvent"/>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
```

Table 10.113 – IntermediateCatchEvent XML schema
```
<xs:element name="intermediateCatchEvent" type="tIntermediateCatchEvent" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xs:complexType name="tIntermediateCatchEvent">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="tCatchEvent"/>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
```

Table 10.114 – IntermediateThrowEvent XML schema
```
<xs:element name="intermediateThrowEvent" type="tIntermediateThrowEvent" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xs:complexType name="tIntermediateThrowEvent">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="tThrowEvent"/>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
```

Table 10.115 – LinkEventDefinition XML schema
```
<xs:element name="linkEventDefinition" type="tLinkEventDefinition" substitutionGroup="eventDefinition"/>
<xs:complexType name="tLinkEventDefinition">
```
Table 10.116 – MessageEventDefinition XML schema
<xsd:element name="messageEventDefinition" type="tMessageEventDefinition" substitutionGroup="eventDefinition"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tMessageEventDefinition">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tEventDefinition">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="operationRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="messageRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

Table 10.117 – Signal XML schema
<xsd:element name="signal" type="tSignal" substitutionGroup="reusableElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tSignal">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tRootElement">
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="structureRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

Table 10.118 – SignalEventDefinition XML schema
<xsd:element name="signalEventDefinition" type="tSignalEventDefinition" substitutionGroup="eventDefinition"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tSignalEventDefinition">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tEventDefinition">
      <xsd:attribute name="signalRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
Table 10.119 – StartEvent XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="startEvent" type="tStartEvent" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tStartEvent">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tCatchEvent">
      <xsd:attribute name="isInterrupting" type="xsd:boolean" default="true"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.120 – TerminateEventDefinition XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="terminateEventDefinition" type="tTerminateEventDefinition" substitutionGroup="eventDefinition"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tTerminateEventDefinition">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tEventDefinition"/>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.121 – ThrowEvent XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="throwEvent" type="tThrowEvent" abstract="true"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tThrowEvent">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tEvent">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="dataInput" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="dataInputAssociation" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="inputSet" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <xsd:element ref="eventDefinition" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="eventDefinitionRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.122 – TimerEventDefinition XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="timerEventDefinition" type="tTimerEventDefinition" substitutionGroup="eventDefinition"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tTimerEventDefinition">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tEvent">
      <xsd:choice>
        <xsd:element name="timeDate" type="tExpression" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <xsd:element name="timeDuration" type="tExpression" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <xsd:element name="timeCycle" type="tExpression" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
10.6 Gateways

Gateways are used to control how Sequence Flows interact as they converge and diverge within a Process. If the flow does not need to be controlled, then a Gateway is not needed. The term “Gateway” implies that there is a gating mechanism that either allows or disallows passage through the Gateway. As tokens arrive at a Gateway they can be merged together on input and/or split apart on output as the Gateway mechanisms are invoked.

A Gateway is a diamond, which has been used in many flow chart notations for exclusive branching and is familiar to most modelers.

- A Gateway is a diamond that MUST be drawn with a single thin line (see Figure 10.102).

![Gateway Diagram](image)

Figure 10.102 – A Gateway

- The use of text, color, size, and lines for a Gateway MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39 with the exception that:

  Gateways, like Activities, are capable of consuming or generating additional tokens, effectively controlling the execution semantics of a given Process. The main difference is that Gateways do not represent ‘work’ being done and they are considered to have zero effect on the operational measures of the Process being executed (cost, time, etc.).

  Gateways can define all the types of Business Process Sequence Flow behavior: Decisions/branching (exclusive, inclusive, and complex), merging, forking, and joining. Thus, while the diamond has been used traditionally for exclusive decisions, BPMN extends the behavior of the diamonds to reflect any type of Sequence Flow control. Each type of Gateway will have an internal indicator or marker to show the type of Gateway that is being used (see Figure 10.103).
The Gateway controls the flow of both diverging and converging Sequence Flows. That is, a single Gateway could have multiple input and multiple output flows. Modelers and modeling tools might want to enforce a best practice of a Gateway only performing one of these functions. Thus, it would take two sequential Gateways to first converge and then to diverge the Sequence Flows.
Gateways are described in this sub clause on an abstract level. The execution semantics of Gateways is detailed on page 434.

10.6.1 Sequence Flow Considerations

NOTE: Although the shape of a Gateway is a diamond, it is not a requirement that incoming and outgoing Sequence Flows MUST connect to the corners of the diamond. Sequence Flows can connect to any position on the boundary of the Gateway shape.

This sub clause applies to all Gateways. Additional Sequence Flow Connection rules are specified for each type of Gateway in the sub clauses below.

- A Gateway MAY be a target for a Sequence Flow. It can have zero (0), one (1), or more incoming Sequence Flows.
- If the Gateway does not have an incoming Sequence Flow, and there is no Start Event for the Process, then the Gateway’s divergence behavior, depending on the type of Gateway (see below), SHALL be performed when the Process is instantiated.
A **Gateway** **MAY** be a source of a **Sequence Flow**; it can have zero, one, or more **outgoing Sequence Flows**.

A **Gateway** **MUST** have either multiple **incoming Sequence Flows** or multiple **outgoing Sequence Flows** (i.e., it **MUST** merge or split the flow).

- A **Gateway** with a **gatewayDirection** of unspecified **MAY** have both multiple **incoming** and **outgoing Sequence Flows**.
- A **Gateway** with a **gatewayDirection** of mixed **MUST** have both multiple **incoming** and **outgoing Sequence Flows**.
- A **Gateway** with a **gatewayDirection** of converging **MUST** have multiple **incoming Sequence Flows**, but **MUST NOT** have multiple **outgoing Sequence Flows**.
- A **Gateway** with a **gatewayDirection** of diverging **MUST** have multiple **outgoing Sequence Flows**, but **MUST NOT** have multiple **incoming Sequence Flows**.

### 10.6.2 Exclusive Gateway

A diverging **Exclusive Gateway** (Decision) is used to create alternative paths within a **Process** flow. This is basically the “diversion point in the road” for a **Process**. For a given **instance** of the **Process**, only one of the paths can be taken.

A Decision can be thought of as a question that is asked at a particular point in the **Process**. The question has a defined set of alternative answers. Each answer is associated with a condition **Expression** that is associated with a **Gateway**'s **outgoing Sequence Flows**.

- The **Exclusive Gateway** **MAY** use a marker that is shaped like an “X” and is placed within the **Gateway** diamond (see Figure 10.106) to distinguish it from other **Gateways**. This marker is **NOT REQUIRED** (see Figure 10.105).

- A diagram **SHOULD** be consistent in the use of the “X” internal indicator. That is, a diagram **SHOULD NOT** have some **Gateways** with an indicator and other **Gateways** without an indicator.

![Figure 10.105](image.png)
Figure 10.106 – A Data-Based Exclusive Decision (Gateway) Example with the Internal Indicator

NOTE: as a modeling preference, the Exclusive Gateways shown in examples within this document will be shown without the internal indicator.

A default path can optionally be identified, to be taken in the event that none of the conditional Expressions evaluate to true. If a default path is not specified and the Process is executed such that none of the conditional Expressions evaluates to true, a runtime exception occurs.

A converging Exclusive Gateway is used to merge alternative paths. Each incoming Sequence Flow token is routed to the outgoing Sequence Flow without synchronization.

Figure 10.107 – Exclusive Gateway class diagram

The Exclusive Gateway element inherits the attributes and model associations of Gateway (see Table 8.46). Table 10.123 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the Exclusive Gateway element.
### 10.6.3 Inclusive Gateway

A diverging Inclusive Gateway (Inclusive Decision) can be used to create alternative but also parallel paths within a Process flow. Unlike the Exclusive Gateway, all condition Expressions are evaluated. The true evaluation of one condition Expression does not exclude the evaluation of other condition Expressions. All Sequence Flows with a true evaluation will be traversed by a token. Since each path is considered to be independent, all combinations of the paths MAY be taken, from zero to all. However, it should be designed so that at least one path is taken.

- The Inclusive Gateway MUST use a marker that is in the shape of a circle or an “O” and is placed within the Gateway diamond (see Figure 10.108) to distinguish it from other Gateways.

#### Table 10.123 – ExclusiveGateway Attributes & Model Associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>default: SequenceFlow [0..1]</td>
<td>The Sequence Flow that will receive a token when none of the conditionExpressions on other outgoing Sequence Flows evaluate to true. The default Sequence Flow should not have a conditionExpression. Any such Expression SHALL be ignored.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Diagram of Inclusive Gateway](image)

**Figure 10.108 – An example using an Inclusive Gateway**

A default path can optionally be identified, to be taken in the event that none of the conditional Expressions evaluate to true. If a default path is not specified and the Process is executed such that none of the conditional Expressions evaluates to true, a runtime exception occurs.

A converging Inclusive Gateway is used to merge a combination of alternative and parallel paths. A control flow token arriving at an Inclusive Gateway MAY be synchronized with some other tokens that arrive later at this Gateway. The precise synchronization behavior of the Inclusive Gateway can be found on page 291.
Figure 10.109 – Inclusive Gateway class diagram

The Inclusive Gateway element inherits the attributes and model associations of Gateway (see Table 8.46). Table 10.124 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the Inclusive Gateway element.

Table 10.124 – InclusiveGateway Attributes & Model Associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>default: SequenceFlow [0..1]</td>
<td>The Sequence Flow that will receive a token when none of the conditionExpressions on other Sequence Flows evaluate to true. The default Sequence Flow should not have a conditionExpression. Any such Expression SHALL be ignored.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.6.4 Parallel Gateway

A Parallel Gateway is used to synchronize (combine) parallel flows and to create parallel flows.

- The Parallel Gateway MUST use a marker that is in the shape of a plus sign and is placed within the Gateway diamond (see Figure 10.110) to distinguish it from other Gateways.
Parallel Gateways are used for synchronizing parallel flow (see Figure 10.111).

A Parallel Gateway creates parallel paths without checking any conditions; each outgoing Sequence Flow receives a token upon execution of this Gateway. For incoming flows, the Parallel Gateway will wait for all incoming flows before triggering the flow through its outgoing Sequence Flows.
The **Parallel Gateway** element inherits the attributes and model associations of **Gateway** (see Table 8.46), but adds no additional attributes or model associations.

### 10.6.5 Complex Gateway

The **Complex Gateway** can be used to model complex synchronization behavior. An Expression `activationCondition` is used to describe the precise behavior. For example, this Expression could specify that tokens on three out of five incoming **Sequence Flows** are needed to activate the **Gateway**. What tokens are produced by the **Gateway** is determined by conditions on the outgoing **Sequence Flows** as in the split behavior of the **Inclusive Gateway**. If tokens arrive later on the two remaining **Sequence Flows**, those tokens cause a reset of the **Gateway** and new token can be produced on the outgoing **Sequence Flows**. To determine whether it needs to wait for additional tokens before it can reset, the **Gateway** uses the synchronization semantics of the **Inclusive Gateway**.

- The **Complex Gateway** **MUST** use a marker that is in the shape of an asterisk and is placed within the **Gateway** diamond (see Figure 10.113) to distinguish it from other **Gateways**.

![Figure 10.112 – Parallel Gateway class diagram](image)

**Figure 10.112 – Parallel Gateway class diagram**

![Figure 10.113 – An example using a Complex Gateway](image)

**Figure 10.113 – An example using a Complex Gateway**
The **Complex Gateway** has, in contrast to other **Gateways**, an internal state, which is represented by the boolean instance attribute `waitingForStart`, which is initially `true` and becomes `false` after activation. This attribute can be used in the conditions of the **outgoing Sequence Flows** to specify where tokens are produced upon activation and where tokens are produced upon reset. It is RECOMMENDED that each ***outgoing Sequence Flow*** either get a token upon activation or upon reset but not both. At least one ***outgoing Sequence Flow*** should receive a token upon activation but a token **MUST NOT** be produced upon reset.

Figure 10.114 shows the class diagram for the **Complex Gateway**.

![Complex Gateway class diagram](image)

Figure 10.114 – Complex Gateway class diagram

The **Complex Gateway** element inherits the attributes and model associations of **Gateway** (see Table 8.46). Table 10.125 presents the additional model associations of the **Complex Gateway** element.

### Table 10.125 – Complex Gateway model associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>activationCondition</code></td>
<td>Determines which combination of <em>incoming tokens</em> will be synchronized for activation of the <strong>Gateway</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>default</code></td>
<td>The <strong>Sequence Flow</strong> that will receive a token when none of the <code>conditionExpressions</code> on other <strong>Sequence Flows</strong> evaluate to <code>true</code>. The <code>default Sequence Flow</code> should not have a <code>conditionExpression</code>. Any such Expression <strong>SHALL</strong> be ignored.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The **Event-Based Gateway** represents a branching point in the **Process** where the alternative paths that follow the **Gateway** are based on **Events** that occur, rather than the evaluation of **Expressions** using **Process** data (as with an **Exclusive** or **Inclusive Gateway**). A specific **Event**, usually the receipt of a **Message**, determines the path that will be taken. Basically, the decision is made by another **Participant**, based on data that is not visible to **Process**, thus, requiring the use of the **Event-Based Gateway**.

For example, if a company is waiting for a response from a customer they will perform one set of **Activities** if the customer responds “Yes” and another set of **Activities** if the customer responds “No.” The customer’s response determines which path is taken. The identity of the **Message** determines which path is taken. That is, the “Yes” **Message** and the “No” **Message** are different **Messages**—i.e., they are not the same **Message** with different values within a property of the **Message**. The receipt of the **Message** can be modeled with an **Intermediate Event** with a **Message trigger** or a **Receive Task**. In addition to **Messages**, other **triggers** for **Intermediate Events** can be used, such as Timers.

The **Event Gateway** shares the same basic shape of the **Gateways**, a diamond, with a marker placed within the diamond to indicate variations of the **Gateway**.

- An **Event Gateway** is a diamond that **MUST** be drawn with a single thin line.
- The use of text, color, size, and lines for an **Event Gateway** **MUST** follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39.
- The marker for the **Event Gateway** **MUST** look like a *catch Multiple Intermediate Event* (see Figure 10.115).

![Figure 10.115 – Event-Based Gateway](image)

Unlike other **Gateways**, the behavior of the **Event Gateway** is determined by a configuration of elements, rather than the single **Gateway**.

- An **Event Gateway** **MUST** have two or more **outgoing Sequence Flows**.
- The **outgoing Sequence Flows** of the **Event Gateway** **MUST** NOT have a **conditionExpression**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>activationCount: integer</td>
<td>Refers at runtime to the number of tokens that are present on an incoming Sequence Flow of the Complex Gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waitingForStart: boolean</td>
<td>Represents the internal state of the Complex Gateway. It is either waiting for start (=true) or waiting for reset (=false).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The objects that are on the target end of the Gateway’s outgoing Sequence Flows are part of the configuration of the Gateway.

- **Event-Based Gateways** are configured by having outgoing Sequence Flows target an Intermediate Event or a Receive Task in any combination (see Figure 10.116 and Figure 10.117) except that:
  - If Message Intermediate Events are used in the configuration, then Receive Tasks MUST NOT be used in that configuration and vice versa.
  - Receive Tasks used in an Event Gateway configuration MUST NOT have any attached Intermediate Events.
  - Only the following Intermediate Event triggers are valid: Message, Signal, Timer, Conditional, and Multiple (which can only include the previous triggers). Thus, the following Intermediate Event triggers are not valid: Error, Cancel, Compensation, and Link.
  - Target elements in an Event Gateway configuration MUST NOT have any additional incoming Sequence Flows (other than that from the Event Gateway).

![Figure 10.116 – An Event-Based Gateway example using Message Intermediate Events](image)

![Figure 10.117 – An Event-Based Gateway example using Receive Tasks](image)
When the first **Event** in the **Event Gateway** configuration is triggered, then the path that follows that **Event** will used (a token will be sent down the **Event**’s outgoing **Sequence Flows**). All the remaining paths of the **Event Gateway** configuration will no longer be valid. Basically, the **Event Gateway** configuration is a race condition where the first **Event** that is triggered wins.

There are variations of the **Event Gateway** that can be used at the start of the **Process**. The behavior and marker of the **Gateway** will change.

**Event Gateways** can be used to instantiate a **Process**. By default the **Gateway’**s **instantiate** attribute is *false*, but if set to *true*, then the **Process** is instantiated when the first **Event** of the **Gateway’**s configuration is triggered.

- If the **Event Gateway’**s **instantiate** attribute is set to *true*, then the marker for the **Event Gateway** looks like a **Multiple Start Event** (see Figure 10.118).

![Figure 10.118 – Exclusive Event-Based Gateway to start a Process](image1)

In order for an **Event Gateway** to instantiate a **Process**, it MUST not have any incoming **Sequence Flows**.

In some situations a modeler might want the **Process** to be instantiated by one of a set of **Messages** while still requiring all of the **Messages** for the working of the same **Process instance**. To handle this, there is another variation of the **Event Gateway**.

- If the **Event Gateway’**s **instantiate** attribute is set to *true* and the **eventGatewayType** attribute is set to **Parallel**, then the marker for the **Event Gateway** looks like a **Parallel Multiple Start Event** (see Figure 10.119).

- The **Event Gateway’**s **instantiate** attribute MUST be set to *true* in order for the **eventGatewayType** attribute to be set to **Parallel** (i.e., for **Event Gateway’**s that do not instantiate the **Process** MUST be **Exclusive**—a standard **Parallel Gateway** can be used to include parallel **Events** in the middle of a **Process**).

![Figure 10.119 – Parallel Event-Based Gateway to start a Process](image2)

The **Parallel Event Gateway** is also a type of race condition. In this case, however, when the first **Event** is triggered and the **Process** is instantiated, the other **Events** of the **Gateway** configuration are not disabled. The other **Events** are still waiting and are expected to be triggered before the **Process** can (normally) complete. In this case, the **Messages** that trigger the **Events** of the **Gateway** configuration MUST share the same correlation information.
The Event-Based Gateway element inherits the attributes and model associations of Gateway (see Table 8.46). Table 10.127 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the Event-Based Gateway element.

**Table 10.127 – EventBasedGateway Attributes & Model Associations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>instantiate: boolean = false</td>
<td>When true, receipt of one of the Events will instantiate the Process instance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eventGatewayType: EventGatewayType = Exclusive { Exclusive</td>
<td>Parallel }</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Event-Based Gateways can be used at the start of a Process, without having to be a target of Sequence Flows. There can be multiple such Event-Based Gateways at the start of a Process. Ordinary Start Events and Event-Based Gateways can be used together.
### 10.6.7 Gateway Package XML Schemas

#### Table 10.128 – ComplexGateway XML schema

```
<xsd:element name="complexGateway" type="tComplexGateway" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tComplexGateway">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tGateway">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="activationCondition" type="tExpression" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="default" type="xsd:IDREF"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

#### Table 10.129 – EventBasedGateway XML schema

```
<xsd:element name="eventBasedGateway" type="tEventBasedGateway" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tEventBasedGateway">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tGateway">
      <xsd:attribute name="instantiate" type="xsd:boolean" default="false"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="eventGatewayType" type="tEventBasedGatewayType" default="Exclusive"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

#### Table 10.130 – ExclusiveGateway XML schema

```
<xsd:element name="exclusiveGateway" type="tExclusiveGateway" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tExclusiveGateway">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tGateway">
      <xsd:attribute name="default" type="xsd:IDREF" use="optional"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

#### Table 10.131 – Gateway XML schema

```
<xsd:element name="gateway" type="tGateway" abstract="true"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tGateway">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tFlowElement">
      <xsd:attribute name="gatewayDirection" type="tGatewayDirection" default="Unspecified"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
10.7 Compensation

Compensation is concerned with undoing steps that were already successfully completed, because their results and possibly side effects are no longer desired and need to be reversed. If an Activity is still active, it cannot be compensated, but rather needs to be canceled. Cancellation in turn can result in compensation of already successfully completed portions of an active Activity, in case of a Sub-Process.

Compensation is performed by a compensation handler. A compensation handler performs the steps necessary to reverse the effects of an Activity. In case of a Sub-Process, the compensation handler has access to Sub-Process data at the time of its completion (“snapshot data”).

Compensation is triggered by a throw Compensation Event, which typically will be raised by an error handler, as part of cancellation, or recursively by another compensation handler. That Event specifies the Activity for which compensation is to be performed, either explicitly or implicitly.
10.7.1 Compensation Handler

A compensation handler is a set of Activities that are not connected to other portions of the BPMN model. The compensation handler starts with a catch Compensation Event. That catch Compensation Event either is a boundary Event, or, in case of a Compensation Event Sub-Process, the handler’s Start Event.

A compensation handler connected via a boundary Event can only perform “black-box” compensation of the original Activity. This compensation is modeled with a specialized Compensation Activity, which is connected to the boundary Event through an Association (see Figure 10.121). The Compensation Activity, which can be either a Task or a Sub-Process, has a marker to show that it is used for compensation only and is outside the normal flow of the Process.

![Figure 10.121– Compensation through a boundary Event](image)

A Compensation Event Sub-Process is contained within a Process or a Sub-Process (see Figure 10.122). Like the Compensation Activity, the Compensation Event Sub-Process is outside the normal flow of the Process. The Event Sub-Process, which is marked with a dotted line boundary, can access data that is part of its parent, a snapshot at the point in time when its parent completed. A Compensation Event Sub-Process can recursively trigger compensation for Activities contained in its parent.
It is possible to specify that a **Sub-Process** can be compensated without having to define the compensation handler. The **Sub-Process** attribute `compensable`, when set, specifies that default compensation is implicitly defined, which recursively compensates all successfully completed Activities within that **Sub-Process**.

The example in 10.122, above contains a custom **Compensation Event Sub-Process**, triggered by a **Compensation Start Event**. Note that this compensation handler deviates from default compensation in that it runs Compensation Activities in an order different from the order in the forward case; it also contains an additional Activity adding Process logic that cannot be derived from the body of the **Sub-Process** itself.

### 10.7.2 Compensation Triggering

**Compensation** is triggered using a *compensation throw Event*, which can either be an **Intermediate** or an **End Event**. The Activity that needs to be compensated is referenced. If the Activity is clear from the context, it doesn’t have to be specified and defaults to the current Activity. A typical scenario for that is an inline error handler of a **Sub-Process** that cannot recover the error, and as a result would trigger compensation for that **Sub-Process**. If no Activity is specified in a “global” context, all completed Activities in the Process are compensated.

By default, compensation is triggered synchronously, that is, the compensation throw Event waits for the completion of the triggered compensation handler. Alternatively, compensation can just be triggered without waiting for its completion, by setting the `throw Compensation Event’s waitForCompletion` attribute to `false`.

Multiple instances typically exist for **Loop** or **Multi-Instance Sub-Processes**. Each of these has its own instance of its **Compensation Event Sub-Process**, which has access to the specific snapshot data that was current at the time of completion of that particular instance. Triggering compensation for the **Multi-Instance Sub-Process** individually...
triggers compensation for all instances within the current scope. If compensation is specified via a boundary compensation handler, this boundary compensation handler also is invoked once for each instance of the Multi-Instance Sub-Process in the current scope.

### 10.7.3 Relationship between Error Handling and Compensation

The following items define the relationship between error handling and compensation:

- **Compensation** employs a “presumed abort principle,” with the following consequences: Compensation of a failed Activity results in a null operation.
- When an Activity fails, i.e., is left because an error has been thrown, it’s the error handlers responsibility to ensure that no further compensation will be necessary once the error handler has completed.
- If no error Event Sub-Process is specified for a particular Sub-Process and a particular error, the default behavior is to automatically call compensation for all contained Activities of that Sub-Process if that error is thrown, ensuring the behavior for auditing and monitoring.

### 10.8 Lanes

A **Lane** is a sub-partition within a Process (often within a Pool) and will extend the entire length of the Process level, either vertically (see Figure 10.122) or horizontally (see Figure 10.123). Text associated with the Lane (e.g., its name and/or that of any Process element attribute) can be placed inside the shape, in any direction or location, depending on the preference of the modeler or modeling tool vendor. Our examples place the name as a banner on the left side (for horizontal Pools) or at the top (for vertical Pools) on the other side of the line that separates the Pool name, however, this is not a requirement.

- A **Lane** is a square-cornered rectangle that MUST be drawn with a solid single line (see Figure 10.123 and Figure 10.124).
- The label for the Lane MAY be placed in any location and direction within the Lane, but MUST NOT be separated from the contents of the Lane by a single line (except in the case that there are sub-Lanes within the Lane).
Lanes are used to organize and categorize Activities within a Pool. The meaning of the Lanes is up to the modeler. BPMN does not specify the usage of Lanes. Lanes are often used for such things as internal roles (e.g., Manager, Associate), systems (e.g., an enterprise application), an internal department (e.g., shipping, finance), etc. In addition, Lanes can be nested (see Figure 10.125) or defined in a matrix. For example, there could be an outer set of Lanes for company departments and then an inner set of Lanes for roles within each department.
Figure 10.125 – An Example of Nested Lanes

Figure 10.126 shows the Lane class diagram. When a Lane is defined it is contained within a LaneSet, which is contained within a Process.
The LaneSet element defines the container for one or more Lanes. A Process can contain one or more LaneSets. Each LaneSet and its Lanes can partition the Flow Nodes in a different way.

The LaneSet element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 10.134 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the LaneSet element.

**Table 10.134 – LaneSet attributes and model associations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string [0..1]</td>
<td>The name of the LaneSet. A LaneSet is not visually displayed on a BPMN diagram. Consequently, the name of the LaneSet is not displayed as well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>process: Process</td>
<td>The Process owning the LaneSet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lanes: Lane [0..*]</td>
<td>One or more Lane elements, which define a specific partition in the LaneSet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parentLane: Lane [0..1]</td>
<td>The reference to a Lane element which is the parent of this LaneSet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A Lane element defines one specific partition in a LaneSet. The Lane can define a partition element that specifies the value and element type, a tool can use to determine the list of Flow Nodes to be partitioned into this Lane. All Lanes in a single LaneSet MUST define partition element of the same type, e.g., all Lanes in a LaneSet reference a Resource as the partition element, but each Lane references a different Resource instance.

The Lane element inherits the attributes and model associations of BaseElement (see Table 8.5). Table 10.135 presents the additional attributes and model associations of the Lane element.
10.9 Process Instances, Unmodeled Activities, and Public Processes

A Process can be executed or performed many times, but each time is expected to follow the steps laid out in the Process model. For example, the Process in Figure 10.1 will occur every Friday, but each instance is expected to perform Task “Receive Issue List,” then Task “Review Issue List,” and so on, as specified in the model. Each instance of a Process is expected to be valid for the model, but some instances might not, for example if the Process has manual Activities, and the performers have not had proper instruction on how to carry out the Process.

In some applications it is useful to allow more Activities and Events to occur when a Process is executed or performed than are contained in the Process model. This enables other steps to be taken as needed without changing the Process. For example, instances of the Process in Figure 10.1 might execute or perform an extra Activity between Task “Receive Issue List” and Task “Review Issue List.” These instances are still valid for the Process model in Figure 10.1, because the instances still execute or perform the Activities in the Process, in the order they are modeled and under conditions specified for them.

There are two ways to specify whether unmodeled Activities are allowed to occur in Process instances:

- If the isClosed attribute of a Process has a value of false or no value, then interactions, such as sending and receiving Messages and Events, MAY occur in an instance without additional flow elements in the Process. Unmodeled interactions can still be restricted on particular Sequence Flow in the Process (see next bullet). If the isClosed attribute of a Process has a value of true, then interactions, such as sending and receiving Messages and Events, MAY NOT occur without additional flow elements in the Process. This restriction overrides any unmodeled interactions allowed by Sequence Flows in the next bullet.

- If the isImmediate attribute of a Sequence Flow in a Process has a value of false, then other Activities and interactions not modeled in the Process MAY be executed or performed during the Sequence Flow. If the isImmediate attribute has a value of true, then Activities and interactions not modeled in the Process MAY NOT be executed or performed during Sequence Flow. In non-executable Processes (isExecutable attribute has value false, or defaults to false), Sequence Flows with no value for isImmediate are treated as if the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name: string</td>
<td>The name of the Lane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partitionElement: BaseElement [0..1]</td>
<td>A reference to a BaseElement that specifies the partition value and partition type. Using this partition element a BPMN compliant tool can determine the FlowElements that have to be partitioned in this Lane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partitionElementRef: BaseElement [0..1]</td>
<td>A reference to a BaseElement that specifies the partition value and partition type. Using this partition element a BPMN compliant tool can determine the FlowElements that have to be partitioned in this Lane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>childLaneSet: LaneSet [0..1]</td>
<td>A reference to a LaneSet element for embedded Lanes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flowNodeRefs: FlowNode [0..*]</td>
<td>The list of FlowNodes partitioned into this Lane according to the partitionElement defined as part of the Lane element.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
value were false. In executable Processes (isExecutable attribute has value true, or defaults to true), Sequence Flows with no value for isImmediate are treated as if the value were true. Executable Processes cannot have a false value for the isImmediate attribute.

Restrictions on unmodeled Activities specified with isClosed and isImmediate apply only under executions or performances (instances) of the Process containing the restriction. These Activities MAY occur in instances of other Processes.

When a Process allows Activities to occur that the Process does not model, those Activities might appear in other Process models. The executions or performances (instances) of these other Processes might be valid for the original Process. For example, a Process might be defined similar to the one in Figure 10.1 that adds an extra Activity between Task “Receive Issue List” and Task “Review Issue List.” The Process in Figure 10.1 might use isClosed or isImmediate to allow other Activities to occur in between Task “Receive Issue List” and Task “Review Issue List.” When the Process is executed or performed, then instances of the other Process (the one with the extra step in between Task “Receive Issue List” and Task “Review Issue List”) will be valid for the Process in Figure 10.1. Modelers can declare that they intend all instances of one Process will be valid for another Process using the supports association between the Processes. During development of these Processes, support might not actually hold, because the association just expresses modeler intent.

A common use for model support is between private and public Processes, see “Overview” (page 21). A public Process contains Activities visible to external parties, such as Participants in a Collaboration, while a private Process includes other Activities that are not visible to external parties. The hidden Activities in a private Process are not modeled in the public Process. However, it is expected that instances of the private Process will appear to external parties as if they could be instances of the public Process. This means the private Process supports the public Process (it is expected that all instances of the private Process will be valid for the public one).

A Process that supports another, as a private Process can to a public Process, does not need to be entirely similar to the other Process. It is only REQUIRED that instances of the Process appear as if they could be instance of the other Process. For example, Figure 10.127 shows a public Process at the top with a Send Task and Receive Task. A supporting private Process is shown at the bottom. The private Process sends and receives the same Messages, but using Events instead of Tasks. It also introduces Activities not modeled in the public Process. However all instances of the private Process will appear as if they could be instances of the public one, because the Messages are sent and received in the order REQUIRED by the public Process, and the public Process allows unmodeled Activities to occur.

Figure 10.127 – One Process supporting to another
In practice, a public Process looks like an underspecified private Process. Anything not specified in the public Process is determined by the private one. For example, if none of the outgoing Sequence Flows for an Exclusive Gateway have conditionExpressions, the private Process will determine which one of the Activities targeted by the Sequence Flows will occur. Another example is a Timer Event with no EventDefinition. The private Process will determine when the timer goes off.

10.10 Auditing

The Auditing element and its model associations allow defining attributes related to auditing. It leverages the BPMN extensibility mechanism. This element is used by FlowElements and Process. The actual definition of auditing attributes is out of scope of this International Standard. BPMN 2.0 implementations can define their own set of attributes and their intended semantics.

Figure 10.128 – Auditing Class Diagram

10.11 Monitoring

The Monitoring and its model associations allow defining attributes related to monitoring. It leverages the BPMN extensibility mechanism. This element is used by FlowElements and Process. The actual definition of monitoring attributes is out of scope of this International Standard. BPMN 2.0.1 implementations can define their own set of attributes and their intended semantics.
10.12 Process Package XML Schemas

Table 10.136 – Process XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="process" type="tProcess" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tProcess">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tCallableElement">
            <xsd:sequence>
                <xsd:element ref="auditing" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
                <xsd:element ref="monitoring" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
                <xsd:element ref="monitoring" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xsd:element ref="property" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xsd:element ref="laneSet" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xsd:element ref="flowElement" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xsd:element ref="artifact" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xsd:element ref="resourceRole" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xsd:element ref="correlationSubscription" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xsd:element name="supports" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:attribute name="processType" type="tProcessType" default="None"/>
            <xsd:attribute name="isExecutable" type="xsd:boolean" use="optional"/>
            <xsd:attribute name="isClosed" type="xsd:boolean" default="false"/>
            <xsd:attribute name="definitionalCollaborationRef" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
<xsd:simpleType name="tProcessType">
    <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:enumeration value="None"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Public"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Private"/>
    </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
```
Table 10.137 – Auditing XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="auditing" type="tAuditing"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tAuditing">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement"/>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.138 – GlobalTask XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="globalTask" type="tGlobalTask" substitutionGroup="rootElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tGlobalTask">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tCallableElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="resourceRole" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.139 – Lane XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="lane" type="tLane"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tLane">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="partitionElement" type="tBaseElement" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <xsd:element name="flowNodeRef" type="xsd:IDREF" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element name="childLaneSet" type="tLaneSet" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="partitionElementRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 10.140 – LaneSet XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="laneSet" type="tLaneSet"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tLaneSet">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="lane" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
### Table 10.141 – Monitoring XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="monitoring" type="tMonitoring"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tMonitoring">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tBaseElement"/>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

### Table 10.142 – Performer XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="performer" type="tPerformer" substitutionGroup="resourceRole"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tPerformer">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tResourceRole"/>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
11 Choreography

11.1 General

NOTE: The content of this clause is REQUIRED for BPMN Choreography Modeling Conformance or for BPMN Complete Conformance. However, this clause is NOT REQUIRED for BPMN Process Modeling Conformance, BPMN Process Execution Conformance, or BPMN BPEL Process Execution Conformance. For more information about BPMN conformance types, see page 1.

A Choreography is a type of process, but differs in purpose and behavior from a standard BPMN Process. A standard Process, or an Orchestration Process (see page 143), is more familiar to most process modelers and defines the flow of Activities of a specific PartnerEntity or organization. In contrast, Choreography formalizes the way business Participants coordinate their interactions. The focus is not on orchestrations of the work performed within these Participants, but rather on the exchange of information (Messages) between these Participants.

Another way to look at Choreography is to view it as a type of business contract between two or more organizations. This entails Message (document) exchanges in an orderly fashion: e.g., first a retailer sends a purchase order request to a supplier; next the supplier either confirms or rejects intention to investigate the order; then supplier proceeds to investigate stock for line-items and seeks outside suppliers if necessary; accordingly the supplier sends a confirmation or rejection back; during this period the retailer can send requests to vary the order, etc.

Message exchanges between partners go beyond simple request-response interactions into multi-cast, contingent requests, competing receives, streaming, and other service interaction patterns (REF for SIP). Moreover, they cluster around distinct scenarios such as: creation of sales orders; assignment of carriers of shipments involving different sales orders; managing the “red tape” of crossing customs and quarantine; processing payment and investigating exceptions. A Choreography is a definition of expected behavior, basically a procedural business contract, between interacting Participants (see page 11 for more information on Participants). It brings Message exchanges and their logical relation as Conversations into view. This allows partners to plan their Business Processes for inter-operation without introducing conflicts. An example of a conflict could arise if a retailer was allowed to send a variation on a purchase order immediately after sending the initial request. The Message exchange sequences in Choreography models need to be reflected in the orchestration Processes of participants. A Choreography model makes it possible to derive the Process interfaces of each partner’s Process (REF: Decker & Weske, 2007).

To leverage the familiarity of flowcharting types of Process models, BPMN Choreographies also have “activities” that are ordered by Sequence Flows. These “activities” consist of one or more interactions between Participants. These interactions are often described as being message exchange patterns (MEPs). A MEP is the atomic unit (“Activity”) of a Choreography.

Some MEPs involve a single Message (e.g., a “Customer” requests an “Order” from a “Supplier”). Other MEPs will involve two Messages in a request and response format (e.g., a “Supplier” request a “Credit Rating” from a “Financial Institution,” who then returns the “Credit Rating” to the “Supplier”). There can be even more complex MEPs that involve error Messages, for example.

A single MEP can be defined as a BPMN Choreography Task (see page 323). Thus, a Choreography defines the order in which Choreography Tasks occur. Sub-Choreographies allow the composition/decomposition of Choreographies.
Choreographies are designed in BPMN to allow stand-alone, scalable models of these Participant interactions. However, since BPMN provides other Business Process modeling views, Choreographies are designed to fit within BPMN Collaboration diagrams to display the relationship between the Choreography and Orchestration Processes thus expanding BPMN 1.2 capabilities (see page 107 for more information on Collaborations, and page 361 for Choreographies within Collaborations).

Figure 11.1 displays the metamodel of the key BPMN elements that contribute to Choreography modeling. The sub clauses of this clause will describe the characteristics of these elements and how they are used in a Choreography.

Figure 11.1 – The Choreography metamodel

The Choreography element inherits the attributes and model associations of Collaboration (see Table 9.1) and of FlowElementContainer (see Table 8.45), but does not have any additional attributes or model associations.

NOTE: The Collaboration attribute choreographyRef is not applicable to Choreography.
11.2 Basic Choreography Concepts

A key to understanding Choreographies and how they are used in BPMN is their relationship to Pools (see page 111 for more information on Pools). Choreographies exist outside of or in between Pools. A Process, within a Pool, represents the work of a specific PartnerEntity (e.g., “FedEx”), often substituted by a PartnerRole (e.g., “Shipper”) when a PartnerEntity is not identified and can be decided later. The PartnerEntity/PartnerRole is called a Participant in BPMN. Pools are the graphical representation of Participants. A Choreography, on the other hand, is a different kind of process. A Choreography defines the sequence of interactions between Participants. Thus, a Choreography does not exist in a single Pool, it is not the purview of a single Participant. Each step in the Choreography involves two or more Participants (these steps are called Choreography Activities, see below). This means that the Choreography, in BPMN terms, is defined outside of any particular Pool.

The key question that needs to be continually asked during the development of a Choreography is “what information do the Participants in the Choreography have?” Basically, each Participant can only understand the status of the Choreography through observable behavior of the other Participants; which are the Messages that have been sent and received. If there are only two Participants in the Choreography, then it is very simple; both Participants will be aware of who is responsible for sending the next Message. However, if there are more than two Participants, then the modeler needs to be careful to sequence the Choreography Activities in such a way that the Participants know when they are responsible for initiating the interactions.

Figure 11.2 presents a sample Choreography. The details of Choreography behavior and elements will be described in the sub clause below.

Figure 11.2 – An example of a Choreography

To illustrate the correspondence between Collaboration and Choreography, consider an example from logistics. Figure 11.3 shows a Collaboration where the Pools are expanded to reveal orchestration details per participant (for Shipper, Retailer etc.). Message Flows connect the elements in the different Pools related to different participants, indicating Message exchanges. For example, a Planned Order Variations Message is sent by the Supplier to the Retailer; the corresponding send and receive have been modeled using regular BPMN messaging Activities. Also, a
number of Messages of the same type being sent. For example, a number of Retailer Order and Delivery Variations Messages can be sent from the Retailer to the Supplier, indicated by respective multi-instances constructs (for brevity, the actual elements for sending/receiving inside the multi-instances construct have been omitted).

Figure 11.3 – A Collaboration diagram logistics example

The scenario modeled in Figure 11.3 entails shipment planning for the next supply replenishment variations: the Supplier confirms all previously accepted variations for delivery with the Retailer; the Retailer sends back a number of further possible variations; the Supplier requests to the Shipper and Consignee possible changes in delivery; accordingly, the Retailer interacts with the Consignee and Supplier for final confirmations.

A problem with model interconnections for complex Choreographies is that they are vulnerable to errors. Interconnections might not be sequenced correctly, since the logic of Message exchanges is considered from each partner at a time. This in turn leads to deadlocks. For example, consider the PartnerRole of Retailer in Figure 11.3 and assume that, by error, the order of Confirmation Delivery Schedule and Retailer Confirmation received (far right) were swapped. This would result in a deadlock since both Retailer and Consignee would wait for the other to send a Message. Deadlocks in general, however, are not that obvious and might be difficult to recognize in a Collaboration.

Figure 11.4 shows the Choreography corresponding to the Collaboration of Figure 11.3.
11.3 Data

A **Choreography** does not have a central control mechanism and there is no mechanism for maintaining any central **Process** (**Choreography**) data. Thus, any element in a **Process** that would normally depend on conditional or assignment expressions, would not have any central source for this data to be maintained and understood by all the **Participants** involved in the **Choreography**.

As mentioned above, neither **Data Objects** nor **Repositories** are used in **Choreographies**. Both of these elements are used exclusively in **Processes** and require the concept of a central locus of control. **Data Objects** are basically variables and there would be no central system to manage them. **Data** can be used in **expressions** that are used in **Exclusive Gateways**, but only that data which has been sent through a **Message** in the **Choreography**.

11.4 Use of BPMN Common Elements

Some **BPMN** elements are common to both **Process** and **Choreography** diagrams, as well as **Collaboration**; they are used in these diagrams. The next few sub clauses will describe the use of **Messages**, **Message Flows**, **Participants**, **Sequence Flows**, **Artifacts**, **Correlations**, **Expressions**, and **Services** in **Choreography**.

The key graphical elements of **Gateways** and **Events** are also common to both **Choreography** and **Process**. Since their usage has a large impact, they are described in major sub clauses of this clause (see page 339 for **Events** and page 344 for **Gateways**).
11.4.1 Sequence Flow

Sequence Flows are used within Choreographies to show the sequence of the Choreography Activities, which can have intervening Gateways. They are used in the same way as they are in Processes. They are only allowed to connect with other Flow Objects. For Processes, they can only connect Events, Gateways, and Activities. For Choreographies, they can only connect Events, Gateways, and Choreography Activities (see Figure 11.5).

There are two additional variations of Sequence Flows:

- **Conditional Sequence Flows**: Conditions can be added to Sequence Flows in two situations:
  - From Gateways: Outgoing Sequence Flows have conditions for Exclusive and Inclusive Gateways. The data referenced in the conditions need to be visible to two or more Participants in the Choreography. The data becomes visible if it is part of a Message that had been sent (previously) within the Choreography. See page 344 and page 351 for more information about how Exclusive and Inclusive Gateways are used in Choreography.
  - From Choreography Activities: Outgoing Sequence Flows MAY have conditions for Choreography Activities. Since these act similar to Inclusive Gateways, the Conditional Sequence Flows can be used in Choreographies. The conditions have the same restrictions that apply to the visibility of the data for Gateways.

- **Default Sequence Flows**: For Exclusive Gateways, Inclusive Gateways, and Choreography Activities that have Conditional Sequence Flows, one of the outgoing Sequence Flows MAY be a Default Sequence Flow. Because the other outgoing Sequence Flows will have appropriately visible of data as described above, the Participants would know if all the other conditions would be false, thus the Default Sequence Flow would be selected and the Choreography would move down that Sequence Flow.

In some applications it is useful to allow additional Messages that are not part of the defined Choreography model to be sent between Participants when the Choreography is carried out. This enables Participants to exchange other Messages as needed without changing the Choreography. There are two ways to specify this:

- If the isClosed attribute (from Collaboration) of a Choreography has a value of false or no value, then Participants MAY send Messages to each other without additional Choreography Activities in the Choreography. Unmodeled messaging can be restricted on particular Sequence Flows in the Choreography, see next bullet. If the isClosed attribute of a Choreography has a value of true, then Participants MAY NOT send Messages to each other without additional Choreography Activities in the Choreography. This restriction overrides any unmodeled messaging allowed by Sequence Flows in the next bullet.
• If the isImmediate attribute of a Sequence Flow has a value of false or no value, then Participants MAY send Messages to each other between the elements connected by the Sequence Flow without additional Choreography Activities in the Choreography. If the isImmediate attribute of a Sequence Flow has a value of true, then Participants MAY NOT send Messages to each other between the elements connected by the Sequence Flow without additional Choreography Activities in the Choreography. The value of isImmediate attribute of a Sequence Flow has no effect if the isClosed attribute of the containing Choreography has a value of true.

Restrictions on unmodeled messaging specified with isClosed and isImmediate applies only under the Choreography containing the restriction. PartnerEntities and PartnerRoles of the Participants MAY send Messages to each other under other Choreographies, Collaborations, and Conversations.

11.4.2 Artifacts

Both Text Annotations and Groups can be used within Choreographies and all BPMN diagrams. There are no restrictions on their use.

11.5 Choreography Activities

A Choreography Activity represents a point in a Choreography flow where an interaction occurs between two or more Participants.

The Choreography Activity class is an abstract element, sub-classing from FlowElement (as shown in Figure 11.6). When Choreography Activities are defined they are contained within a Choreography or a Sub-Choreography, which are FlowElementContainers (other FlowElementContainers are not allowed to contain Choreography Activities).
The Choreography Activity element inherits the attributes and model associations of FlowElement (see Table 8.44) through its relationship to FlowNode. Table 11.1 presents the additional model associations of the Choreography Activity element.

### Table 11.1 – Choreography Activity Model Associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>participantRefs: Participant [2..*]</td>
<td>A Choreography Activity has two or more Participants (see page 113 for more information on Participants).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initiatingParticipantRef: Participant</td>
<td>One of the Participants will be the one that initiates the Choreography Activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loopType: ChoreographyLoopType = None</td>
<td>A Choreography Activity MAY be performed once or MAY be repeated. The loopType attribute will determine the appropriate marker for the Choreography Activity (see below).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correlationKeys: CorrelationKey [0..*]</td>
<td>This association specifies correlationKeys used by the Message Flow in the Choreography Activity, including Sub-Choreographies and called Choreographies.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.5.1 Choreography Task

A Choreography Task is an atomic Activity in a Choreography Process. It represents an Interaction, which is one or two Message exchanges between two Participants. Using a Collaboration diagram to view these elements (see page 107 for more information on Collaboration), we would see the two Pools representing the two Participants of the Interaction (see Figure 11.7). The communication between the Participants is shown as a Message Flow.

Figure 11.7 – A Collaboration view of Choreography Task elements

In a Choreography diagram, this Interaction is collapsed into a single object, a Choreography Task. The name of the Choreography Task and each of the Participants are all displayed in the different bands that make up the shape’s graphical notation. There are two or more Participant Bands and one Task Name Band (see Figure 11.8).

- The Participant Band of the Participant that does not initiate the interaction MUST be shaded with a light fill.

Figure 11.8 – A Choreography Task
Figure 11.9 – A Collaboration view of a Choreography Task

The interaction defined by a **Choreography Task** can be shown in an expanded format through a **Collaboration** diagram (see Figure 11.9 and see page 107 for more information on **Collaborations**). In the **Collaboration** view, the **Participants** of the **Choreography Task Participant Band’s** will be represented by **Pools**. The interaction between them will be a **Message Flow**.

Figure 11.10 – A two-way Choreography Task
Figure 11.11 – A Collaboration view of a two-way Choreography Task

In a Choreography Diagram, the Choreography Task object shares the same shape as a Task or any other BPMN Activity, which is a rectangle that has rounded corners.

- A Choreography Task is a rounded corner rectangle that MUST be drawn with a single line.
- The use of text, color, size, and lines for a Choreography Task MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39.

The three bands in the Choreography Task shape provide the distinction between this type of Task and an Orchestration Task (in a traditional BPMN diagram).

The Message sent by either one or both of the Participants of the Choreography Task can be displayed (see Figure 11.10, above). The Message icon is shown tethered to the Participant that is the sender of the Message.

- If the Message is the initiating Message of the Choreography Task, then the Message icon MUST be unfilled.
- If the Message is a return Message for the Choreography Task, then the Message icon MUST have a light fill.

Note that Messages can be tethered to a Call Choreography that references a GlobalChoreographyTask, but cannot be used for Sub-Choreographies or Call Choreography that references another Choreography.

As with a standard Orchestration Task, the Choreography Task MAY have internal markers to show how the Choreography Task MAY be repeated. There are two types of internal markers (see Figure 11.12):

- A Choreography Task MAY have only one of the three markers at one time.
- The marker for a Choreography Task that is a standard loop MUST be a small line with an arrowhead that curls back upon itself. The loopType of the Choreography Task MUST be Standard.
The marker for a **Choreography Task** that is parallel *multi-instance* MUST be a set of three vertical lines. The **loopType** of the **Choreography Task** MUST be **MultiInstanceParallel**.

The marker for a **Choreography Task** that is sequential *multi-instance* MUST be a set of three horizontal lines. The **loopType** of the **Choreography Task** MUST be **MultiInstanceSequential**.

The marker that is present MUST be centered at the bottom of the **Task Name Band** of the shape.

---

**Figure 11.12** – Choreography Task Markers

**Figure 11.13** – The Collaboration view of a *looping* Choreography Task
There are situations when a Participant for a Choreography Task is actually a multi-instance Participant. A multi-instance Participant represents a situation where there are more than one possible related Participants (PartnerRoles/PartnerEntities) that might be involved in the Choreography. For example, in a Choreography that involves the shipping of a product, there can be more than one type of shipper used, depending on the destination. When a Participant in a Choreography contains multiple instances, then a multi-instance marker will be added to the Participant Band for that Participant (see Figure 11.15).

- The marker for a Choreography Task that is multi-instance MUST be a set of three vertical lines.
- The marker that is present MUST be centered at the bottom of the Participant Band of the shape.

The width of the Participant Band will be expanded to contain both the name of the Participant and the multi-instance marker.
The Choreography Task element inherits the attributes and model associations of Choreography Activity (see Table 11.1). Table 11.2 presents the additional model associations of the Choreography Task element.

### Table 11.2 – Choreography Task Model Associations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>messageFlowRef: Message Flow [1..*]</td>
<td>Although not graphical represented, Choreography Task contains one or more Message Flows that represent the interaction(s) between the Participants referenced by the Choreography Task.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 11.5.2 Sub-Choreography

A Sub-Choreography is a compound Activity in that it has detail that is defined as a flow of other Activities, in this case, a Choreography. Each Sub-Choreography involves two or more Participants. The name of the Sub-Choreography and each of the Participants are all displayed in the different bands that make up the shape’s graphical notation. There are two or more Participant Bands and one Sub-Process Name Band.

The Sub-Choreography can be in a collapsed view that hides its details (see Figure 11.17) or a Sub-Choreography can be expanded to show its details (a Choreography Process) within the Choreography Process in which it is contained (see Figure 11.19). In the collapsed form, the Sub-Process object uses a marker to distinguish it as a Sub-Choreography, rather than a Choreography Task.

The Sub-Process marker MUST be a small square with a plus sign (+) inside. The square MUST be positioned at the bottom center of the Sub-Process Name Band within the shape.

- The Participant Band of the Participant that does not initiate the interaction MUST be shaded with a light fill.
Figure 11.17 – A Sub-Choreography

Figure 11.18 shows an example of a potential Collaboration view of the above Sub-Choreography.

Figure 11.18 – A Collaboration view of a Sub-Choreography
Figure 11.19 shows an example of an expanded Sub-Choreography.

Figure 11.19 – An expanded Sub-Choreography

Figure 11.20 shows an example of a potential Collaboration view of the above Sub-Choreography.

Figure 11.20 – A Collaboration view of an expanded Sub-Choreography
The Parent Sub-Choreography (Expanded)

The Choreography Activity shares the same shape as a Sub-Process or any other BPMN Activity, which is in this state.

- A Sub-Choreography is a rounded corner rectangle that MUST be drawn with a single thin line.
- The use of text, color, size, and lines for a Sub-Choreography MUST follow the rules defined in “Use of Text, Color, Size, and Lines in a Diagram” on page 39.

The three or more partitions in the Sub-Choreography shape provide the distinction between this type of Task and an Orchestration Sub-Process (in a traditional BPMN diagram).

It is possible for a Sub-Choreography to involve more than two Participants. In this case, an additional Participant Band will be added to the shape for each additional Participant (see Figure 11.21). The ordering and position of the Participant Band (either in the upper or lower positions) is up to the modeler or modeling tool. In addition, any Participant Band beyond the first two optional; it is displayed at the discretion of the modeler or modeling tool. However, each Participant Band that is added MUST be added to the upper and lower sections of the Sub-Choreography in an alternative manner.

![Figure 11.21 – Sub-Choreography (Collapsed) with More than Two Participants](image)

As with a standard Orchestration Sub-Process, the Sub-Choreography MAY have internal markers to show how the Sub-Choreography MAY be repeated. There are two types of internal markers (see Figure 11.22):

- A Sub-Choreography MAY have only one of the three markers at one time.
- The marker for a Sub-Choreography that is a standard loop MUST be a small line with an arrowhead that curls back upon itself. The loopType of the Sub-Choreography MUST be Standard.
- The marker for a Sub-Choreography that is parallel multi-instance MUST be a set of three vertical lines. The loopType of the Sub-Choreography MUST be MultiInstanceParallel.
- The marker for a Sub-Choreography that is sequential multi-instance MUST be a set of three horizontal lines. The loopType of the Sub-Choreography MUST be MultiInstanceSequential.
- The marker that is present MUST be centered at the bottom of the Sub-Process Name Band of the shape.
There are situations when a Participant for a Sub-Choreography is actually a multi-instance Participant. A multi-instance Participant represents a situation where there are more than one possible related Participants (PartnerRoles/PartnerEntities) that can be involved in the Choreography. For example, in a Choreography that involves the shipping of a product, there can be more than one type of shipper used, depending on the destination. When a Participant in a Choreography contains multiple instances, then a multi-instance marker will be added to the Participant Band for that Participant (see Figure 11.23).

- The marker for a Sub-Choreography that is multi-instance MUST be a set of three vertical lines.
- The marker that is present MUST be centered at the bottom of the Participant Band of the shape.
- The width of the Participant Band will be expanded to contain both the name of the Participant and the multi-instance marker.

This includes Compensation Event Sub-Processes (contained within a Sub-Choreography) as well as the external Compensation Activity connected through an Association.

The Sub-Choreography element inherits the attributes and model associations of Choreography Activity (see Table 11.1) and FlowElementsContainer (see Table 8.45). Table 11.3 presents the additional model associations of the GlobalChoreographyTask element:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>artifacts: Artifact [0..*]</td>
<td>This attribute provides the list of Artifacts that are contained within the Sub-Choreography.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.5.3 Call Choreography

A Call Choreography identifies a point in the Process where a global Choreography or a Global Choreography Task is used. The Call Choreography acts as a place holder for the inclusion of the Choreography element it is calling. This pre-defined called Choreography element becomes a part of the definition of the parent Choreography.

A Call Choreography object shares the same shape as the Choreography Task and Sub-Choreography, which is a rectangle that has rounded corners, two or more Participant Bands, and an Activity Name Band. However, the target of what the Choreography Activity calls will determine the details of its shape.

- If the Call Choreography calls a Global Choreography Task, then the shape will be the same as a Choreography Task, but the boundary of the shape MUST have a thick line (see Figure 11.24).
- If the Call Choreography calls a Choreography, then there are two options:
  - The details of the called Choreography can be hidden and the shape will be the same as a collapsed Sub-Choreography, but the boundary of the shape MUST have a thick line (see Figure 11.25).
  - The details of the called Choreography can be shown and the shape will be the same as an expanded Sub-Choreography, but the boundary of the shape MUST have a thick line (see Figure 11.26).

Figure 11.24 – A Call Choreography calling a Global Choreography Task

Figure 11.25 – A Call Choreography calling a Choreography (Collapsed)
The **Call Choreography** element inherits the attributes and model associations of ChoreographyActivity (see Figure 11.27 and Table 11.1). Table 11.4 presents the additional model associations of the **Call Choreography** element.
11.5.4 Global Choreography Task

A GlobalChoreographyTask is a reusable, atomic Choreography Task definition that can be called from within any Choreography by a Call Choreography.

The GlobalChoreographyTask element inherits the attributes and model associations of Collaboration (see Table 9.1), through its relationship to Choreography. Table 11.5 presents the additional model associations of the GlobalChoreographyTask element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Description/Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>calledChoreographyRef:</td>
<td>The element to be called, which will be either a Choreography or a GlobalChoreographyTask.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CallableElement [0..1]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>participantAssociations:</td>
<td>Specifies how Participants in a nested Choreography or GlobalChoreographyTask match up with the Participants in the Choreography referenced by the Call Choreography.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParticipantAssociation [0..*]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A GlobalChoreographyTask is a restricted type of Choreography, it is an “empty” Choreography.

- A GlobalChoreographyTask MUST NOT contain any Flow Elements.

Since a GlobalChoreographyTask does not have any Flow Elements, it does not require MessageFlowAssociations, ParticipantAssociations, ConversationAssociations, or Artifacts. It is basically a set of Participants and Message Flows intended for reuse.

11.5.5 Looping Activities

Both Sub-Choreographies can have standard loops and multi-instances. Examples of Choreography Activities with the appropriate markers can be seen in Figure 11.12 and Figure 11.22.

11.5.6 The Sequencing of Activities

There are constraints on how Choreography Activities can be sequenced (through Sequence Flows) in a Choreography. These constraints are due to the limited visibility of the Participants, which only know of the progress of the Choreography by the Messages that occur. When a Participant sends or receives a Message, then that
Participant knows exactly how far the Choreography has progressed. This means that the ordering of Choreography Activities need to take into account when the Participants send or receive Messages so that they Participants are NOT REQUIRED to guess about when it is their turn to send a Message.

The basic rule of Choreography Activity sequencing is this:

- The Initiator of a Choreography Activity MUST have been involved (as Initiator or Receiver) in the previous Choreography Activity.

Of course, the first Choreography Activity in a Choreography does not have this constraint.

Figure 11.28 shows a sequence of two Choreography Activities that follow this constraint. “Participant B” is the Initiator of “Choreography Task 2” after being the Receiver in “Choreography Task 1.” While there is no requirement that “Participant B” sends the Message immediately, since there can be internal work that the Participant needs to do prior to the Message. But in this situation there is no ambiguity that “Participant B” will be the Initiator of the next Choreography Task. “Participant C” does not know exactly when the Message will arrive from “Participant B,” but “Participant C” knows that one will arrive and there are not any additional requirements on the Participant until the Message arrives.

![Figure 11.28 – A valid sequence of Choreography Activities](image)

Naturally, the sequence of Choreography Activities shown in Figure 11.28, above can be expanded into a Collaboration diagram to show how the sequence can be enforced. Figure 11.29 shows the corresponding Collaboration. The diagram shows how the Activities within the individual Pools fit with the design of the Choreography.
Figure 11.29 – The corresponding Collaboration for a valid Choreography sequence

When determining a valid sequence of Choreography Tasks, it is important to consider the type of Choreography Tasks that are being used. A single Choreography Task can be used for one or two Messages. Most of the time there will be one or two Messages for a Choreography Task. Figure 11.30 shows a sequence of Choreography Tasks, the first one being a two-way interaction, where the initiator sends a Message and gets a response from the other Participant.

Figure 11.30 – A valid sequence of Choreography Activities with a two-way Activity
Figure 11.31 shows the corresponding Collaboration and how the two Choreography Tasks are reflected in the Processes within the Pools. The Choreography Task that has two Messages is reflected by three Process Tasks. Usually in these cases, the initiating Participant will use a single Activity to handle both the sending and receiving of the Messages. A BPMN Service Task can be used for this purpose and these types of Tasks are often referred to as “request-response” Tasks for Choreography modelers.

Figure 11.31 – The corresponding Collaboration for a valid Choreography sequence with a two-way Activity

Figure 11.32 shows how a sequence of Choreography Activities can be designed that would be invalid in the sense that an Initiating Participant would not know when the appropriate time would be to send a Message. In this example, “Participant A” is scheduled to send a Message to “Participant C” after “Participant B” sends a Message to “Participant C.” However, “Participant A” will not know when the Message from “Participant B” has been sent. So, there is no way to enforce the sequence that is modeled in the Choreography.

Figure 11.32 – An invalid sequence of Choreography Activities
Figure 11.33 shows the **Collaboration** view of the above **Choreography** diagram. It becomes clear that “Participant A” will not know the appropriate time to send **Message** “M3” to “Participant C.” If the **Message** is sent too soon, then “Participant C” will not be prepared to receive it. Thus, as a **Choreography**, the model in Figure 11.32, above, cannot be enforced.

**Figure 11.33** – The corresponding Collaboration for an invalid Choreography sequence

### 11.6 Events

#### 11.6.1 Start Events

**Start Events** provide the graphical marker for the start of a **Choreography**. They are used much in the same way as they are used for a **Process** (see “Start Event” on page 237). This table shows how the types of **Start Events** are applied to **Choreography**.
Table 11.6 – Use of Start Events in Choreography

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Event</th>
<th>Usage in Choreography?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>Yes. This is really just a graphical marker since the arrival of the first Message in the Choreography is really the Trigger for the Choreography. Sub-Processes, however, we should look at. The Parent Process can be considered the trigger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>No. A Message Start Event, in a stand-alone Choreography, has no way to show who the senders or receivers of the Message should be. A Choreography Task should be used instead. Thus, a None Start Event should be used as a graphical marker for the “start” of the Choreography.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timer</td>
<td>Yes. All Participants have to have an agreement to the approximate time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation</td>
<td>No. An Escalation is only visible to a single Participant. That Participant will have to send a Message to the other Participants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error</td>
<td>No. An Error is only visible to a single Participant. That Participant will have to send a Message to the other Participants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compensation</td>
<td>No. Compensation is handled within a single Participant (an orchestration Process).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional</td>
<td>Yes. This is actually determined internal to Participant, but then the other Participants know this has happened based the first interaction that follows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signal</td>
<td>Yes. The source of the Signal is NOT REQUIRED (and might not even be a Participant in the Choreography). There are no specific recipients of a Signal. All Participants of the Choreography (to comply) MUST be able to see the Signal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple</td>
<td>Yes. But they can only be Multiple Signals or Timers. As in Orchestration, this acts like an OR. Any one of the incoming Signals will Trigger the Choreography. Any Signal that follows would create a separate instance of the Choreography.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.6.2 Intermediate Events

Table 11.7 – Use of Intermediate Events in Choreography

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Event</th>
<th>Usage in Choreography?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None: in Normal Flow</td>
<td>Yes. However, this really doesn’t have much meaning other than just documenting that a specific point has been reached in the Choreography. There would be no Message exchange or any delay in the Choreography.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None: Attached to Activity boundary</td>
<td>No. There would be no way for Participants to know when the Activity should be interrupted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Message:</strong> in Normal Flow</td>
<td><strong>No.</strong> A <strong>Message Intermediate Event</strong>, in a stand-alone <strong>Choreography</strong>, has no way to show who the senders or receivers of the <strong>Message</strong> should be. A <strong>Choreography Task</strong> should be used instead. Also, would the <strong>Event</strong> be a <strong>Catch</strong> or a <strong>Throw</strong>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Message:</strong> Attached to Activity boundary</td>
<td><strong>Yes.</strong> Only for <strong>Choreography Tasks</strong>. The Intermediate Event has to be attached to the <strong>Participant Band</strong> of the receiver of the <strong>Message</strong> (since it is a catch Event). The sender of the message has to be the other <strong>Participant</strong> of the <strong>Choreography Task</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Message:</strong> Use in Event Gateway</td>
<td><strong>No.</strong> A <strong>Message Intermediate Event</strong>, in a stand-alone <strong>Choreography</strong>, has no way to show who the senders or receivers of the <strong>Message</strong> should be. A <strong>Choreography Task</strong> should be used instead.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Timer:** in Normal Flow | **Yes.** Time is not precise in **Choreography**. It is established by the last visible **Choreography Activity**. The **Participants** involved in the Choreography Activity that immediately precedes will have a rough approximation of the time—there will be no exact synchronization.  

For relative timers: Only the **Participants** involved in the Choreography Activity that immediately precedes the Event would know the time. The sender of the Choreography Activity that immediately follows the timer MUST be involved in the Choreography Activity that immediately precedes the timer.  

For absolute timers (full time/date): All **Participants** would know the time. There does not have to be a relationship between the **Participants** of the Choreography Activities that are on either side the timer.  

The sender of the Choreography Activity that immediately follows the timer is the **Participant** that enforces the timer. |
| **Timer:** Attached to Activity boundary | **Yes.** Time is not exact in this case. It is established by the last visible **Event**. All **Participants** will have a rough approximation of the time—there will be no exact synchronization. This includes both interrupting and escalation **Events**. The **Participants** of the Choreography Activity that has the attached timer all enforce the timer.  

For relative timers: They all have to be involved in the Choreography Activity that immediately precedes the Activity with the attached timer.  

For absolute timers (full time/date): All **Participants** would know the time. They all have to be involved in the Choreography Activity that immediately precedes the Activity with the attached timer. |
| **Timer:** Used in Event Gateway | **Yes.** See Event-Based Gateway below. |
| **Error:** Attached to Activity boundary | **No.** An **Error** is only visible to a single **Participant**. That **Participant** will have to send a **Message** to the other **Participants**. |
| **Escalation:** Used in Normal Flow | **No.** An **Escalation** is only visible to a single **Participant**. That **Participant** will have to send a **Message** to the other **Participants**. |
### Table 11.7– Use of Intermediate Events in Choreography

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Type</th>
<th>Normal Flow</th>
<th>Activity Boundary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Escalation</strong></td>
<td>No. An Escalation is only visible to a single Participant. That Participant will have to send a <strong>Message</strong> to the other Participants.</td>
<td>Attached to Activity boundary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cancel</strong></td>
<td>No. These are <strong>Throw Events</strong>. As with a <strong>Message Event</strong>, there would be no indicator as to who is the source of the <strong>Cancel</strong>.</td>
<td>in Normal Flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cancel</strong></td>
<td>Yes. These are <strong>Catch Events</strong>. As with a <strong>Message Event</strong>, they would be attached to the <strong>Choreography Activity</strong> on the <strong>Participant Band</strong> that is receiving the <strong>Cancel</strong>. These would only be interrupting <strong>Events</strong>.</td>
<td>Attached to Activity boundary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Compensation</strong></td>
<td>No. These are <strong>Throw Events</strong>. As with a <strong>Message</strong>, there would be no indicator as to who is the source of the <strong>Cancel</strong>.</td>
<td>in Normal Flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Compensation</strong></td>
<td>Yes. These are <strong>Catch Events</strong>. As with a <strong>Message Event</strong>, they would be attached to the <strong>Choreography Activity</strong> on the <strong>Participant Band</strong> that is receiving the <strong>Cancel</strong>.</td>
<td>Attached to Activity boundary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Conditional</strong></td>
<td>Yes. This is a delay that waits for a change in data to trigger the <strong>Event</strong>. The data are to be visible to the <strong>Participants</strong> as it was data of a previously sent <strong>Message</strong>.</td>
<td>in Normal Flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Conditional</strong></td>
<td>Yes. This is an interruption that waits for a change in data to trigger the <strong>Event</strong>. The data are to be visible to the <strong>Participants</strong> as it was data of a previously sent <strong>Message</strong>.</td>
<td>Attached to Activity boundary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Conditional</strong></td>
<td>Yes. This is a delay that waits for a change in data to trigger the <strong>Event</strong>. The data are to be visible to the <strong>Participants</strong> as it was data of a previously sent <strong>Message</strong>.</td>
<td>Used in Event Gateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Link</strong></td>
<td>Yes. These types of <strong>Events</strong> merely create a virtual <strong>Sequence Flows</strong>. Thus, as long as a <strong>Sequence Flow</strong> between two elements is valid (and within a <strong>Choreography Process</strong> level), then a pair of <strong>Link Events</strong> can interrupt that <strong>Sequence Flow</strong>.</td>
<td>in Normal Flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Signal</strong></td>
<td>Yes. Only <strong>Catch Events</strong> can be used. For <strong>Throw Signal Events</strong>, there would be no indicator of who is the source <strong>Participant</strong>. This would be a delay in the <strong>Choreography</strong> that waits for the <strong>Signal</strong>. The source of the <strong>Signal</strong> is NOT REQUIRED (and might not even be a <strong>Participant</strong> in the <strong>Choreography</strong>). There are no specific recipients of a <strong>Signal</strong>. All <strong>Participants</strong> of the <strong>Choreography</strong> (to comply) MUST be able to see the <strong>Signal</strong>.</td>
<td>in Normal Flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Signal</strong></td>
<td>Yes. These are <strong>Catch Events</strong>. This would be an interruption in the <strong>Choreography</strong> that waits for the <strong>Signal</strong>. The source of the <strong>Signal</strong> is NOT REQUIRED (and might not even be a <strong>Participant</strong> in the <strong>Choreography</strong>). There are no specific recipients of a <strong>Signal</strong>. All <strong>Participants</strong> of the <strong>Choreography</strong> (to comply) MUST be able to see the <strong>Signal</strong>. This <strong>Event</strong> MUST NOT be attached to a <strong>Participant Band</strong> or this would suggest that <strong>Participant</strong> is a specific recipient of the <strong>Signal</strong>.</td>
<td>Attached to Activity boundary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.6.3 End Events

End Events provide a graphical marker for the end of a path within the Choreography.

Table 11.8 – Use of End Events in Choreography

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Event</th>
<th>Usage in Choreography?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>Yes. This is really just a graphical marker since the sending of the previous Message in the Choreography is really the end of the Choreography. The Participants of the Choreography would understand that they would not expect any further Message at that point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>No. A Message End Event, in a stand-alone Choreography, has no way to show who the senders or receivers of the Message should be. A Choreography Task should be used instead. Thus, a None End Event should be used as a graphical marker for the “end” of the Choreography.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error</td>
<td>No. These are Throw Events and there would be no way to indicate the Participant that is the source of the Error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation</td>
<td>No. These are Throw Events and there would be no way to indicate the Participant that is the source of the Escalation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancel</td>
<td>No. These are Throw Events. As with a Message Event, there would be no indicator as to who is the source of the Cancel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compensation</td>
<td>No. These are Throw Events. As with a Message Event, there would be no indicator as to who is the source of the compensation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signal</td>
<td>No. These are Throw Events. As with a Message Event, there would be no indicator as to who is the source of the Signal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.7 Gateways

In an Orchestration Process, Gateways are used to create alternative and/or parallel paths for that Process. Choreography has the same requirement of alternative and parallel paths. That is, interactions between Participants can happen in sequence, in parallel, or through exclusive selection. While the paths of Choreography follow the same basic patterns as that of an Orchestration Process, the lack of a central mechanism to maintain data visibility, and that there is no central evaluation, there are constraints as to how the Gateways are used in conjunction with the Choreography Activities that precede and follow the Gateways. These constraints are an extension of the basic sequencing constraints that was defined on page 335. The six (6) sub clauses that follow will define how the types of Gateways are used in Choreography.

11.7.1 Exclusive Gateway

Exclusive Gateways (Decisions) are used to create alternative paths within a Process or a Choreography. For details of how Exclusive Gateways are used within an Orchestration Process see page 289.

Exclusive Gateways are used in Choreography, but they are constrained by the lack of a central mechanism to store the data that will be used in the Condition expressions of the Gateway’s outgoing Sequence Flows. Choreographies MAY contain natural language descriptions of the Gateway’s Conditions to document the alternative paths of the Choreography (e.g., “large orders” will go down one path while “small orders” will go down another path), but such Choreographies would be underspecified and would not be enforceable. To create an enforceable Choreography, the Gateway Conditions MUST be formal Condition Expressions. However:

- The data used for Gateway Conditions MUST have been in a Message that was sent prior to (upstream from) the Gateway.
- More specifically, all Participants that are directly affected by the Gateway MUST have either sent or received the Message(s) that contained the data used in the Conditions.
- Furthermore, all these Participants MUST have the same understanding of the data. That is, the actual values of the data cannot selectively change after a Participant has seen a Message. Changes to data during the course of the Choreography MUST be visible to all the Participants affected by the Gateway.

These constraints ensure that the Participants in the Choreography understand the basis (the actual value of the data) for the decision behind the Gateway.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Multiple</th>
<th>No. Since there are no valid End Event Results (Terminate doesn’t count) in Choreography, there cannot be multiple of them.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Terminate</td>
<td>Yes. However, there would be no specific ability to terminate the Choreography, since there is no controlling system. In this case, all Participants in the Choreography would understand that when the Terminate End Event is reached (actually when the Message that precedes it occurs), then no further messages will be expected in the Choreography, even if there were parallel paths. The use of the Terminate End Event really only works when there are only two Participants. If there are more than two Participants, then any Participant that was not involved in the last Choreography Task would not necessarily know that the Terminate End Event had been reached.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
One (1) or more Participants will actually “control” the Gateway decision; that is, these Participants make the decision through the internal Orchestration Processes. The decision is manifested by the particular Message that occurs in the Choreography (after the Gateway). This Message is the initiating Message of a Choreography Activity that follows the Gateway. Thus, only the Participants that are the initiators of the Messages that follow the Gateway are the ones that control the decision. This means that:

- The initiating Participants of the Choreography Activities that follow the Gateway MUST have sent or received the Message that provided the data upon which the decision is made.
- The Message that provides the data for the Gateway MAY be in any Choreography Activity prior to the Gateway (i.e., it does not have to immediately precede Gateway).

![Figure 11.34 – An example of the Exclusive Gateway](image)

Figure 11.35 shows the Collaboration that demonstrates how the above Choreography that includes an Exclusive Gateway can be enforced.
Figure 11.35 – The relationship of Choreography Activity Participants across the sides of the Exclusive Gateway shown through a Collaboration

Usually, the initiators for the Choreography Activities that follow the Gateway will be the same Participant. That is, there is only one Participant controlling the decision. Often, the receivers of the initiating Message for those Choreography Activities will be the same Participant. However, it is possible that there could be different Participants receiving the initiating Message for each Choreography Activity (see Figure 11.36).
This configuration can only be valid if all the Participants in the Choreography Activities that follow the Gateway have seen the data upon which the decision is made. If either “Participant B” or “Participant C” had not sent or received a Message with the appropriate data, then that Participant would not be able to know if they are suppose to receive a Message at that point in the Choreography. There is also the assumption that the value of the data is consistent from the point of view of all Participants.

Figure 11.37 displays the corresponding Collaboration view of the above Choreography Exclusive Gateway configuration.
The REQUIRED execution behavior of the Gateway and associated Choreography Activities are enforced through the Business Processes of the Participants as follows:

- Each Choreography Activity and the Sequence Flow connections are reflected in each Participant Process.
- The Gateway is reflected in the Process of each Participant Process that is an initiator of Choreography Activities that follow the Gateway.
- For the receivers in Choreography Activities that follow the Gateway, an Event-Based Gateway is used to consume the associated Message (sent as an outcome of the Gateway). When a Participant is the receiver of more than one of the alternative Messages, the corresponding receives follow the Event-Based Gateway.
If the Participant is the receiver of only one such Message, that is also consumed through a receive following the Event-Based Gateway. This is because the Participant Process does not know whether it will receive a Message (since the Gateway entails a choice of outcomes).

11.7.2 Event-Based Gateway

As described above, the Event-Based Gateway represents a branching point in the Process where the alternatives are based on Events that occur at that point in the Process, rather than the evaluation of expressions using Process data. For details of how Event-Based Gateways are used within an Orchestration Process see “Event-Based Gateway” on page 296.

These Gateways are used in Choreography when the data used to make the decision is only visible to the internal Processes of one Participant. That is, there has been no Message sent within the Choreography that would expose the data used to make the decision. Thus, the only way that the other Participants can be aware of the results of the decision is by the particular Message that arrives next.

- On the right side of the Gateway: either
  - the senders MUST be the same; or
  - the receivers MUST to be the same.
  - After the first Choreography Activity occurs, the other Choreography Activities for the Gateway MUST NOT occur.

- Message Intermediate Events MUST NOT be used in the Event-Based Gateway.

- Timer Intermediate Events MAY be used, but they restrict the participation in the Gateway.
  - For relative timers: All Participants on the right side of the Gateway MUST be involved in the Choreography Activity that immediately precedes the Gateway.
  - For absolute timers (full time/date): All Participants on the right side of the Gateway MUST be involved in the Choreography Activity that immediately precedes the Gateway.

- Signal Intermediate Events MAY be used (they are visible to all Participants).

- No other types of Intermediate Events are allowed.

Figure 11.38 – An example of an Event Gateway

Figure 11.39 displays the corresponding Collaboration view of the above Choreography Event Gateway configuration.
The REQUIRED execution behavior of the Event-Based Gateway and associated Choreography Activities are enforced through the Business Processes of the Participants as follows:

- Each Choreography Activity and the Sequence Flow connections is reflected in each Participant Process.

- If the senders following the Gateway are the same, the Event-Based Gateway is reflected as an Exclusive Gateway in that Participant’s Process. This is because the choice of which Message to send is determined by the same Participant. If the senders are different, sending occurs through different Processes.

- If the receivers are the same, the senders can be the same or different. In this case, the Event-Based Gateway is reflected in the receiver’s Process, with the different Message receives following the Gateway.

- If the receivers are different, the senders need to be the same. The Event-Based Gateway is reflected for different receiver Processes such that the respective receive follows the Gateway. A time-out can be used to ensure that the Gateway does not wait indefinitely.

Figure 11.39 – The corresponding Collaboration view of the above Choreography Event Gateway configuration
11.7.3 Inclusive Gateway

Inclusive Gateways are used for modeling points of synchronization of a number of branches, not all of which are active, after which one or more alternative branches are chosen within a Choreography flow. For example, one of more branches MAY be activated upstream, in parallel, depending on the nature of goods in an order (e.g., large orders, fragile goods orders, orders belonging to pre-existing shipment contracts), and these are subsequently merged. The point of merge results in one or more risk mitigating outcomes (e.g., special insurance protection needed, special packaging needed, and different container categories needed). Inclusive Gateways are also used within an Orchestration Process see page 291.

Like Exclusive Gateways, Inclusive Gateways are used in a Choreography, but they are constrained by the lack of a central mechanism to store the data that will be used in the Condition expressions of the Gateway’s outgoing Sequence Flows. Choreographies MAY contain natural language descriptions of the Gateway’s Conditions to document the one more alternative paths of the Choreography (e.g., “special insurance protection needed,” “special packaging needed,” and different “container category needed”), but such Choreographies would be underspecified and would not be enforceable. To create an enforceable Choreography, the Gateway Conditions MUST be formal Condition Expressions. In general the following rules apply for the Expressions.

Like the enforceability of the Exclusive Gateway, the Inclusive Gateway in a Choreography requires that the data in the Expressions of the outgoing Sequence Flows of the Gateway be available to the initiators of the Choreography Activities of outgoing Sequence Flows. This means that the initiators of these Choreography Activities should also be senders or receivers of Messages in Choreography Activities immediately preceding the Gateway. The major difference, however, is that the synchronizing behavior of the Inclusive Gateway can only be enforced through one participant. Hence, the rules for enforceability are as follows:

- The data used for Gateway Conditions MUST have been in a Message that was sent prior to (upstream from) the Gateway.
- More specifically, all Participants that are directly affected by the Gateway MUST have either sent or received the Message(s) that contained the data used in the Conditions.
- Furthermore, all these Participants MUST have the same understanding of the data. That is, the actual values of the data cannot selectively change after a Participant has seen a Message. Changes to data during the course of the Choreography MUST be visible to all the Participants affected by the Gateway.
- Merge: In order to enforce the synchronizing merge of the Gateway, the sender of the Choreography Activity after the Gateway MUST participate in the Gateway immediately preceding the Gateway. This ensures that the merge can be enforced. (This relies on the assumption of logical atomicity of a Choreography Activity, otherwise the rule would require that all receivers are the same so that the Gateway is enforced in the receiver’s Process only).
- Split: In order to enforce the split side of the Gateway, the initiators of all Choreography Activities immediately following the Gateway MUST be the same as the common sender or receiver of Choreography Activities preceding the Gateway. The sender(s) of all the Choreography Activities after the Gateway MUST be involved in all the Choreography Activities that immediately precede the Gateway.

Figure 11.40 shows an example of a Choreography with an Inclusive Gateway. The Gateway is enforced in the corresponding Business Processes of the Participants involved. For the merge behavior to be enforced, the initiator of Choreography Activities immediately following the Gateway participates in the Choreography Activities immediately preceding the Gateway.
Figure 11.40 – An example of a Choreography Inclusive Gateway configuration
Figure 11.42, a variation of Figure 11.40 above, shows an example of a **Choreography** illustrating the enforcement of the split behavior of the **Inclusive Gateway**. For the split behavior to be enforced, the initiators of **Choreography Activities** immediately following the **Gateway** and the receiver of **Choreography Activities** immediately preceding the **Gateway** are the same Participant (i.e., A).
Figure 11.42 – An example of a Choreography Inclusive Gateway configuration
Figure 11.43 – The corresponding Collaboration view of the above Choreography Inclusive Gateway configuration
Figure 11.44 – Another example of a Choreography Inclusive Gateway configuration
Figure 11.45 – The corresponding Collaboration view of the above Choreography Inclusive Gateway configuration
11.7.4 Parallel Gateway

Parallel Gateways are used to create paths and are performed at the same time, within a Choreography flow. For details of how Parallel Gateways are used within an Orchestration Process see page 292.

Since there is no conditionality for these Gateways, they are available as-is in Choreography. They create parallel paths of the Choreography that all Participants are aware of.

- The sender(s) of all the Activities after the Gateway MUST be involved in all the Activities that immediately precede the Gateway.
- If there is a chain of Gateways with no Choreography Activities in between, the Choreography Activity that precedes the chain satisfies the above constraint.

Figure 11.46 shows the relationship of Choreography Activity Participants across the sides of the Parallel Gateway.

![Diagram](image)

Figure 11.46 – The relationship of Choreography Activity Participants across the sides of the Parallel Gateway

Figure 11.47 shows the corresponding Collaboration view of the above Choreography Parallel Gateway configuration.
Figure 11.47 – The corresponding Collaboration view of the above Choreography Parallel Gateway configuration

The REQUIRED execution behavior of the Parallel Gateway and associated Choreography Activities are enforced through the Business Processes of the Participants as follows:

- Each Choreography Activity and the Sequence Flow connections is reflected in each Participant Process.
- If the senders following the Parallel Gateway are the same, a Parallel Gateway is reflected in the sender’s Process followed by Message sending actions to the corresponding receivers.
- If the senders are different, the Parallel Gateway is manifested by Sequence Flows followed by the sending action in each Process.
11.7.5 Complex Gateway

Complex Gateways can model partial merges in Business Processes where when some but not all of a set of preceding branches complete, the Gateway fires. This can be considered the discriminator/n-of-m join pattern\(^1\) and is not supported through the inclusive OR merge since it is not concerned with sets of branches, but rather branches that have tokens. Applied in Choreographies, Complex Gateways can model tendering and information canvassing use cases where requests are sent to participants who respond at different times.

Consider an e-tender that sends a request for quote to multiple service providers (e.g., warehouse storage) in a marketplace. The e-tender Process sends out requests to each service provider and anticipates their response through three Choreography Activities. The response branches merge at a Complex Gateway to model the requirement that when 66% responses have arrived, an assessment of the tender can proceed. The assessment occurs after the Complex Gateway. If the assessment reports that the reserve amount indicated by the customer cannot be met, a new iteration of the tender is made. A key issue is to ensure that the responses should not be mixed across tender iterations. A Terminate End Event ensures that all Activities are terminated, when a tender has been successful.

![Figure 11.48 – An example of a Choreography Complex Gateway configuration](image_url)

---

11.7.6 Chaining Gateways

It is possible to chain Gateways. This means that a modeler can sequence two or more Gateways without any intervening Choreography Activities, however the constraints on what participants can appear before and after the chain MUST be observed.

11.8 Choreography within Collaboration

11.8.1 Participants

Participants are used in both Collaborations and Choreographies.
11.8.2 Swimlanes

Swimlanes, both Pools and Lanes, are not used in Choreographies. Pools are used exclusively in Collaborations (see page 113). Participants, which can be associated to Pools, however, are used in the Participant Bands of Choreography Tasks (see page 323) and Sub-Choreographies (see page 328). Pools can be used with Choreography diagrams when in the context of a Collaboration diagram (see page 361).

Lanes are not used in Choreography diagrams since Lanes are sub-partitions of a Pool and Choreographies are placed in between the Pools (if used in a Collaboration).

Figure 11.50 shows an example of a Choreography Process combined with Black Box Pools.

Figure 11.50 – An example of a Choreography Process combined with Black Box Pools

Figure 11.51 shows an example of a Choreography Process combined with Pools that contain Processes.
Figure 11.51 – An example of a Choreography Process combined with Pools that contain Processes

Choreography Task in Combined View

Sub-Choreography in Combined View

11.9 XML Schema for Choreography

Table 11.9 – Choreography XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="choreography" type="tChoreography" substitutionGroup="collaboration"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tChoreography">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tCollaboration">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="flowElement" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 11.10 – GlobalChoreographyTask XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="globalChoreographyTask" type="tGlobalChoreographyTask"
substitutionGroup="choreography"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tGlobalChoreographyTask">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tChoreography">
      <xsd:attribute name="initiatingParticipantRef" type="xsd:QName"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 11.11 – ChoreographyActivity XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="choreographyActivity" type="tChoreographyActivity"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tChoreographyActivity" abstract="true">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tFlowNode">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="participantRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="2"
maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element name="correlationKey" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:attribute name="initiatingParticipantRef" type="xsd:QName" use="required"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="loopType" type="tChoreographyLoopType" default="None"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

<xsd:simpleType name="tChoreographyLoopType">
  <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
    <xsd:enumeration value="None"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="Standard"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="MultiInstanceSequential"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="MultiInstanceParallel"/>
  </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
```

Table 11.12 – ChoreographyTask XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="choreographyTask" type="tChoreographyTask" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tChoreographyTask">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="tChoreographyActivity">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="messageFlowRef" type="xsd:QName" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="2"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 11.13 – CallChoreography XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="callChoreography" type="tCallChoreography" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tCallChoreography">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tChoreographyActivity">
            <xsd:sequence>
                <xsd:element ref="participantAssociation" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:attribute name="calledChoreographyRef" type="xsd:QName" use="optional"/>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 11.14 – SubChoreography XML schema

```xml
<xsd:element name="subChoreography" type="tSubChoreography" substitutionGroup="flowElement"/>
<xsd:complexType name="tSubChoreography">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="tChoreographyActivity">
            <xsd:sequence>
                <xsd:element ref="flowElement" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                <xsd:element ref="artifact" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
12 BPMN Notation and Diagrams

12.1 BPMN Diagram Interchange (BPMN DI)

12.1.1 Scope

This clause specifies the meta-model and schema for **BPMN 2.0.1 Diagram Interchange (BPMN DI)**. The **BPMN DI** is meant to facilitate interchange of **BPMN** diagrams between tools rather than being used for internal diagram representation by the tools. The simplest interchange approach to ensure the unambiguous rendering of a **BPMN** diagram was chosen for **BPMN DI**. As such, **BPMN DI** does not aim to preserve or interchange any “tool smarts” between the source and target tools (e.g., layout smarts, efficient styling, etc.).

**BPMN DI** does not address or define the interchange of color information. The use of alternative colors in **BPMN** is non-normative. The meaning or semantic of colors might vary from tool to tool or, from user to user, potentially leading to miss-interpretations.

**BPMN DI** does not ascertain that the **BPMN** diagram is syntactically or semantically correct.

12.1.2 Diagram Definition and Interchange

The **BPMN DI** meta-model, similar to the **BPMN** abstract syntax meta-model, is defined as a MOF-based meta-model. As such, its instances can be serialized and interchanged using XMI. **BPMN DI** is also defined by an XML schema. Thus its instances can also be serialized and interchanged using XML.

Both **BPMN DI** meta-model and schema are harmonized with a draft version of the OMG Diagram Definition (DD) standard. Annex B contains the relevant parts of the referenced DD specifications that were used as foundation for the **BPMN DI** model and schema. The provided DD contains two main parts: the Diagram Commons (DC) and the Diagram Interchange (DI). The DC defines common types like bounds and fonts, while the DI provides a framework for defining domain specific diagram models. As a domain specific DI, **BPMN DI** defines a few new meta-model classes that derive from the abstract classes from DI.

The focus of **BPMN DI** is the interchange of laid out shapes and edges that constitute a **BPMN** diagram. Each shape and edge references a particular **BPMN** model element. The referenced **BPMN** model elements are all part of the actual **BPMN** model. As such, **BPMN DI** is meant to only contain information that is neither present, nor derivable, from the **BPMN** model whenever possible. Simply put, to render a **BPMN** diagram both the **BPMN DI** instance(s) and the referenced **BPMN** model are REQUIRED.

From the **BPMN DI** perspective, a **BPMN** diagram is a particular snapshot of a **BPMN** model at a certain point in time. Multiple **BPMN** diagrams can be exchanged referencing model elements from the same **BPMN** model. Each diagram may provide an incomplete or partial depiction of the content of the **BPMN** model. **BPMN DI** does not ascertain that the **BPMN** diagram is syntactically or semantically correct.

As described in Clause 15, a **BPMN** model package consists of one or more files. Each file may contain any number of **BPMN** diagrams. The exporting tool is free to decide how many diagrams are exported and the importing tool is free to decide if and how to present the contained diagrams to the user.
12.1.3 How to Read this Clause

The normative BPMN 2.0 Diagram Interchange (BPMN DI) specification has three parts. Sub clause 12.2 defines BPMN DI; an instance of the DI meta-model provided at Annex B. Sub clause 12.3 provides a library of the BPMN element depictions and an unambiguous resolution between a referenced BPMN model element and its depiction. Finally, sub clause 12.4 provides examples to support the interpretation of the specification. Some BPMN diagram depictions along with their XML BPMN DI serializations are provided.

12.2 BPMN Diagram Interchange (DI) Meta-model

12.2.1 Overview

The BPMN DI is an instance of the DI meta-model provided at Annex B. The basic concept of BPMN DI, as with DI in general, is that serializing a diagram [BPMNDiagram] for interchange requires the specification of a collection of shapes [BPMNShape] and edges [BPMNEdge] on a plane [BPMNPlane].

BPMNPlane, BPMNShape, and BPMNEdge MUST reference exactly one abstract syntax BPMN element from the BPMN model using the bpmnElement attribute. The only exception is for a Data Association connected to a Sequence Flow (See Figure 10.68). This is a visual short cut that actually normalizes two Data Associations within the BPMN model. In this case, the resolution is made from the BPMN DI attributes rather than the abstract syntax reference [bpmnElement] (See Table 12.35).

The BPMN DI classes only define the visual properties used for depiction. All other properties that are REQUIRED for the unambiguous depiction of the BPMN element are derived from the referenced bpmnElement.

Multiple depictions of a specific BPMN element in a single diagram is NOT allowed, except for Participants in a choreography (i.e., Participant Bands). For example, it is not allowed to depict a Task twice in the same diagram, but it is allowed to depict the same Task in two different diagrams.

BPMN diagrams may be an incomplete or partial depiction of the content of the BPMN model. Some BPMN elements from a BPMN model may not be present in any of the diagram instances being interchanged.

BPMN DI does not provide for any containment concept. The BPMNPlane is an ordered collection of mixed BPMNShape(s) and BPMNEdge(s). The order of the BPMNShape(s) and BPMNEdge(s) inside a BPMNPlane determines their Z-order (i.e., what is in front of what). BPMNShape(s) and BPMNEdge(s) that are meant to be depicted “on top” of other BPMNShape(s) and BPMNEdge(s) MUST appear after them in the BPMNPlane. Therefore, the exporting tool MUST order all BPMNShape(s) and BPMNEdge(s) such that the desired depiction can be rendered.

12.2.2 Abstract Syntax

This sub clause introduces the Abstract Syntax of BPMN DI. BPMN DI is an instance of the DI meta-model provided at Annex B.
Figure 12.1 – BPMN Diagram

Figure 12.2 – BPMN Plane

Figure 12.3 – BPMN Shape
## 12.2.3 Classifier Descriptions

### 12.2.3.1 BPMNDiagram [Class]

BPMNDiagram is a kind of diagram that depicts all or part of a BPMN model.

**Description**

BPMNDiagram represents a depiction of all or part of a BPMN model. It specializes DI::Diagram and redefines the root element (the top most diagram element) to be of type BPMNPlane. A BPMN diagram can also own a collection of BPMNStyle elements that are referenced by BPMNLabel elements in the diagram. These style elements represent the unique appearance styles used in the diagram.

**Abstract Syntax**
- Figure 12.1 - BPMN Diagram
Generalizations

- DI::Diagram

Associations

- + plane : BPMNPlane [1] {redefines rootElement}
  a BPMN plane element that is the container of all diagram elements in this diagram.

- + labelStyle : BPMNLabelStyle [*] {subsets style}
  a collection of BPMN label styles that are owned by the diagram and referenced by label elements.

Table 12.1 – BPMNDiagram XML schema

```xml
<xs:complexType name="BPMNDiagram">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="di:Diagram">
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element ref="bpmndi:BPMNPlane"/>
        <xs:element ref="bpmndi:BPMNLabelStyle" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xs:sequence>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
```

12.2.3.2 BPMNPlane [Class]

A BPMNPlane is the BPMNDiagram container of BPMNShape and BPMNEdge.

Description

A BPMNPlane specializes DI::Plane and redefines its model element reference to be of type (BPMN) BaseElement. A BPMNPlane can only reference a BaseElement of the types: Process, SubProcess, AdHocSubProcess, Transaction, Collaboration, Choreography or SubChoreography.

BPMNPlane element is always owned by a BPMNDiagram and represents the root diagram element of that diagram. The plane represents a 2 dimensional surface with an origin at (0, 0) along the x and y axes with increasing coordinates to the right and bottom. Only positive coordinates are allowed for diagram elements that are nested in a BPMNPlane. This means that the union of all the nested elements’ bounds is deemed to be located at the plane’s origin point.

Abstract Syntax

- Figure 12.1 - BPMN Diagram
- Figure 12.2 - BPMN Plane

Generalizations

- DI::Plane
Associations

- + bpmnElement : BaseElement [0..1] {redefines modelElement}

  a reference to either a Process, SubProcess, AdHocSubProcess, Transaction, Collaboration, Choreography or SubChoreography in a BPMN model.

Table 12.2 – BPMNPlane XML schema

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="BPMNPlane">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="di:Plane">
      <xsd:attribute name="bpmnElement" type="xsd:QName"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

12.2.3.3 BPMNShape [Class]

BPMNShape is a kind of shape that can depict a BPMN model element.

Description

BPMNShape represents a depiction of a (typically a node) BPMN model element. It specializes DI::LabeledShape and redefines its model element reference to be of type (BPMN) BaseElement, allowing it to reference an element from a BPMN model.

BPMNShape also contains an optional label of type BPMNLabel that can be nested in the shape when it has a visible textual label with its own bounding box.

The shape also contains a number of normative notational options that can be specified for different types of BPMN elements depicted by the shape. Those options, each represented by a separate property, and described below, allow for recording the specific notational style desired for the shape.

All BPMNShape elements are owned directly by a BPMNPlane (that is the root element in a BPMNDiagram), i.e., shapes are not nested within each other in the BPMN DI model although they may appear that way when depicted. The bounds of a BPMNShape are always relative to that plane’s origin point and are REQUIRED to be positive coordinates. Note that the bounds’ x and y coordinates are the position of the upper left corner of the shape (relative to the upper left corner of the plane).

Abstract Syntax

- Figure 12.3 - BPMN Shape
- Figure 12.4 - BPMN Edge

Generalizations

- DI::LabeledShape
 Attributes

- + isHorizontal : Boolean [0..1]
  
an optional attribute that should be used only for Pools and Lanes. It determines if it should be depicted
  horizontally (true) or vertically (false).

- + isExpanded : Boolean [0..1]
  
an optional attribute that should be used only for SubProcess, AdHocSubProcess, Transaction,
  SubChoreographies, CallActivities, and CallChoreographies. It determines if it should be depicted expanded
  (true) or collapsed (false).

- + isMarkerVisible : Boolean [0..1]
  
an optional attribute that should be used only for Exclusive Gateway. It determines if the marker should be
  depicted on the shape (true) or not (false).

- + participantBandKind : ParticipantBandKind [0..1]
  
an optional attribute that should only be used for Participant Bands. If this attribute is present, it means that
  the participant should be depicted as a Participant Band instead of as a Pool.

- + isMessageVisible : Boolean [0..1]
  
an optional attribute that should only be used for Participant Bands. It determines if an envelope decorator
  should be depicted linked to the Participant Band.

- + choreographyActivityShape : BPMNShape [0..1]
  
an optional attribute that should only be used for Participant Bands. It is REQUIRED for a BPMNShape
  depicting a Participant Band. This is REQUIRED in order to relate the Participant Band to the BPMNShape
  depicting the Choreography Activity that this Participant Band is related to.

 Associations

- + bpmnElement : BaseElement [0..1] {redefines modelElement}
  
a reference to a BPMN node element that this shape depicts. Note that although optional a bpmnElement
  must be provided for a BPMNShape.

- + label : BPMNLabel [0..1] {subsets ownedLabel}
  
an optional label that is nested when the shape has a visible text label with its own bounding box.
12.2.3.4 ParticipantBandKind [Enumeration]

ParticipantBandKind defines the type of Participant Band to depict.

Description

Participant bands can be depicted in 3 ways:

1. a top band is rectangular with rounded corners at the top
2. a middle band is rectangular
3. a bottom band is rectangular with rounded corners at the bottom

Participant bands can be depicted in 2 shadings:

1. initiating (the band should not be shaded)
2. non_initiating (the band should be shaded)

Abstract Syntax

- Figure 12.3 - BPMN Shape

Literals

- top_initiating - the band should be depicted as a non shaded top band
- middle_initiating - the band should be depicted as a non shaded middle band
- bottom_initiating - the band should be depicted as a non shaded bottom band
- top_non_initiating - the band should be depicted as a shaded top band
- middle_non_initiating - the band should be depicted as a shaded middle band
- bottom_non_initiating - the band should be depicted as a shaded bottom band
12.2.3.5 BPMNEdge [Class]

BPMNEdge is a kind of edge that can depict a relationship between two BPMN model elements.

Description

BPMNEdge represents a depiction of a relationship between two (source and target) BPMN model elements. It specializes DI::LabeledEdge and redefines its model element reference to be of type (BPMN) BaseElement, allowing it to reference a relationship element from a BPMN model.

BPMNEdge also redefines its source and target references to be of type DiagramElement (either BPMNShape or BPMNEdge).

The source or target definition should only be present if the edge is depicted between a different source or target than the one referenced by the BPMN model element of the BPMNEdge. Only the different source or target is REQUIRED. Both attributes should be present only if both are different. This is the case, for instance, if a Message Flow target is not depicted in the current diagram because it is inside a black box Pool. The Message Flow could then define its target as being the BPMNShape depicting the Pool to connect it to the boundary of that black box Pool.

BPMNEdge also contains an optional label of type BPMNLabel that can be nested in the edge when it has a visible textual label with its own bounding box.

All BPMNEdge elements are owned directly by a BPMNPlane (that is the root element in a BPMNDiagram). The waypoints of BPMNEdge are always relative to that plane’s origin point and are REQUIRED to be positive coordinates.

Abstract Syntax

- Figure 12.4 - BPMN Edge

Generalizations

- DI::LabeledEdge

Associations

- + label : BPMNLabel [0..1] {subsets ownedLabel}
  an optional label that is nested when the edge has a visible text label with its own bounding box.

- + bpmnElement : BaseElement [0..1] {redefines modelElement}
  a reference to a connecting BPMN element that this edge depicts. Note that this reference is only optional for the specific case of a Data Association connected to a Sequence Flow; in all other cases a referenced element must be provided.

- + sourceElement : DiagramElement [0..1] {redefines source}
  an optional reference to the edge’s source element if it is different from the source inferred from the bpmnElement association.

- + targetElement : DiagramElement [0..1] {redefines target}
  an optional reference to the edge’s target element if it is different from the target inferred from the bpmnElement association.

- messageVisibleKind : MessageVisibleKind [0..1]
  an optional attribute that should be used only for Message Flow. It determines if an envelope decorator should be depicted and the kind of envelope to be depicted.
12.2.3.6 MessageVisibleKind [Enumeration]

MessageVisibleKind defines the type of envelope that is visible.

Description

MessageVisibleKind is applicable only to Participant Band and Message Flow.

For Message Flow, the envelope should be positioned in the middle of the edge.

For Participant Band, the envelope should be positioned over (for top band) or under (for bottom band) and connected to the band using an association. Note that only Choreography Task Participant Bands are allowed to show the envelope. Middle bands being only used for a SubChoreography can thus not have envelope showing.

Abstract Syntax

- Figure 12.3 - BPMN Shape

Literal

- initiating - The envelope should not be shaded.
- non_iniritating - The envelope should be shaded.

12.2.3.7 BPMNLabel [Class]

BPMNLabel is a kind of label that depicts textual info about a BPMN element.

Description

BPMNLabel represents a depiction of some textual information about a BPMN element. It specializes DI::Label and redefines its style reference to be of type BPMNLabelStyle, which contains information about the appearance of the label (e.g., the chosen font). The referenced style is owned by the diagram that nests the label.

A BPMN label is not a top-level element but is always nested inside either a BPMNShape or a BPMNEdge. It does not have its own reference to a BPMN element but rather inherits that reference (if any) from its parent shape or edge. The textual info depicted by the label is derived from that referenced BPMN element.
The bounds of BPMNLabel are always relative to the containing plane’s origin point. Note that the bounds’ x and y coordinates are the position of the upper left corner of the label (relative to the upper left corner of the plane).

Abstract Syntax

- Figure 12.3 - BPMN Shape
- Figure 12.4 - BPMN Edge
- Figure 12.5 - BPMN Label

Generalizations

- DI::Label

Associations

- + labelStyle : BPMNLabelStyle [0..1] {redefines style}
  an optional reference to a label style (owned by the diagram) that gives the appearance options for the label. If not specified, the style of the label can be assumed by a tool.

Table 12.5 – BPMNLabel XML schema

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="BPMNLabel">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="di:Label">
      <xsd:attribute name="labelStyle" type="xsd:QName" />
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

12.2.3.8 BPMNLabelStyle [Class]

BPMNLabelStyle is a kind of style that gives the appearance options for a BPMNLabel.

Description

BPMNLabelStyle represents the appearance options for elements of type BPMNLabel. It specializes DI::Style and contains a description of a font that is used in depicting a BPMNLabel. One or more labels may reference the same BPMNLabelStyle element, which must be owned by a BPMNDiagram.

Abstract Syntax

- Figure 12.1 - BPMN Diagram
- Figure 12.5 - BPMN Label

Generalizations

- DI::Style

Attributes

- + font : Font[1] - a font object that describes the properties of the font used for depicting the labels that reference this style.
12.2.4 Complete BPMN DI XML Schema

Table 12.6 – BPMNLabelStyle XML schema

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="BPMNLabelStyle">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="di:Style">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="dc:Font"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Table 12.7 – Complete BPMN DI XML schema

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="BPMNDiagram">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="di:Diagram">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="bpmndi:BPMNPlane"/>
        <xsd:element ref="bpmndi:BPMNLabelStyle" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="BPMNLabelStyle">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="di:Style">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="dc:Font"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
Table 12.7 – Complete BPMN DI XML schema

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="BPMNPlane">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="di:Plane">
            <xsd:attribute name="bpmnElement" type="xsd:QName" />
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

<xsd:complexType name="BPMNEdge">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="di:LabeledEdge">
            <xsd:sequence>
                <xsd:element ref="bpmndi:BPMNLabel" minOccurs="0" />
            </xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:attribute name="bpmnElement" type="xsd:QName" />
            <xsd:attribute name="sourceElement" type="xsd:QName" />
            <xsd:attribute name="targetElement" type="xsd:QName" />
            <xsd:attribute name="messageVisibleKind" type="bpmndi:MessageVisibleKind" />
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

<xsd:complexType name="BPMNShape">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="di:LabeledShape">
            <xsd:sequence>
                <xsd:element ref="bpmndi:BPMNLabel" minOccurs="0" />
            </xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:attribute name="bpmnElement" type="xsd:QName" />
            <xsd:attribute name="isHorizontal" type="xsd:boolean" />
            <xsd:attribute name="isExpanded" type="xsd:boolean" />
            <xsd:attribute name="isMarkerVisible" type="xsd:boolean" />
            <xsd:attribute name="isMessageVisible" type="xsd:boolean" />
            <xsd:attribute name="participantBandKind" type="bpmndi:ParticipantBandKind" />
            <xsd:attribute name="choreographyActivityShape" type="xsd:QName" />
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
### Table 12.7 – Complete BPMN DI XML schema

```xml
  <xsd:complexType name="BPMNLabel">
    <xsd:complexContent>
      <xsd:extension base="di:Label">
        <xsd:attribute name="labelStyle" type="xsd:QName" />
      </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
  </xsd:complexType>

  <xsd:complexType name="BPMNLabelStyle">
    <xsd:complexContent>
      <xsd:extension base="di:Style">
        <xsd:sequence>
          <xsd:element ref="dc:Font" />
        </xsd:sequence>
      </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
  </xsd:complexType>

  <xsd:simpleType name="ParticipantBandKind">
    <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
      <xsd:enumeration value="top_initiating" />
      <xsd:enumeration value="middle_initiating" />
      <xsd:enumeration value="bottom_initiating" />
      <xsd:enumeration value="top_non_initiating" />
      <xsd:enumeration value="middle_non_initiating" />
      <xsd:enumeration value="bottom_non_initiating" />
    </xsd:restriction>
  </xsd:simpleType>

  <xsd:simpleType name="MessageVisibleKind">
    <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
      <xsd:enumeration value="initiating" />
      <xsd:enumeration value="non_initiating" />
    </xsd:restriction>
  </xsd:simpleType>
</xsd:schema>
```

### 12.3 Notational Depiction Library and Abstract Element Resolutions

As a notation, BPMN specifies the depiction for each of the BPMN elements.

Serializing a BPMN diagram for interchange requires the specification of a collection of BPMNShape(s) (see page 372) and BPMNEdge(s) (see page 375) on the BPMNPlane (see page 371) of the BPMNDiagram (see page 370). The BPMNShape(s) and BPMNEdge(s) attributes must be populated in such a way as to allow the unambiguous rendering of the BPMN diagram by the receiving party. More specifically, the BPMNShape(s) and BPMNEdge(s) must reference BPMN model element [bpmnElement]. If no bpmnElement is referenced or if the reference is invalid, it is expected that...
this shape or edge should not be depicted. The only exception is for a Data Association connected to a Sequence Flow (See Figure 10.68). This is a visual short cut that actually normalizes two Data Associations within the BPMN model. In this case, the resolution is made from the BPMN DI attributes rather than the abstract syntax reference [bpmnElement] (See Table 12.35 - Depiction Resolution for Connecting Objects).

When rendering a BPMN diagram, the correct depiction of a BPMNShape or BPMNEdge depends mainly on the referenced BPMN model element [bpmnElement] and its particular attributes and/or references.

The purpose of this sub clause is to: provide a library of the BPMN element depictions, and to provide an unambiguous resolution between the referenced BPMN model element [bpmnElement], BPMNShape or BPMNEdge and their depiction. Depiction resolution tables are provided below for both BPMNShape (sub clause 12.3.2) and BPMNEdge (sub clause 12.3.3).

**12.3.1 Labels**

Both BPMNShape and BPMN Edge may have labels (e.g., its name) placed inside the shape/edge, or above or below the shape/edge, in any direction or location, depending on the preference of the modeler or modeling tool vendor.

Labels are optional for BPMNShape and BPMNEdge. When there is a label, the position of the label is specified by the bounds of the BPMNLabel of the BPMNShape or BPMNEdge. Simply put, label visibility is defined by the presence of the BPMNLabel element. The bounds of the BPMNLabel are optional and always relative to the containing BPMNPlane’s origin point (see page 376). The depiction resolution tables provided below exemplify default label positions for BPMNShape kinds (sub clause 12.3.2) and BPMNEdge kinds (sub clause 12.3.3) if no BPMNLabel bounds are provided.

The text of the label to be rendered is obtained by resolving the name attribute of the referenced BPMN model element [bpmnElement] from the BPMNShape or BPMNEdge. In the particular case when the referenced BPMN model element [bpmnElement] is a DataObjectReference, the text of the label to be rendered is obtained by concatenating the name attribute of the referenced BPMN model element [bpmnElement] and the name attribute of the dataState attribute of this DataObjectReference (see Figure 12.6 - Depicting a Label for a DataObjectReference with its state).

![Label](State)

**Figure 12.6 – Depicting a Label for a DataObjectReference with its state**

The properties of the font to be used for rendering the label are optional and provided by the labelStyle of the BPMNLabel. If not provided, the tool should use its default style to depict the label.

**12.3.2 BPMNShape**

**Markers for Activities**

Various BPMN Activities can be decorated with markers at the bottom center of the shape.

Loop Characteristic markers may need to be rendered when the referenced BPMN model element [bpmnElement] of a BPMNShape is a Task, ServiceTask, SendTask, ReceiveTask, UserTask, ManualTask, BusinessRuleTask, ScriptTask, SubProcess, AdHocSubProcess, Transaction or CallActivity. Note that Loop Characteristic Markers (Loop, Multi-Instance
- Parallel, and Multi-Instance - Sequential) are mutually exclusive markers. That is, only one of them can be present on a single shape (see Table 10.8). Note that the patterns of Markers depicted in Table 10.8 also apply to Transaction and Call Activity which have different border depictions (i.e., double border or thick border).

A Compensation marker may need to be rendered when the referenced BPMN model element [bpmnElement] of a BPMNShape is a Task, ServiceTask, SendTask, ReceiveTask, UserTask, ManualTask, BusinessRuleTask, ScriptTask, SubProcess, AdHocSubProcess, Transaction or CallActivity (see Table 12.8).

In the case of expandable kind of shapes, the markers (Compensation or Loop Characteristic) are placed to the left of the + on the shape.

The Compensation marker may be combined with a Loop Characteristic Marker. All the markers that are present must be grouped and the whole group centered to the bottom of the shape (see Figure 12.7).

Note that in the case where the referenced BPMN model element [bpmnElement] of a BPMNShape is an AdHocSubProcess, the shape has its tilde marker to the right of the + (See page 386).

**Table 12.8- Depiction Resolution for Loop Compensation Marker**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Loop Characteristic Marker:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Standard Loop</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>bpmnElement: [Task, ServiceTask, SendTask, ReceiveTask, UserTask, ManualTask, BusinessRuleTask, ScriptTask, SubProcess, AdHocSubProcess, Transaction or CallActivity] where loopCharacteristics is of type StandardLoopCharacteristics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© ISO/IEC 2013 - All rights reserved
Table 12.8 - Depiction Resolution for Loop Compensation Marker

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Loop Characteristic Marker:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multi-Instance - Parallel</td>
<td>![Diagram]</td>
<td>[Task, ServiceTask, SendTask, ReceiveTask, UserTask, ManualTask, BusinessRuleTask, ScriptTask, SubProcess, AdHocSubProcess, Transaction or CallActivity] where loopCharacteristics is of type MultipleLoopCharacteristics with attribute isSequential to false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-Instance - Sequential</td>
<td>![Diagram]</td>
<td>[Task, ServiceTask, SendTask, ReceiveTask, UserTask, ManualTask, BusinessRuleTask, ScriptTask, SubProcess, AdHocSubProcess, Transaction or CallActivity] where loopCharacteristics is of type MultipleLoopCharacteristics with attribute isSequential to true.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 12.8 – Depiction Resolution for Compensation Marker

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compensation Marker:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
<th>BPMNShape Attributes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compensation</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Label" /> <img src="image2" alt="Label" /> <img src="image3" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>[Task, ServiceTask, SendTask, ReceiveTask, UserTask, ManualTask, BusinessRuleTask, ScriptTask, SubProcess, AdHocSubProcess, Transaction or CallActivity] where isForCompensation is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 12.7 – Combined Compensation and Loop Characteristic Marker Example

Tasks [BPMNShape]

There are different types of Tasks identified within BPMN. The specific Task type depiction is obtained by placing a Task type maker in the upper left corner of the Task shape. A Task that is no further specified is called an Abstract Task.

Tasks (Abstract, Service, Send, Receive, User, Manual, Business Rule or Script) can also have Compensation and/or Loop Characteristic markers at the bottom center of the shape as defined above (see page 381).
Table 12.9 – Depiction Resolution for Tasks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
<th>bpmnElement:</th>
<th>BPMNShape Attributes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abstract Task</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Task</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Task</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ServiceTask</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send Task</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SendTask</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receive Task</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ReceiveTask</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Task</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>UserTask</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Task</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ManualTask</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Rule Task</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>BusinessRuleTask</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Script Task</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ScriptTask</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Collapsed Sub-Processes [BPMNShape]

Collapsed Sub-Processes can also have Compensation and/or Loop Characteristic markers at the bottom center of the shape as defined above (see page 381).

Table 12.10 – Depiction Resolution for Collapsed Sub-Processes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Process -</td>
<td></td>
<td>bpmnElement: SubProcess where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collapsed</td>
<td></td>
<td>triggeredByEvent is false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Attributes: None or isExpanded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>is false.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Expanded Sub-Processes [BPMNShape]

Expanded Sub-Processes can also have Compensation and/or Loop Characteristic markers at the bottom center of the shape as defined above (see page 381).

Table 12.11 – Depiction Resolution for Expanded Sub-Processes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Process -</td>
<td></td>
<td>bpmnElement: SubProcess where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expanded</td>
<td></td>
<td>triggeredByEvent is false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Attributes: isExpanded is true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Collapsed Ad Hoc Sub-Processes [BPMNShape]

Collapsed Ad Hoc Sub-Processes can also have a Compensation marker at the bottom center of the shape as defined above (see page 381).
Expanded Ad Hoc Sub-Processes [BPMNShape]

Expanded Ad Hoc Sub-Processes can also have a Compensation marker at the bottom center of the shape as defined above (see page 381).

Table 12.12 – Depiction Resolution for Collapsed Ad Hoc Sub-Processes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ad Hoc Sub-Process -</td>
<td></td>
<td>bpmnElement: BPMNShape Attributes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collapsed</td>
<td><img src="~" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>AdHocSubProcess None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 12.13 – Depiction Resolution for Expanded Ad Hoc Sub-Processes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ad Hoc Sub-Process -</td>
<td></td>
<td>bpmnElement: BPMNShape Attributes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expanded</td>
<td><img src="~" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>AdHocSubProcess None or isExpanded is true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Collapsed Transactions [BPMNShape]

Collapsed Transactions can also have Compensation and/or Loop Characteristic markers at the bottom center of the shape as defined above (see page 381).

Table 12.14 – Depiction Resolution for Collapsed Transactions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transaction -</td>
<td></td>
<td>bpmnElement: BPMNShape Attributes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collapsed</td>
<td><img src="~" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>Transaction None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expanded Transactions [BPMNShape]

Expanded Transactions can also have Compensation and/or Loop Characteristic markers at the bottom center of the shape as defined above (see page 381).

Table 12.15 – Depiction Resolution for Tasks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transaction - Expanded</td>
<td></td>
<td>bpmnElement: Transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>Attributes: None or isExpanded is true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Collapsed Event Sub-Processes [BPMNShape]

Table 12.16 – Depiction Resolution for Collapsed Event Sub-Processes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting Message - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has one EventDefinition of type MessageEventDefinition and isInterrupting is false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Attributes: None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Message - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has one EventDefinition of type MessageEventDefinition and isInterrupting is true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Attributes: None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Timer - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has one EventDefinition of type TimerEventDefinition and isInterrupting is false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Attributes: None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 12.16 – Depiction Resolution for Collapsed Event Sub-Processes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sub-Process Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Depiction</th>
<th>None or isExpanded is false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Timer - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has one EventDefinition of type TimerEventDefinition and isInterrupting is true.</td>
<td><img src="Image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Conditional - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has one EventDefinition of type ConditionalEventDefinition and isInterrupting is false.</td>
<td><img src="Image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Conditional - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has one EventDefinition of type ConditionalEventDefinition and isInterrupting is true.</td>
<td><img src="Image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Signal - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has one EventDefinition of type SignalEventDefinition and isInterrupting is false.</td>
<td><img src="Image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Signal - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has one EventDefinition of type SignalEventDefinition and isInterrupting is true.</td>
<td><img src="Image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Multiple - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has multiple EventDefinitions and isInterrupting is false.</td>
<td><img src="Image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Multiple - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has multiple EventDefinitions and isInterrupting is true.</td>
<td><img src="Image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>False</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 12.16 – Depiction Resolution for Collapsed Event Sub-Processes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>SubProcess Description</th>
<th>None or isExpanded is false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Parallel Multiple - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has multiple EventDefinitions and isInterrupting is false and isParallelMultiple is true.</td>
<td>None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Parallel Multiple - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has multiple EventDefinitions and isInterrupting is true and isParallelMultiple is true.</td>
<td>None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Escalation - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has one EventDefinition of type EscalationEventDefinition and isInterrupting is false.</td>
<td>None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Escalation Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has one EventDefinition of type EscalationEventDefinition and isInterrupting is true.</td>
<td>None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Error - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has one EventDefinition of type ErrorEventDefinition and isInterrupting is true.</td>
<td>None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Compensation - Event Sub-Process - Collapsed</td>
<td>SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true and the one-and-only start event has one EventDefinition of type CompensationEventDefinition and isInterrupting is true.</td>
<td>None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expanded Event Sub-Processes [BPMNShape]

Table 12.17 – Depiction Resolution for Expanded Event Sub-Processes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Event Sub-Process - Expanded</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>bpmnElement: SubProcess where triggeredByEvent is true. Attributes: isExpanded is true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Call Activities (Calling a Global Task) [BPMNShape]

A Call Activity (Calling a Global Task) must display the Task type marker of the Global Task it calls.

Call Activities (Calling a Global Task) can also have Compensation and/or Loop Characteristic markers at the bottom center of the shape as defined above (see page 381).

Table 12.18 – Depiction Resolution for Call Activities (Calling a Global Task)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Call Activity</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>bpmnElement: CallActivity where calledElement is unspecified or of type GlobalTask. Attributes: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Call Activity</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>CallActivity where calledElement is of type GlobalUserTask. Attributes: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Call Activity</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>CallActivity where calledElement is of type GlobalManualTask. Attributes: None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Rule Call Activity</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>CallActivity where calledElement is of type GlobalBusinessRuleTask. Attributes: None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Collapsed Call Activities (Calling a Process) [BPMNShape]

Table 12.19 – Depiction Resolution for Collapsed Call Activities (Calling a Process)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind: Call Activity - Collapsed</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>CallActivity where calledElement is of type Process.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Expanded Call Activities (Calling a Process) [BPMNShape]

Table 12.20 – Depiction Resolution for Expanded Call Activities (Calling a Process)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind: Call Activity - Expanded</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>CallActivity where calledElement is of type Process.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Data [BPMNShape]

Data Inputs and Data Outputs rendering are optional and only allowed for Processes.
Table 12.21 – Depiction Resolution for Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
<th>bpmnElement:</th>
<th>BPMNShape Attributes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Data Object</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>DataObjectReference where dataObjectRef unspecified or is pointing to a DataObject where isCollection is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Object Collection</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>DataObjectReference where dataObjectRef is pointing to a DataObject where isCollection is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Input</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>DataInput where isCollection is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Input Collection</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>DataInput where isCollection is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Output</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>DataOutput where isCollection is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Output Collection</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>DataOutput where isCollection is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Store</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>DataStoreReference</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Events [BPMNShape]

Table 12.22 – Depiction Resolution for Events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
<th>BPMNShape Attributes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None Start Event</td>
<td><img src="link" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with no EventDefinition</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Message Start Event</td>
<td><img src="link" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with one EventDefinition of type MessageEventDefinition and isInterrupting is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Message Start Event</td>
<td><img src="link" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with one EventDefinition of type MessageEventDefinition and isInterrupting is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Timer Start Event</td>
<td><img src="link" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with one EventDefinition of type TimerEventDefinition and isInterrupting is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Timer Start Event</td>
<td><img src="link" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with one EventDefinition of type TimerEventDefinition and isInterrupting is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Conditional Start Event</td>
<td><img src="link" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with one EventDefinition of type ConditionalEventDefinition and isInterrupting is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Conditional Start Event</td>
<td><img src="link" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with one EventDefinition of type ConditionalEventDefinition and isInterrupting is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting Signal Start Event</td>
<td><img src="link" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent One EventDefinition of type SignalEventDefinition and isInterrupting is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Signal Start Event</td>
<td><img src="link" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with one EventDefinition of type SignalEventDefinition and isInterrupting is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 12.22 – Depiction Resolution for Events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Depiction</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>None</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting Multiple Start Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with more than one EventDefinition, parallelMultiple is false and isInterrupting is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting Multiple Start Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with more than one EventDefinition, parallelMultiple is false and isInterrupting is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Parallel Multiple Start Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with more than one EventDefinition, parallelMultiple is true and isInterrupting is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Parallel Multiple Start Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with more than one EventDefinition, parallelMultiple is true and isInterrupting is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Escalation Start Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with one EventDefinition of type EscalationEventDefinition and isInterrupting is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Escalation Start Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with one EventDefinition of type EscalationEventDefinition and isInterrupting is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Error Start Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with one EventDefinition of type ErrorEventDefinition.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Compensation Start Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>StartEvent with one EventDefinition of type CompensationEventDefinition.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - None Intermediate Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>IntermediateThrowEvent with no EventDefinition.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catch - Message Intermediate Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>IntermediateCatchEvent with one EventDefinition of type MessageEventDefinition.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Event Definition</td>
<td>Cancel Activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Boundary - Catch - Message Intermediate Event</td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with one EventDefinition of type MessageEventDefinition and cancelActivity is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Boundary - Catch - Message Intermediate Event</td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with one EventDefinition of type MessageEventDefinition and cancelActivity is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throw - Message Intermediate Event</td>
<td>IntermediateThrowEvent with one EventDefinition of type MessageEventDefinition.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timer Intermediate Event</td>
<td>IntermediateCatchEvent with one EventDefinition of type TimerEventDefinition.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Boundary - Timer Intermediate Event</td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with one EventDefinition of type TimerEventDefinition and cancelActivity is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting Boundary - Timer Intermediate Event</td>
<td>IntermediateCatchEvent with one EventDefinition of type TimerEventDefinition and cancelActivity is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional Intermediate Event</td>
<td>IntermediateCatchEvent with one EventDefinition of type ConditionalEventDefinition.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Boundary - Conditional Intermediate Event</td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with one EventDefinition of type ConditionalEventDefinition and cancelActivity is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Boundary - Conditional Intermediate Event</td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with one EventDefinition of type ConditionalEventDefinition and cancelActivity is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catch - Signal Intermediate Event</td>
<td>IntermediateCatchEvent with one EventDefinition of type MessageEventDefinition.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 12.22 – Depiction Resolution for Events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Type</th>
<th>Depiction</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>None</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Boundary - Catch - Signal Intermediate Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with one EventDefinition of type SignalEventDefinition and cancelActivity is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Boundary - Catch - Signal Intermediate Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with one EventDefinition of type SignalEventDefinition and cancelActivity is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Boundary - Throw - Signal Intermediate Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>IntermediateThrowEvent with one EventDefinition of type SignalEventDefinition.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catch - Multiple Intermediate Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>IntermediateCatchEvent with more than one EventDefinition and parallelMultiple is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Boundary - Catch - Multiple Intermediate Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with more than one EventDefinition, parallelMultiple is false and cancelActivity is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting Boundary - Catch - Multiple Intermediate Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with more than one EventDefinition, parallelMultiple is false and cancelActivity is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throw - Multiple Intermediate Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>IntermediateThrowEvent with more than one EventDefinition and parallelMultiple is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catch - Parallel Multiple Intermediate Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>IntermediateCatchEvent with more than one EventDefinition and parallelMultiple is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Boundary - Catch - Parallel Multiple Intermediate Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with more than one EventDefinition, parallelMultiple is true and cancelActivity is true.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting Boundary - Catch - Parallel Multiple Intermediate Event</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with more than one EventDefinition, parallelMultiple is true and cancelActivity is false.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table 12.22 – Depiction Resolution for Events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Resolution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Catch - Escalation Intermediate Event</td>
<td>IntermediateCatchEvent with one EventDefinition of type EscalationEventDefinition.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupting - Boundary - Catch - Escalation Intermediate Event</td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with one EventDefinition of type EscalationEventDefinition and cancelActivity is true.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-interrupting - Boundary - Catch - Escalation Intermediate Event</td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with one EventDefinition of type EscalationEventDefinition and cancelActivity is false.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throw - Escalation Intermediate Event</td>
<td>IntermediateThrowEvent with one EventDefinition of type EscalationEventDefinition.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boundary - Catch - Error Intermediate Event</td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with one EventDefinition of type ErrorEventDefinition</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boundary - Catch - Compensation Intermediate Event</td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with one EventDefinition of type CompensateEventDefinition</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throw - Compensation Intermediate Event</td>
<td>IntermediateThrowEvent with one EventDefinition of type CompensateEventDefinition</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catch - Link Intermediate Event</td>
<td>IntermediateCatchEvent with one EventDefinition of type LinkEventDefinition</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throw - Link Intermediate Event</td>
<td>IntermediateThrowEvent with one EventDefinition of type LinkEventDefinition</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boundary - Catch - Cancel Intermediate Event</td>
<td>BoundaryEvent with one EventDefinition of type CancelEventDefinition</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 12.22 – Depiction Resolution for Events

| None End Event | None End Event with no EventDefinition | None |
| Message End Event | EndEvent with one EventDefinition of type MessageEventDefinition | None |
| Signal End Event | EndEvent with one EventDefinition of type SignalEventDefinition | None |
| Multiple End Event | EndEvent with more than one EventDefinition | None |
| Escalation End Event | EndEvent with one EventDefinition of type EscalationEventDefinition | None |
| Error End Event | EndEvent with one EventDefinition of type ErrorEventDefinition | None |
| Compensation End Event | EndEvent with one EventDefinition of type CompensateEventDefinition | None |
| Cancel End Event | EndEvent with one EventDefinition of type CancelEventDefinition | None |
| Terminate End Event | EndEvent with one EventDefinition of type TerminateEventDefinition | None |
Table 12.23 – Depiction Resolution for Gateways

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bpmnElement: BPMNShape Attributes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exclusive Gateway - without Marker</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="graph" /></td>
<td>ExclusiveGateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exclusive Gateway - with Marker</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="graph" /></td>
<td>ExclusiveGateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inclusive Gateway</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="graph" /></td>
<td>InclusiveGateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallel Gateway</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="graph" /></td>
<td>ParallelGateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex Gateway</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="graph" /></td>
<td>ComplexGateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event-Based Gateway</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="graph" /></td>
<td>EventBasedGateway where instantiate is false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event-Based Gateway to Start a Process</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="graph" /></td>
<td>EventBasedGateway where instantiate is true and eventGatewayType is exclusive.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 12.23 – Depiction Resolution for Gateways

| Parallel Event-Based Gateway to Start a Process | EventBasedGateway where instantiate is true and eventGatewayType is parallel. |

Artifacts [BPMNShape]

Table 12.24 – Depiction Resolution for Artifacts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group</td>
<td>Group</td>
<td>bpmnElement: Group Attributes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text Annotation</td>
<td>Text Annotation</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lanes [BPMNShape]

Table 12.25 – Depiction Resolution for Lanes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal Lane</td>
<td>Lane</td>
<td>bpmnElement: Lane Attributes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertical Lane</td>
<td>Lane</td>
<td>isVertical is true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pools [BPMNShape]

Table 12.26 – Depiction Resolution for Pools

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
<th>bpmnElement:</th>
<th>BPMNShape Attributes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal Pool</td>
<td>![Label]</td>
<td>Participant where ParticipantMultiplicity is unspecified or set and its maximum attribute is 1.</td>
<td>None or isVertical is false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal Pool - with Multi Instance Participant</td>
<td><img src="III" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>Participant where ParticipantMultiplicity is set and its maximum attribute is &gt; 1.</td>
<td>None or isVertical is false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertical Pool</td>
<td>![Label]</td>
<td>Participant where ParticipantMultiplicity is unspecified or set and its maximum attribute is 1.</td>
<td>isVertical is true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertical Pool - with Multi Instance Participant</td>
<td><img src="III" alt="Label" /></td>
<td>Participant where ParticipantMultiplicity is set and its maximum attribute is &gt; 1.</td>
<td>isVertical is true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choreography Tasks [BPMNShape]

While the depictions provided in Table 12.27 - Depiction Resolution for Choreography Tasks contain Participant Bands, Participant Bands are separate shapes that need to be separately defined. Individual Participant Bands are rendered by separate BPMNShape(s), each Participant Band referencing the corresponding participant. See page 407.
### Collapsed Sub-Choreographies [BPMNShape]

While the depictions provided in Table 12.28 - Depiction Resolution for Collapsed Sub-Choreographies contain Participant Bands, Participant Bands are separate shapes that need to be separately defined. Individual Participant Bands are rendered by separate BPMNShape(s), each Participant Band referencing the corresponding participant (see page 407).
Table 12.28 – Depiction Resolution for Sub-Choreographies (Collapsed)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
<th>BPMNShape Attributes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Choreography - Collapsed</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>SubChoreography where loopType is None.</td>
<td>None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Choreography - Loop - Collapsed</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>SubChoreography where loopType is Standard.</td>
<td>None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Choreography - Sequential Multi Instance - Collapsed</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>SubChoreography where loopType is MultiInstanceSequential.</td>
<td>None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Choreography - Parallel Multi Instance - Collapsed</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>SubChoreography where loopType is MultiInstanceParallel.</td>
<td>None or isExpanded is false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Expanded Sub-Choreographies [BPMNShape]**

While the depiction provided in Table 12.29 - Depiction Resolution for Expanded Sub-Choreographies contains Participant Bands, Participant Bands are separate shapes that need to be separately defined. Individual Participant Bands are rendered by separate BPMNShape(s), each Participant Band referencing the corresponding participant (see page 407).

An expanded Sub Choreography has a loop type that is depicted exactly like the collapsed version in Table 12.28.
Call Choreographies (Calling a Global Choreography Task) [BPMNShape]

While the depictions provided in Table 12.30 - Depiction Resolution for Call Choreographies (Calling a Global Choreography Task) contain Participant Bands, Participant Bands are separate shapes that need to be separately defined. Individual Participant Bands are rendered by separate BPMNShape(s), each Participant Band referencing the corresponding participant (see page 407).

Table 12.29 – Depiction Resolution for Sub-Choreographies (Expanded)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Choreography - Expanded</td>
<td></td>
<td>bpmnElement: SubChoreography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Attributes: isExpanded is true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 12.30 – Depiction Resolution for Call Choreographies (Calling a Global Choreography Task)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Call Choreography Activity</td>
<td></td>
<td>bpmnElement: CallChoreography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calling a Global Choreography Task</td>
<td></td>
<td>Attributes: calledChoreographyRef is unspecified or of type GlobalChoreographyTask and loopType is None.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Choreography Activity</td>
<td></td>
<td>bpmnElement: CallChoreography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calling a Global Choreography Task - Loop</td>
<td></td>
<td>Attributes: calledChoreographyRef is of type GlobalChoreographyTask and loopType is Standard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Collapsed Call Choreographies (Calling a Choreography) [BPMNShape]

While the depictions provided in Table 12.31 contain Participant Bands, Participant Bands are separate shapes that need to be separately defined. Individual Participant Bands are rendered by separate BPMNShape(s), each Participant Band referencing the corresponding participant (see page 407).

Table 12.31 – Depiction Resolution for Collapsed Call Choreographies (Calling a Choreography)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind: Call Choreography Activity calling a Choreography</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
<th>BPMNShape Attributes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CallChoreography where calledChoreographyRef is of type Choreography and loopType is None.</td>
<td>None or isExpanded is false</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CallChoreography where calledChoreographyRef is of type Choreography and loopType is Standard.</td>
<td>None or isExpanded is false</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CallChoreography where calledChoreographyRef is of type Choreography and loopType is MultiInstanceSequential.</td>
<td>None or isExpanded is false</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expanded Call Choreographies (Calling a Choreography) [BPMNShape]

While the depiction provided in Table 12.32 contains Participant Bands, Participant Bands are separate shapes that need to be separately defined. Individual Participant Bands are rendered by separate BPMNShape(s), each Participant Band referencing the corresponding participant (see page 407).

An expanded Use Sub Choreography has a loop type that is depicted exactly like the collapsed version in Table 12.31.

Table 12.31 – Depiction Resolution for Collapsed Call Choreographies (Calling a Choreography)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind: Call Choreography Activity calling a Choreography - Parallel Multi Instance</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CallChoreography where calledChoreographyRef is of type Choreography and loopType is MultiInstanceParallel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>None or isExpanded is false.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 12.32 – Depiction Resolution for Expanded Call Choreographies (Calling a Choreography)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind: Call Choreography Activity calling a Choreography</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CallChoreography where calledChoreographyRef is of type Choreography.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>isExpanded is true.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choreography Participant Bands [BPMNShape]

Participant Bands (used in Choreography shapes) are separate shapes that need to be separately defined. Individual Participant Bands are rendered by separate BPMNShape. Each Participant Band referencing the corresponding participant.

Note that for Participant Bands with the envelope decorator, the envelope decorator should be depicted close to the band, vertically centered with the band, and linked to the band using a dotted line. The name of the message may be used as a label for the envelope decorator. BPMN DI does not provide an interchange of the bounds of the label of the envelope decorator.

The bounds of the BPMNShape representing the band do not include the envelope decorator. The envelope decorator is therefore outside of the BPMNShape bounds. BPMN DI does not provide an interchange of the bounds of the envelope decorator.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initiating Participant - Top</td>
<td>![Label Icon]</td>
<td>Participant where participantMultiplicity is unspecified or is set and its maximum attribute is 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiating Participant - Top with Decorator</td>
<td>![Label Icon]</td>
<td>Participant where participantMultiplicity is unspecified or is set and its maximum attribute is 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiating - Additional Participant</td>
<td>![Label Icon]</td>
<td>Participant where participantMultiplicity is unspecified or is set and its maximum attribute is 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiating Participant - Bottom</td>
<td>![Label Icon]</td>
<td>Participant where participantMultiplicity is unspecified or is set and its maximum attribute is 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiating Participant - Bottom with Decorator</td>
<td>![Label Icon]</td>
<td>Participant where participantMultiplicity is unspecified or is set and its maximum attribute is 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiating - Top - Multi-Instance Participant</td>
<td>![Label Icon]</td>
<td>Participant where participantMultiplicity is unspecified or is set and its maximum attribute is &gt; 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiating - Top - Multi-Instance Participant with Decorator</td>
<td>![Label Icon]</td>
<td>Participant where participantMultiplicity is unspecified or is set and its maximum attribute is &gt; 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiating - Additional Multi-Instance Participant</td>
<td>![Label Icon]</td>
<td>Participant where participantMultiplicity is unspecified or is set and its maximum attribute is &gt; 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Participant Representation</td>
<td>Participant Band Kind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiating - Bottom - Multi-Instance Participant</td>
<td>![Label][1]</td>
<td>participantBandKind is bottom_initiating and isMessageVisible is unspecified or false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-initiating where participantMultiplicity is unspecified or set and its maximum attribute is &gt; 1.</td>
<td>![Label][1]</td>
<td>participantBandKind is bottom_initiating and isMessageVisible is unspecified or false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiating - Bottom - Multi-Instance Participant with Decorator</td>
<td>![Label][1]</td>
<td>participantBandKind is bottom_initiating and isMessageVisible is unspecified or false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with Decorator where participantMultiplicity is unspecified or set and its maximum attribute is &gt; 1.</td>
<td>![Label][1]</td>
<td>participantBandKind is bottom_initiating and isMessageVisible is unspecified or false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non Initiating Participant - Top</td>
<td>![Label][1]</td>
<td>participantBandKind is top_non_initiating and isMessageVisible is unspecified or false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non Initiating Participant - Top with Decorator</td>
<td>![Label][1]</td>
<td>participantBandKind is top_non_initiating and isMessageVisible is unspecified or false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non Initiating - Additional Participant</td>
<td>![Label][1]</td>
<td>participantBandKind is middle_non_initiating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non Initiating Participant - Bottom</td>
<td>![Label][1]</td>
<td>participantBandKind is bottom_non_initiating and isMessageVisible is unspecified or false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non Initiating Participant - Bottom with Decorator</td>
<td>![Label][1]</td>
<td>participantBandKind is bottom_non_initiating and isMessageVisible is unspecified or false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non Initiating - Top - Multi-Instance Participant</td>
<td>![Label][1]</td>
<td>participantBandKind is top_non_initiating and isMessageVisible is unspecified or false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non Initiating - Top - Multi-Instance Participant with Decorator</td>
<td>![Label][1]</td>
<td>participantBandKind is top_non_initiating and isMessageVisible is unspecified or false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non Initiating - Additional Multi-Instance Participant</td>
<td>![Label][1]</td>
<td>participantBandKind is middle_non_initiating.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.3.3 BPMNEdge

Connecting Objects [BPMNEdge]

The target [targetElement] and source [sourceElement] of a BPMNEdge may be redefined when the depiction of the source or target of the edge is different than the target [targetRef] and source [sourceRef] of the referenced model element [bpmnElement] (e.g., Message flow finishing on the border of a black box Pool or a collapsed Sub-Process rather than the actual Flow Node within the Pool or Sub-Process). In such case, the targetElement and/or sourceElement of the BPMNEdge must point to the appropriate BPMNShape or BPMNEdge.
The source [sourceElement] and target [targetElement] of a BPMNEdge can never be a BPMNShape with participantBandKind set (i.e., only Choreography Activity can be source or target of the BPMNEdge not the Participant Bands).

Note that for Message Flow with an envelope decorator, the envelope decorator should be at the midpoint of the message flow. BPMN DI does not provide an interchange of the bounds of the envelope decorator.

The “diamond” at the source of the Conditional Sequence Flow should not be depicted when the source of a Conditional Sequence Flow is a Gateway. In other words, when the source of a Conditional Sequence Flow is a Gateway, the Conditional Sequence Flow looks like a Sequence Flow.

Even though DataInputAssociation(s) and DataOutputAssociation(s) (Directed Data Associations) always point to DataInput(s) or DataOutput(s) as sources or targets within the BPMN model, they are mostly depicted as starting or finishing on the border of a different depicted element and thus, the target [targetElement] or source [sourceElement] of the BPMNEdge must be specified.

Table 12.35 – Depiction Resolution for Connecting Objects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kind:</th>
<th>Depiction:</th>
<th>Specific Depiction Resolution:</th>
<th>bpmnElement:</th>
<th>BPMNShape Attributes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sequence Flow</td>
<td><img src="sequence-flow.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>SequenceFlow where default is false and conditionExpression is unspecified.</td>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional Sequence Flow</td>
<td><img src="condition-sequenc-flow.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>SequenceFlow where default is false and conditionExpression is specified (exception when source is a Gateway).</td>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Sequence Flow</td>
<td><img src="default-sequenc-flow.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>SequenceFlow where default is true and conditionExpression is unspecified.</td>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message Flow</td>
<td><img src="message-flow.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>MessageFlow messageVisibleKind is unspecified.</td>
<td></td>
<td>messageVisibleKind is unspecified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiating Message Flow with Decorator</td>
<td><img src="initiating-message-flow.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>MessageFlow messageVisibleKind is initiating.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Initiating Message Flow with Decorator</td>
<td><img src="non-initiating-message-flow.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>MessageFlow messageVisibleKind is non-initiating.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Association</td>
<td><img src="association.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>Association where associationDirection is none.</td>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directional Association</td>
<td><img src="directional-association.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td>Association where associationDirection is one.</td>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.4 Example(s)

This sub clause provides examples to support interpretation of the BPMN DI specification. Some BPMN diagram depictions along with their XML BPMN DI serializations are provided. The XML samples provided in this sub clause present only BPMN DI instances and omit the BPMN 2.0 abstract syntax.

For readability purposes, the bpmnElement that is referenced by the BPMNPlane, BPMNShape, and BPMNEdge use a representative string pattern. This string pattern is:

\[ \text{BPMNModelClassName}_\text{BPMNModelNameAttributeValue} \]

For example: “Task_Activity” for a Task named “Activity.”

In the provided XML serializations, the di namespace refers to the Diagram Interchange namespace defined in Annex B, and the dc namespace refers to the Diagram Common namespace also defined in Annex B.

### 12.4.1 Depicting Content in a Sub-Process

This sub clause shows various ways of depicting the content of a Sub-Process of the same BPMN model.

The BPMN model contains a process composed of a none start event (named “StartEvent”), a sub-process (named “SubProcess”) and a none end event (named “EndEvent”). There is a sequence flow (named “a”) between the start event (named “StartEvent”) and the sub-process (named “SubProcess”) and a sequence flow (named “d”) between the sub-process (named “SubProcess”) and the end event (named “EndEvent”).

The sub-process (named “SubProcess”) is composed of a none start event (named “SubProcessStart”), an abstract task (named “Activity”) and a none end event (named “SubProcessEnd”). There is a sequence flow (named “b”) between the start event (named “SubProcessStart”) and the task (named “Activity”) and a sequence flow (named “c”) between the task (named “Activity”) and the end event (named “SubProcessEnd”).

### Expanded Sub-Process

First, a BPMN diagram depicts the BPMN model with the expanded sub-process showing its content (see Figure 12.8). This leads to a BPMN DI serialization of a single diagram that depicts this process (see Table 12.37).
Figure 12.8 – Expanded Sub-Process Example

Table 12.36 - Expanded Sub-Process BPMN DI instance

```xml
<BPMNDiagram name=“Events Inside the Sub Process “ resolution=“72”>
  <BPMNPlane bpmnElement=“Process_Process”>
    <BPMNShape bpmnElement=“StartEvent_StartEvent”>
      <dc:Bounds height=“30.0” width=“30.0” x=“120.0” y=“225.0”/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNShape>
    <BPMNShape bpmnElement=“SubProcess_SubProcess” isExpanded=“true”>
      <dc:Bounds height=“168.0” width=“348.0” x=“192.0” y=“156.0”/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNShape>
    <BPMNShape bpmnElement=“StartEvent_SubProcessStart” id=“BorderStart”>
      <dc:Bounds height=“30.0” width=“30.0” x=“228.0” y=“225.0”/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNShape>
    <BPMNShape bpmnElement=“Task_Activity”>
      <dc:Bounds height=“68.0” width=“83.0” x=“324.0” y=“206.0”/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNShape>
    <BPMNShape bpmnElement=“EndEvent_SubProcessEnd”>
      <dc:Bounds height=“32.0” width=“32.0” x=“468.0” y=“224.0” id=“BorderEnd”/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNShape>
    <BPMNShape bpmnElement=“EndEvent_EndEvent”>
      <dc:Bounds height=“32.0” width=“32.0” x=“604.0” y=“224.0”/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNShape>
    <BPMNEdge bpmnElement=“SequenceFlow_a” targetElement=“BorderStart”>
      <di:waypoint x=“150.0” y=“240.0”/>
      <di:waypoint x=“192.0” y=“240.0”/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNEdge>
    <BPMNEdge bpmnElement=“SequenceFlow_b” sourceElement=“BorderStart”>
      <di:waypoint x=“258.0” y=“240.0”/>
      <di:waypoint x=“324.0” y=“240.0”/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNEdge>
  </BPMNPlane>
</BPMNDiagram>
```
Expanded Sub-Process with Start and End Events on Border

An alternative to depicting the same BPMN model of 12.4.1 would be to place the sub-process start and end events on the border of the sub-process (see Figure 12.9). In the BPMN DI serialization of this diagram (see Table 12.40), the target of the sequence flow named “a” and the source of the sequence flow named “d” are the start and end events on the boundary of the sub-process.

Compare the target of the sequence flow named “a” and the source of the sequence flow named “d” of Table 12.37 with that of Table 12.38.

Figure 12.9 – Start and End Events on the Border Example

Table 12.37 - Start and End Events on the Border BPMN DI instance

```xml
<BPMNDiagram name="StartAndEdnEventsOnTheBorder" resolution="72">
  <BPMNPlane bpmnElement="Process_Process">
    <BPMNShape bpmnElement="StartEvent_StartEvent">
      <dc:Bounds height="30.0" width="30.0" x="120.0" y="225.0"/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNShape>
    <BPMNShape bpmnElement="SubProcess_SubProcess" isExpanded="true">
      <dc:Bounds height="168.0" width="348.0" x="192.0" y="156.0"/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNShape>
    <BPMNShape bpmnElement="StartEvent_SubProcessStart">
      <dc:Bounds height="30.0" width="30.0" x="177.0" y="225.0"/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNShape>
  </BPMNPlane>
</BPMNDiagram>
```
Collapsed Sub-Process

Alternatively, one could depict the same BPMN model of 12.4.1 as two diagrams. A first diagram (Figure 12.10) depicts the process with the sub-process collapsed, while a second diagram (Figure 12.11) depicts the content of the sub-process.

![Collapsed Sub-Process](image-url)

**Figure 12.10 – Collapsed Sub-Process**
Figure 12.11 – Contents of Collapsed Sub-Process

Table 12.38- Collapsed Sub-Process BPMN DI instance

```xml
<BPMNDiagram name="Collapsed Sub-Process" resolution="72">
  <BPMNPlane bpmnElement="Process_Process">
    <BPMNShape bpmnElement="StartEvent_StartEvent">
      <dc:Bounds height="30.0" width="30.0" x="96.0" y="189.0"/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNShape>
    <BPMNShape bpmnElement="EndEvent_EndEvent">
      <dc:Bounds height="32.0" width="32.0" x="308.0" y="188.0"/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNShape>
    <BPMNShape bpmnElement="SubProcess_SubProcess" isExpanded="false">
      <dc:Bounds height="68.0" width="83.0" x="168.0" y="170.0"/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNShape>
    <BPMNEdge bpmnElement="SequenceFlow_a">
      <di:waypoint x="126.0" y="204.0"/>
      <di:waypoint x="168.0" y="204.0"/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNEdge>
    <BPMNEdge bpmnElement="SequenceFlow_d">
      <di:waypoint x="251.0" y="204.0"/>
      <di:waypoint x="308.0" y="204.0"/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNEdge>
  </BPMNPlane>
</BPMNDiagram>
```

Table 12.39- Sub-Process Content BPMN DI instance

```xml
<BPMNDiagram name="SubProcess" resolution="72">
  <BPMNPlane bpmnElement="SubProcess_SubProcess">
    <BPMNShape bpmnElement="StartEvent_SubProcessStart">
      <dc:Bounds height="30.0" width="30.0" x="208.0" y="219.0"/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNShape>
    <BPMNShape bpmnElement="Task_Activity">
      <dc:Bounds height="68.0" width="83.0" x="304.0" y="200.0"/>
      <BPMNLabel/>
    </BPMNShape>
  </BPMNPlane>
</BPMNDiagram>
```
12.4.2 Multiple Lanes and Nested Lanes

In this next example, a diagram depicting a BPMN Process is composed of a LaneSet that contains 2 lanes is presented. The second lane contains 2 sub lanes (See Figure 12.12).

![Nested Lanes Example](image_url)

**Figure 12.12 – Nested Lanes Example**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 12.40 – Multiple Lanes and Nested Lanes BPMN DI instance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;BPMNDiagram name=&quot;Lanes and Nested Lanes&quot; resolution=&quot;72&quot;&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;BPMNPlane bpmnElement=&quot;Process_LanesAndNestedLanes&quot;&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;BPMNShape bpmnElement=&quot;Lane_Lane1&quot; isHorizontal=&quot;true&quot;&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.4.3 Vertical Collaboration

In this example, a Collaboration between two Participants (Pool A and Pool B) is depicted. The first Participant is depicted with a white box Pool and the second Participant is depicted with a black box Pool. This diagram also depicts message flows that are decorated with message envelopes (See Figure 12.13).

Figure 12.13 – Vertical Collaboration Example

Table 12.41 – Vertical Collaboration BPMN DI instance

```xml
<BPMNDiagram name="Vertical Collaboration" resolution="72">
    <BPMNPlane bpmnElement="Collaboration_Verical_Collaboration">
        <BPMNShape bpmnElement="Participant_Pool_A" isHorizontal="false">
            <dc:Bounds height="258.0" width="336.0" x="96.0" y="276.0"/>
            <BPMNLabel/>
        </BPMNShape>
        <BPMNShape bpmnElement="Lane_Lane1" isHorizontal="false">
            <dc:Bounds height="228.0" width="168.0" x="96.0" y="306.0"/>
            <BPMNLabel/>
        </BPMNShape>
        <BPMNShape bpmnElement="Lane_Lane2" isHorizontal="true">
            <dc:Bounds height="162.0" width="498.0" x="87.0" y="288.0"/>
            <BPMNLabel/>
        </BPMNShape>
        <BPMNShape bpmnElement="Lane_Lane2_2" isHorizontal="true">
            <dc:Bounds height="78.0" width="474.0" x="111.0" y="372.0"/>
            <BPMNLabel/>
        </BPMNShape>
        <BPMNShape bpmnElement="Lane_Lane2_1" isHorizontal="true">
            <dc:Bounds height="84.0" width="474.0" x="111.0" y="288.0"/>
            <BPMNLabel/>
        </BPMNShape>
    </BPMNPlane>
</BPMNDiagram>
```
12.4.4 Conversation

The following diagram depicts a Collaboration between 3 Participants (Participants 1, 2, and 3) including two Conversations. The diagram also has an annotation connected to a message flow (see Figure 12.14).
Figure 12.14 – Conversation Example

Table 12.42 – Conversation BPMN DI instance

```xml
<bpmndi:BPMNDiagram name="Conversation " resolution="72">
  <bpmndi:BPMNPlane bpmnElement="Collaboration_Conversation">
    <bpmndi:BPMNShape bpmnElement="Participant_Participant_1" isHorizontal="false">
      <dc:Bounds height="144.0" width="132.0" x="97.0" y="108.0"/>
      <bpmndi:BPMNLabel/>
    </bpmndi:BPMNShape>
    <bpmndi:BPMNShape bpmnElement="Participant_Participant_2" isHorizontal="false">
      <dc:Bounds height="144.0" width="120.0" x="360.0" y="108.0"/>
      <bpmndi:BPMNLabel/>
    </bpmndi:BPMNShape>
    <bpmndi:BPMNShape bpmnElement="Conversation_Conversation_1">
      <dc:Bounds height="38.0" width="38.0" x="274.0" y="168.0"/>
      <bpmndi:BPMNLabel/>
    </bpmndi:BPMNShape>
    <bpmndi:BPMNShape bpmnElement="Conversation_Conversation_1">
      <dc:Bounds height="38.0" width="38.0" x="274.0" y="168.0"/>
      <bpmndi:BPMNLabel/>
    </bpmndi:BPMNShape>
    <bpmndi:BPMNLabel bpmnElement="ConversationLink_A">
      <di:waypoint x="229.0" y="187.0"/>
      <di:waypoint x="274.0" y="187.0"/>
      <bpmndi:BPMNLabel/>
    </bpmndi:BPMNLabel>
    <bpmndi:BPMNShape bpmnElement="ConversationLink_B">
      <dc:Bounds height="38.0" width="38.0" x="274.0" y="168.0"/>
      <bpmndi:BPMNLabel/>
    </bpmndi:BPMNShape>
  </bpmndi:BPMNPlane>
</bpmndi:BPMNDiagram>
```
12.4.5 Choreography

The following diagram depicts a Choreography consisting of 3 Choreography Activities (2 Choreography Tasks and 1 SubChoreography). This diagram also depicts Participant Bands with and without envelope decorator.
Figure 12.15 – Choreography Example

Table 12.43 – Choreography BPMN DI instance

```xml
<bpmndi:BPMNDiagram name="Choreography" resolution="72">
  <bpmndi:BPMNPlane bpmnElement="Choreography_Choreography">
    <bpmndi:BPMNShape bpmnElement="StartEvent_StartEvent">
      <dc:Bounds height="30.0" width="30.0" x="72.0" y="138.0"/>
      <bpmndi:BPMNLabel/>
    </bpmndi:BPMNShape>
    <bpmndi:BPMNShape bpmnElement="ChoreographyTask_CT1" id="DI_ChoreographyTask_CT1">
      <dc:Bounds height="114.0" width="96.0" x="156.0" y="96.0"/>
      <bpmndi:BPMNLabel/>
    </bpmndi:BPMNShape>
    <bpmndi:BPMNShape bpmnElement="Participant_Participant1" choreographyActivityShape="DI_ChoreographyTask_CT1" isMessageVisible="true" participantBandKind="top_non_initiating">
      <dc:Bounds height="20.0" width="96.0" x="156.0" y="96.0"/>
      <bpmndi:BPMNLabel/>
    </bpmndi:BPMNShape>
    <bpmndi:BPMNShape bpmnElement="Participant_Participant2" choreographyActivityShape="DI_ChoreographyTask_CT1" isMessageVisible="false" participantBandKind="bottom_initiating">
      <dc:Bounds height="20.0" width="96.0" x="156.0" y="190.0"/>
      <bpmndi:BPMNLabel/>
    </bpmndi:BPMNShape>
    <bpmndi:BPMNShape bpmnElement="ChoreographyTask_CT2" id="DI_ChoreographyTask_CT2">
      <dc:Bounds height="114.0" width="96.0" x="312.0" y="96.0"/>
      <bpmndi:BPMNLabel/>
    </bpmndi:BPMNShape>
    <bpmndi:BPMNShape bpmnElement="Participant_Participant1" choreographyActivityShape="DI_ChoreographyTask_CT2" isMessageVisible="false" participantBandKind="top_non_initiating">
      <dc:Bounds height="20.0" width="96.0" x="312.0" y="96.0"/>
      <bpmndi:BPMNLabel/>
    </bpmndi:BPMNShape>
    <bpmndi:BPMNShape bpmnElement="Participant_Participant2" choreographyActivityShape="DI_ChoreographyTask_CT2" isMessageVisible="true" participantBandKind="bottom_initiating">
      <dc:Bounds height="20.0" width="96.0" x="312.0" y="96.0"/>
      <bpmndi:BPMNLabel/>
    </bpmndi:BPMNShape>
  </bpmndi:BPMNPlane>
</bpmndi:BPMNDiagram>
```
</bpmndi:BPMNPlane>
</bpmndi:BPMNDiagram>
13 BPMN Execution Semantics

13.1 General

NOTE: The content of this clause is REQUIRED for BPMN Process Execution Conformance or for BPMN Complete Conformance. However, this clause is NOT REQUIRED for BPMN Process Modeling Conformance, BPMN Choreography Conformance, or BPMN BPEL Process Execution Conformance. For more information about BPMN conformance types, see page 1.

This sub clause defines the execution semantics for orchestrations in BPMN 2.0.1. The purpose of this execution semantics is to describe a clear and precise understanding of the operation of the elements. However, for some elements only conceptual model is provided which does not specify details needed to execute them on an engine. These elements are called non-operational. Implementations MAY extend the semantics of non-operational elements to make them executable, but this is considered to be an optional extension to BPMN. Non-operational elements MAY be ignored by implementations conforming to BPMN Process Execution Conformance type. The following elements are non-operational:

- Manual Task
- Abstract Task
- DataState
- IORules
- Ad-Hoc Process
  - ItemDefinitions with an itemKind of Physical
  - the inputSetWhileExecuting attribute of DataInput
  - the outputSetWhileExecuting attribute of DataOutput
  - the isClosed attribute of Process
  - the isImmediate attribute of Sequence Flow

The execution semantics are described informally (textually), and this is based on prior research involving the formalization of execution semantics using mathematical formalisms.

This sub clause provides the execution semantics of elements through the following structure:

- A description of the operational semantics of the element.
- Exception issues for the element where relevant.
- List of workflow patterns\(^1\) supported by the element where relevant.

\(^1\) http://www.workflowpatterns.com/patterns/control/index.php
13.2 Process Instantiation and Termination

A Process is instantiated when one of its Start Events occurs. Each occurrence of a Start Event creates a new Process Instance unless the Start Event participates in a Conversation that includes other Start Events. In that case, a new Process instance is only created if none already exists for the specific Conversation (identified through its associated correlation information) of the Event occurrence. Subsequent Start Events that share the same correlation information as a Start Event that created a Process instance are routed to that Process instance. Note that a global Process MUST neither have any empty Start Event nor any Gateway or Activity without incoming Sequence Flows. An exception is the Event Gateway.

A Process can also be started via an Event-Based Gateway or a Receive Task that has no incoming Sequence Flows and its instantiate flag set to true. If the Event-Based Gateway is exclusive, the first matching Event will create a new instance of the Process. The Process then does not wait for the other Events originating from the same Event-Based Gateway (see also semantics of the Event-Based Exclusive Gateway on page 437). If the Event-Based Gateway is parallel, also the first matching Event creates a new Process instance. However, the Process then waits for the other Events to arrive. As stated above, those Events MUST have the same correlation information as the Event that arrived first. A Process instance completes only if all Events that succeed a Parallel Event-Based Gateway have occurred.

To specify that the instantiation of a Process waits for multiple Start Events to happen, a Multiple Parallel Start Event can be used.

Note that two Start Events are alternative. A Process instance triggered by one of the Start Events does not wait for an alternative Start Event to occur. Note that there MAY be multiple instantiating Parallel Event-Based Gateways. This allows the modeler to express that either all the Events after the first Gateway occur or all the Events after the second Gateway and so forth.

Each Start Event that occurs creates a token on its outgoing Sequence Flows, which is followed as described by the semantics of the other Process elements.

- A Process instance is completed, if and only if the following three conditions hold:
  - If the instance was created through an instantiating Parallel Gateway, then all subsequent Events (of that Gateway) MUST have occurred.
  - There is no token remaining within the Process instance.
  - No Activity of the Process is still active.

For a Process instance to become completed, all tokens in that instance MUST reach an end node, i.e., a node without outgoing Sequence Flows. A token reaching an End Event triggers the behavior associated with the Event type, e.g., the associated Message is sent for a Message End Event, the associated Signal is sent for a Signal End Event, and so on. If a token reaches a Terminate End Event, the entire Process is abnormally terminated.

13.3 Activities

This sub clause specifies the semantics of Activities. First the semantics that is common to all Activities is described. Subsequently the semantics of special types of Activities is described.
13.3.1 Sequence Flow Considerations

The nature and behavior of Sequence Flows is described in “Sequence Flow” on page 95. But there are special considerations relative to Sequence Flows when applied to Activities. An Activity that is the target of multiple Sequence Flows participates in “uncontrolled flow.”

To facilitate the definition of Sequence Flow (and other Process elements) behavior, we employ the concept of a token that will traverse the Sequence Flows and pass through the elements in the Process. A token is a theoretical concept that is used as an aid to define the behavior of a Process that is being performed. The behavior of Process elements can be defined by describing how they interact with a token as it “traverses” the structure of the Process. However, modeling and execution tools that implement BPMN are NOT REQUIRED to implement any form of token.

Uncontrolled flow means that, for each token arriving on any incoming Sequence Flows into the Activity, the Task will be enabled independently of the arrival of tokens on other incoming Sequence Flows. The presence of multiple incoming Sequence Flows behaves as an exclusive gateway. If the flow of tokens into the Task needs to be ‘controlled,’ then Gateways (other than Exclusive) should be explicitly included in the Process flow prior to the Task to fully eliminate semantic ambiguities.

If an Activity has no incoming Sequence Flows, the Activity will be instantiated when the containing Process or Sub-Process is instantiated. Exceptions to this are Compensation Activities, as they have specialized instantiation behavior.

Activities can also be source of Sequence Flows. If an Activity has multiple outgoing Sequence Flows, all of them will receive a token when the Activity transitions to the Completed state. Semantics for token propagation for other termination states is defined below. Thus, multiple outgoing Sequence Flows behaves as a parallel split. Multiple outgoing Sequence Flows with conditions behaves as an inclusive split. A mix of multiple outgoing Sequence Flows with and without conditions is considered as a combination of a parallel and an inclusive split as shown in the Figure 13.1.

![Figure 13.1 – Behavior of multiple outgoing Sequence Flows of an Activity](image)

If the Activity has no outgoing Sequence Flows, the Activity will terminate without producing any tokens and termination semantics for the container is then applied.

Token movement across a Sequence Flow does not have any timing constraints. A token might take a long or short time to move across the Sequence Flow. If the isImmediate attribute of a Sequence Flow has a value of false, or has no value and is taken to mean false, then Activities not in the model MAY be executed while the token is moving along the Sequence Flow. If the isImmediate attribute of a Sequence Flow has a value of true, or has no value and is taken to mean true, then Activities not in the model MAY NOT be executed while the token is moving along the Sequence Flow.
13.3.2 Activity

An Activity is a Process step that can be atomic (Tasks) or decomposable (Sub-Processes) and is executed by either a system (automated) or humans (manual). All Activities share common attributes and behavior such as states and state transitions. An Activity, regardless of type, has lifecycle generally characterizing its operational semantics. The lifecycle, described as a UML state diagram in Figure 13.2, entails states and transitions between the states.

Figure 13.2 – The Lifecycle of a BPMN Activity
The lifecycle of an Activity is described as follows:

- An Activity is Ready for execution if the REQUIRED number of tokens is available to activate the Activity. The REQUIRED number of tokens (one or more) is indicated by the attribute StartQuantity. If the Activity has more than one Incoming Sequence Flows, there is an implied Exclusive Gateway that defines the behavior.

- When some data InputSet becomes available, the Activity changes from Ready to the Active state. The availability of a data InputSet is evaluated as follows. The data InputSets are evaluated in order. For each InputSet, the data inputs are filled with data coming from the elements of the context such as Data Objects or Properties by triggering the input Data Associations. An InputSet is available if each of its REQUIRED Data Inputs is available. A data input is REQUIRED by a data InputSet if it is not optional in that InputSet. If an InputSet is available, it is used to start the Activity. Further InputSets are not evaluated. If an InputSet is not available, the next InputSet is evaluated. The Activity waits until one InputSet becomes available. Please refer to 10.4.2 on page 224 for a description of the execution semantics for Data Associations.

- An Activity, if Ready or Active, can be Withdrawn from being able to complete in the context of a race condition. This situation occurs for Tasks that are attached after an Event-Based Exclusive Gateway. The first element (Task or Event) that completes causes all other Tasks to be withdrawn.

- If an Activity fails during execution, it changes from the state Active to Failed.

  - If a fault happens in the environment of the Activity, termination of the Activity is triggered, causing the Activity to go into the state Terminated.

  - If an Activity’s execution ends without anomalies, the Activity’s state changes to Completing. This intermediate state caters for processing steps prior to completion of the Activity. An example of where this is useful is when non-interrupting Event Handlers (proposed for BPMN 2.0) are attached to an Activity. They need to complete before the Activity to which it is attached can complete. The state Completing of the main Activity indicates that the execution of the main Activity has been completed, however, the main Activity is not allowed to be in the state Completed, as it still has to wait for all non-interrupting Event Handlers to complete. The state Completing does not allow further processing steps, otherwise allowed during the execution of the Activity. For example, new attached non-interrupting Event Handlers MAY be created as long as the main Activity is in state Active. However, once in the state Completing, running handlers should be completed with no possibility to create new ones.

  - An Activity’s execution is interrupted if an interrupting Event is raised (such as an error) or if an interrupting Event Sub-Process is initiated. In this case, the Activity’s state changes to Failing (in case of an error) or Terminating (in case any other interrupting Event). All nested Activities that are not in Ready, Active or a final state (Completed, Compensated, Failed, etc.) and non-interrupting Event Sub-Processes are terminated. The data context of the Activity is preserved in case an interrupting Event Sub-Process is invoked. The data context is released after the Event Sub-Process reaches a final state.

  - After all completion dependencies have been fulfilled, the state of the Activity changes to Completed. The outgoing Sequence Flows becomes active and a number of tokens, indicated by the attribute CompletionQuantity, is placed on it. If there is more than one outbound Sequence Flows for an Activity, it behaves like an implicit Parallel Gateway. Upon completion, also a data OutputSet of the Activity is selected as follows. All OutputSets are checked for availability in order. An OutputSet is available if all its REQUIRED Data Outputs are available. A data output is REQUIRED by an OutputSet if it is not optional in that OutputSet. If the data OutputSet is available, data is pushed into the context of the Activity by triggering the output Data Associations of all its data outputs. Further OutputSets are not evaluated. If the data OutputSet is not available, the next data OutputSet is checked. If no OutputSet is available, a runtime exception is thrown. If the Activity has an associated IORule, the chosen OutputSet is checked against that IORule, i.e., it is checked whether the InputSet that was used in starting the Activity instance is together with the chosen OutputSet compliant with the IORule. If not, a runtime exception is thrown.
Only completed Activities could, in principle, be compensated, however, the Activity can end in state Completed, as compensation might not be triggered or there might be no compensation handler specified. If the compensation handler is invoked, the Activity changes to state Compensating until either compensation finishes successfully (state Compensated), an exception occurs (state Failed), or controlled or uncontrolled termination is triggered (state Terminated).

13.3.3 Task

Task execution and completion for the different Task types are as follows:

- **Service Task**: Upon activation, the data in the inMessage of the Operation is assigned from the data in the Data Input of the Service Task the Operation is invoked. On completion of the service, the data in the Data Output of the Service Task is assigned from the data in the outMessage of the Operation, and the Service Task completes. If the invoked service returns a fault, that fault is treated as interrupting error, and the Activity fails.

- **Send Task**: Upon activation, the data in the associated Message is assigned from the data in the Data Input of the Send Task. The Message is sent and the Send Task completes.

- **Receive Task**: Upon activation, the Receive Task begins waiting for the associated Message. When the Message arrives, the data in the Data Output of the Receive Task is assigned from the data in the Message, and Receive Task completes. For key-based correlation, only a single receive for a given CorrelationKey can be active, and thus the Message matches at most one Process instance. For predicate-based correlation, the Message can be passed to multiple Receive Tasks. If the Receive Task’s instantiate attribute is set to true, the Receive Task itself can start a new Process instance.

- **User Task**: Upon activation, the User Task is distributed to the assigned person or group of people. When the work has been done, the User Task completes.

- **Manual Task**: Upon activation, the manual task is distributed to the assigned person or group of people. When the work has been done, the Manual Task completes. This is a conceptual model only; a Manual Task is never actually executed by an IT system.

- **Business Rule Task**: Upon activation, the associated business rule is called. On completion of the business rule, the Business Rule Task completes.

- **Script Task**: Upon activation, the associated script is invoked. On completion of the script, the Script Task completes.

- **Abstract Task**: Upon activation, the Abstract Task completes. This is a conceptual model only; an Abstract Task is never actually executed by an IT system.

13.3.4 Sub-Process/Call Activity

A Sub-Process is an Activity that encapsulates a Process that is in turn modeled by Activities, Gateways, Events, and Sequence Flows. Once a Sub-Process is instantiated, its elements behave as in a normal Process. The instantiation and completion of a Sub-Process is defined as follows:

- A Sub-Process is instantiated when it is reached by a Sequence Flow token. The Sub-Process has either a unique empty Start Event, which gets a token upon instantiation, or it has no Start Event but Activities and Gateways without incoming Sequence Flows. In the latter case all such Activities and Gateways get a token. A Sub-Process MUST not have any non-empty Start Events.
13.3.5 Ad-Hoc Sub-Process

An Ad-Hoc Sub-Process or Process contains a number of embedded inner Activities and is intended to be executed with a more flexible ordering compared to the typical routing of Processes. Unlike regular Processes, it does not contain a complete, structured BPMN diagram description—i.e., from Start Event to End Event. Instead the Ad-Hoc Sub-Process contains only Activities, Sequence Flows, Gateways, and Intermediate Events. An Ad-Hoc Sub-Process MAY also contain Data Objects and Data Associations. The Activities within the Ad-Hoc Sub-Process are not REQUIRED to have incoming and outgoing Sequence Flows. However, it is possible to specify Sequence Flows between some of the contained Activities. When used, Sequence Flows will provide the same ordering constraints as in a regular Process. To have any meaning, Intermediate Events will have outgoing Sequence Flows and they can be triggered multiple times while the Ad-Hoc Sub-Process is active.

The contained Activities are executed sequentially or in parallel, they can be executed multiple times in an order that is only constrained through the specified Sequence Flows, Gateways, and data connections.

Operational semantics

◆ At any point in time, a subset of the embedded Activities is enabled. Initially, all Activities without incoming Sequence Flows are enabled. One of the enabled Activities is selected for execution. This is not done by the implementation but usually by a Human Performer. If the ordering attribute is set to sequential, another enabled Activity can be selected for execution only if the previous one has terminated. If the ordering attribute is set to parallel, another enabled Activity can be selected for execution at any time. This implies the possibility of the multiple parallel instances of the same inner Activity.

◆ After each completion of an inner Activity, a condition specified through the completionCondition attribute is evaluated:
  ◆ If false, the set of enabled inner Activities is updated and new Activities can be selected for execution.
  ◆ If true, the Ad-Hoc Sub-Process completes without executing further inner Activities. In case the ordering attribute is set to parallel and the attribute cancelRemainingInstances is true, running instances of inner Activities are canceled. If cancelRemainingInstances is set to false, the Ad-Hoc Sub-Process completes after all remaining inner instances have completed or terminated.
When an inner Activity with outgoing Sequence Flows completes, a number of tokens are produced on its outgoing Sequence Flows. This number is specified through its attribute completionQuantity. The resulting state MAY contain also other tokens on incoming Sequence Flows of either Activities, converging Parallel or Complex Gateways, or an Intermediate Event. Then all tokens are propagated as far as possible, i.e., all activated Gateways are executed until no Gateway and Intermediate Event is activated anymore. Consequently, a state is obtained where each token is on an incoming Sequence Flow of either an inner Activity, a converging Parallel or Complex Gateway or an Intermediate Event. An inner Activity is now enabled if it has either no incoming Sequence Flows or there are sufficiently many tokens on its incoming Sequence Flows (as specified through startQuantity).

Workflow patterns: WCP-17 Interleaved parallel routing.

### 13.3.6 Loop Activity

The Loop Activity is a type of Activity that acts as a wrapper for an inner Activity that can be executed multiple times in sequence.

**Operational semantics:** Attributes can be set to determine the behavior. The Loop Activity executes the inner Activity as long as the loopCondition evaluates to true. A testBefore attribute is set to decide when the loopCondition should be evaluated: either before the Activity is executed or after, corresponding to a pre- and post-tested loop respectively. A loopMaximum attribute can be set to specify a maximal number of iterations. If it is not set, the number is unbounded.

**Workflow Patterns Support:** WCP-21 Structured Loop.

### 13.3.7 Multiple Instances Activity

The multi-instance (MI) Activity is a type of Activity that acts as a wrapper for an Activity which has multiple instances spawned in parallel or sequentially.

**Operational semantics:** The MI specific attributes are used to configure specific behavior. The attribute isSequential determines whether instances are generated sequentially (true) or in parallel (false). The number of instances to be generated is either specified by the integer-valued Expression loopCardinality or as the cardinality of a specific collection-valued data item of the data input of the MI Activity. The latter is described in detail below.

The number of instances to be generated is evaluated once. Subsequently the number of instances are generated. If the instances are generated sequentially, a new instance is generated only after the previous has been completed. Otherwise, multiple instances to be executed in parallel are generated.

Attributes are available to support the different possibilities of behavior. The completionCondition Expression is a boolean predicate that is evaluated every time an instance completes. When evaluated to true, the remaining instances are canceled, a token is produced for the outgoing Sequence Flows, and the MI Activity completes.

The attribute behavior defines if and when an Event is thrown from an Activity instance that is about to complete. It has values of none, one, all, and complex, assuming the following behavior:

- **none:** an EventDefinition is thrown for all instances completing.
- **one:** an EventDefinition is thrown upon the first instance completing.
- **all:** no Event is ever thrown.
- **complex:** the complexBehaviorDefinitions are consulted to determine if and which Events to throw.
For the behaviors of none and one, an EventDefinition (which is referenced from MultipleInstanceLoopCharacteristics through the noneEvent and oneEvent associations, respectively) is thrown which automatically carries the current runtime attributes of the MI Activity. That is, the ItemDefinition of these SignalEventDefinitions is implicitly given by the specific runtime attributes of the MI Activity.

The complexBehaviorDefinition association references multiple ComplexBehaviorDefinition entities which each point to a boolean condition being a FormalExpression and an Event which is an ImplicitThrowEvent. Whenever an Activity instance completes, the conditions of all ComplexBehaviorDefinitions are evaluated. For each ComplexBehaviorDefinition whose condition is evaluated to true, the associated Event is automatically thrown. That is, a single Activity completion can lead to multiple different Events that are thrown. The Events can then be caught on the boundary of the MI Activity. Multiple ComplexBehaviorDefinitions offer an easy way of implicitly spawning different flow at the MI Activity boundary for different situations indicating different states of progress in the course of executing the MI Activity.

The completionCondition, the condition in the ComplexBehaviorDefinition, and the DataInputAssociation of the Event in the ComplexBehaviorDefinition can refer to the MI Activity instance attributes and the loopDataInput, loopDataOutput, inputDataItem, and outputDataItem that are referenced from the MultiInstanceLoopCharacteristics.

In practice, an MI Activity is executed over a data collection, processing as input the data values in the collection and producing as output data values in a collection. The input data collection is passed to the MI outer Activity’s loopDataInput from a Data Object in the Process scope of the MI Activity. Under BPMN data flow constraints, the Data Object is linked to MI activity’s loopDataInput through a DataInputAssociation. To indicate that the Data Object is a collection, its respective symbol is marked with the MI indicator (three-bar). The items of the loopDataInput collection are used to determine the number of instances REQUIRED to be executed (whether sequentially or in parallel). Accordingly, the inner instances are created and data values from the loopDataInput are extracted and assigned to the respective instances. Specifically, the values from the loopDataInput items are passed to an inputDataItem, created in the scope of the outer Activity. The value in the inputDataItem can be passed to the loopDataInput of each inner instance, where a DataInputAssociation links both. The process of extraction is left under-specified. In practice, it would entail a special-purpose mediator that not only provides the extraction and data assignment, but also any necessary data transformation.

Each instance processes the data value of its DataInput. It produces a value in its DataOutput if it completes successfully. The DataOutput value of the instance is passed to a corresponding outputDataItem in the outer Activity, where a DataOutputAssociation links both. Each outputDataItem value is updated in the loopDataOutput collection, in the corresponding item. The mechanism of this update is left underspecified, and again would be implemented through a special purpose mediator. The loopDataOutput is passed to the MI Activity’s Process scope through a Data Object that has a DataOutputAssociation linking both.

It should be noted that the collection in the Process scope should not be accessible until all its items have been written to. This is because, it could be accessed by an Activity running concurrently, and therefore control flow through token passing cannot guarantee that the collection is fully written before it is accessed.

The MI Activity is compensated only if all its instances have completed successfully.

Workflow Patterns Support: WCP-21 Structured Loop, Multiple Instance Patterns WCP 13, 14, 34, 36
13.4 Gateways

This sub clause describes the behavior of Gateways.

13.4.1 Parallel Gateway (Fork and Join)

On the one hand, the Parallel Gateway is used to synchronize multiple concurrent branches (merging behavior). On the other hand, it is used to spawn new concurrent threads on parallel branches (branching behavior).

Table 13.1 – Parallel Gateway Execution Semantic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operational Semantics</th>
<th>The Parallel Gateway is activated if there is at least one token on each incoming Sequence Flow. The Parallel Gateway consumes exactly one token from each incoming Sequence Flow and produces exactly one token at each outgoing Sequence Flow. If there are excess tokens at an incoming Sequence Flow, these tokens remain at this Sequence Flow after execution of the Gateway.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exception Issues</td>
<td>The Parallel Gateway cannot throw any exception.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Workflow Patterns Support | Parallel Split (WCP-2)  
                           | Synchronization (WCP-3) |

13.4.2 Exclusive Gateway (Exclusive Decision (data-based) and Exclusive Merge)

Figure 13.4 – Merging and Branching Sequence Flows for an Exclusive Gateway
The **Exclusive Gateway** has pass-through semantics for a set of incoming branches (merging behavior). Further on, each activation leads to the activation of exactly one out of the set of outgoing branches (branching behavior).

### Table 13.2 – Exclusive Gateway Execution Semantics

| Operational Semantics | Each *token* arriving at any incoming *Sequence Flows* activates the gateway and is routed to exactly one of the outgoing *Sequence Flows*. In order to determine the outgoing *Sequence Flows* that receives the *token*, the conditions are evaluated in order. The first condition that evaluates to true determines the *Sequence Flow* the *token* is sent to. No more conditions are henceforth evaluated. If and only if none of the conditions evaluates to true, the *token* is passed on the default *Sequence Flow*. In case all conditions evaluate to false and a default flow has not been specified, an exception is thrown. |
| Exception Issues | The exclusive gateway throws an exception in case all conditions evaluate to false and a default flow has not been specified. |
| Workflow Patterns Support | Exclusive Choice (WCP-4) Simple Merge (WCP-5) Multi-Merge (WCP-8) |

### 13.4.3 Inclusive Gateway (Inclusive Decision and Inclusive Merge)

**Figure 13.5** – Merging and Branching Sequence Flows for an Inclusive Gateway

The **Inclusive Gateway** synchronizes a certain subset of branches out of the set of concurrent incoming branches (merging behavior). Further on, each firing leads to the creation of threads on a certain subset out of the set of outgoing branches (branching behavior).
Table 13.3 – Inclusive Gateway Execution Semantics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operational Semantics</th>
<th>The <strong>Inclusive Gateway</strong> is activated if</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• At least one incoming <strong>Sequence Flow</strong> has at least one <strong>token</strong> and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For every directed path formed by sequence flow that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- starts with a <strong>Sequence Flow</strong> ( f ) of the diagram that has a <strong>token</strong>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- ends with an <strong>incoming Sequence Flow</strong> of the inclusive gateway that has no <strong>token</strong>, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- does not visit the <strong>Inclusive Gateway</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• There is also a directed path formed by <strong>Sequence Flow</strong> that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- starts with ( f ),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- ends with an <strong>incoming Sequence Flow</strong> of the inclusive gateway that has a <strong>token</strong>, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- does not visit the <strong>Inclusive Gateway</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Upon execution, a <strong>token</strong> is consumed from each incoming <strong>Sequence Flow</strong> that has a <strong>token</strong>. A <strong>token</strong> will be produced on some of the outgoing <strong>Sequence Flows</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In order to determine the outgoing <strong>Sequence Flows</strong> that receive a <strong>token</strong>, all conditions on the outgoing <strong>Sequence Flows</strong> are evaluated. The evaluation does not have to respect a certain order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For every condition which evaluates to <strong>true</strong>, a <strong>token</strong> <strong>MUST</strong> be passed on the respective <strong>Sequence Flow</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If and only if none of the conditions evaluates to <strong>true</strong>, the <strong>token</strong> is passed on the default <strong>Sequence Flow</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In case all conditions evaluate to <strong>false</strong> and a default flow has not been specified, the <strong>Inclusive Gateway</strong> throws an exception.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Exception Issues | The inclusive gateway throws an exception in case all conditions evaluate to **false** and a default flow has not been specified. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Workflow Patterns Support</th>
<th>Multi-Choice (WCP-6)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Structured Synchronizing Merge (WCP-7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acyclic Synchronizing Merge (WCP-37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>General Synchronizing Merge (WCP-38)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13.4.4 Event-based Gateway (Exclusive Decision (event-based))

![Diagram of Event-Based Gateway]

The Event-Based Gateway has pass-through semantics for a set of incoming branches (merging behavior). Exactly one of the outgoing branches is activated afterwards (branching behavior), depending on which of the Events of the Gateway configuration is first triggered. The choice of the branch to be taken is deferred until one of the subsequent Tasks or Events completes. The first to complete causes all other branches to be withdrawn.

When used at the Process start as a Parallel Event Gateway, only message-based triggers are allowed. The Message triggers that are part of the Gateway configuration MUST be part of a Conversation with the same correlation information. After the first trigger instantiates the Process, the remaining Message triggers will be a part of the Process instance that is already active (rather than creating new Process instances).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exception Issues</th>
<th>The event-based gateway cannot throw any exception.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Workflow Patterns Support</td>
<td>Deferred Choice (WCP-16)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13.4.5 Complex Gateway (related to Complex Condition and Complex Merge)

![Diagram of Complex Gateway]

The Complex Gateway facilitates the specification of complex synchronization behavior, in particular race situations. The diverging behavior is similar to the Inclusive Gateway. Each incoming gate of the Complex Gateway has an attribute activationCount, which can be used in an Expression as an integer-valued variable. This variable represents the number of tokens that are currently on the respective incoming Sequence Flows. The Complex Gateway has an attribute activationExpression. An activationExpression is a boolean Expression that refers to data and to the activationCount of incoming gates. For example, an activationExpression could be \( x_1 + x_2 + \ldots + x_m \geq 3 \) stating that it needs 3 out of the \( m \) incoming gates to have a token in order to proceed.
prevent undesirable oscillation of activation of the Complex Gateway. ActivationCount variables should only be used in subexpressions of the form \( expr \geq const \) where \( expr \) is an arithmetic Expression that uses only addition and \( const \) is an Expression whose evaluation remains constant during execution of the Process.

Each outgoing Sequence Flow of the Complex Gateway has a boolean condition that is evaluated to determine whether that Sequence Flow receives a token during the execution of the Gateway. Such a condition MAY refer to internal state of the Complex Gateway. There are two states: waiting for start (represented by the runtime attribute \( \text{waitingForStart} = \text{true} \)) and waiting for reset (waitingForStart=false).

| Operational Semantics | The Complex Gateway is in one of the two states: waiting for start or waiting for reset, initially it is in waiting for start. If it is waiting for start, then it waits for the activationExpression to become true. The activationExpression is not evaluated before there is at least one token on some incoming Sequence Flow. When it becomes true, a token is consumed from each incoming Sequence Flow that has a token. To determine which outgoing Sequence Flow receive a token, all conditions on the outgoing Sequence Flows are evaluated (in any order). Those and only those that evaluate to true receive a token. If no condition evaluates to true, and only then, the default Sequence Flow receives a token. If no default flow is specified an exception is thrown. The Gateway changes its state to waiting for reset. The Gateway remembers from which of the incoming Sequence Flows it consumed tokens in the first phase.

When waiting for reset, the Gateway waits for a token on each of those incoming Sequence Flows from which it has not yet received a token in the first phase unless such a token is not expected according to the join behavior of an inclusive Gateway.

More precisely, the Gateway being waiting for reset, resets when for every directed path formed by sequence flow that
- starts with a Sequence Flow \( f \) of the diagram that has a token,
- ends with an incoming Sequence Flow of the Complex Gateway that has no token and has not consumed a token in the first phase, and that
- does not visit the Complex Gateway. |

---

Table 13.5 – Semantics of the Complex Gateway
Table 13.5 – Semantics of the Complex Gateway

| Operational Semantics | · There is also a directed path formed by Sequence Flow that  
|                        | - starts with $f$,  
|                        | - ends with an incoming Sequence Flow of the Complex Gateway that has a  
|                        |   token or from which a token was consumed in the first phase, and that,  
|                        | - does not visit the Complex Gateway.  
| If the Complex Gateway is contained in a Sub-Process, then no paths are  
| considered that cross the boundary of that Sub-Process.  
| When the Gateway resets, it consumes a token from each incoming Sequence Flow  
| that has a token and from which it had not yet consumed a token in the first phase. It  
| then evaluates all conditions on the outgoing Sequence Flows (in any order) to  
| determine which Sequence Flows receives a token. Those and only those that  
| evaluate to true receive a token. If no condition evaluates to true, and only then, the  
| default Sequence Flow receives a token. The Gateway changes its state back to the  
| state waiting for start. Note that the Gateway might not produce any tokens in this  
| phase and no exception is thrown. Note that the conditions on the outgoing Sequence  
| Flows MAY evaluate differently in the two phases, e.g., by referring to the state of the  
| Gateway (runtime attribute waitingForStart).  
| Note that if the activationCondition never becomes true in the first phase, tokens  
| are blocked indefinitely at the Complex Gateway, which MAY cause a deadlock of the  
| entire Process.  
| Exception issues | The Complex Gateway throws an exception when it is activated in the state waiting  
| for start, no condition on any outgoing Sequence Flow evaluates to true and no  
| default Sequence Flow is specified.  
| Workflow Patterns Support | Structured Discriminator (WCP-9)  
| | Blocking Discriminator (WCP-28)  
| | Structured Partial Join (WCP-30)  
| | Blocking Partial Join (WCP-31)  

13.5 Events

This sub clause describes the handling of Events.

13.5.1 Start Events

For single Start Events, handling consists of starting a new Process instance each time the Event occurs. Sequence Flows leaving the Event are then followed as usual.

If the Start Event participates in a Conversation that includes other Start Events, a new Process instance is only created if none already exists for the specific Conversation (identified through its associated correlation information) of the Event occurrence.
A Process can also be started via an Event-Based Gateway. In that case, the first matching Event will create a new instance of the Process, and waiting for the other Events originating from the same decision stops, following the usual semantics of the Event-Based Exclusive Gateway. Note that this is the only scenario where a Gateway can exist without incoming Sequence Flows.

It is possible to have multiple groups of Event-Based Gateways starting a Process, provided they participate in the same Conversation and hence share the same correlation information. In that case, one Event out of each group needs to arrive; the first one creates a new Process instance, while the subsequent ones are routed to the existing instance, which is identified through its correlation information.

13.5.2 Intermediate Events

For Intermediate Events, the handling consists of waiting for the Event to occur. Waiting starts when the Intermediate Event is reached. Once the Event occurs, it is consumed. Sequence Flows leaving the Event are followed as usual. For catch Message Intermediate Events, the Message correlation behavior is the same as for Receive Tasks (see sub clause 13.3.3).

13.5.3 Intermediate Boundary Events

For boundary Events, handling first consists of consuming the Event occurrence. If the cancelActivity attribute is set, the Activity the Event is attached to is then cancelled (in case of a multi-instance, all its instances are cancelled); if the attribute is not set, the Activity continues execution (only possible for Message, Signal, Timer, and Conditional Events, not for Error Events). Execution then follows the Sequence Flow connected to the boundary Event. For boundary Message Intermediate Events, the Message correlation behavior is the same as for Receive Tasks (see sub clause 13.3.3).

13.5.4 Event Sub-Processes

Event Sub-Processes allow to handle an Event within the context of a given Sub-Processes or Process. An Event Sub-Process always begins with a Start Event, followed by Sequence Flows. Event Sub-Processes are a special kind of Sub-Process: they create a scope and are instantiated like a Sub-Process, but they are not instantiated by normal control flow but only when the associated Start Event is triggered. Event Sub-Processes are self-contained and MUST not be connected to the rest of the Sequence Flows in the Sub-Processes; also they cannot have attached boundary Events. They run in the context of the Sub-Process, and thus have access to its context.

An Event Sub-Process cancels execution of the enclosing Sub-Process, if the isInterrupting attribute of its Start Event is set; for a multi-instance Activity this cancels only the affected instance. If the isInterrupting attribute is not set (not possible for Error Event Sub-Processes), execution of the enclosing Sub-Process continues in parallel to the Event Sub-Process.

An Event Sub-Process can optionally re-trigger the Event through which it was triggered, to cause its continuation outside the boundary of the associated Sub-Process. In that case the Event Sub-Process is performed when the Event occurs; then control passes to the boundary Event, possibly canceling the Sub-Process (including running handlers).

Operational semantics

◆ An Event Sub-Process becomes initiated, and thus Enabled and Running, through the Activity to which it is attached. The Event Handler MAY only be initiated after the parent Activity is Running.
More than one non-interrupting Event Handler MAY be initiated and they MAY be initiated at different times. There might be multiple instances of the non-interrupting Event Handler at a time. For Event Sub-Processes triggered by a Message, the Message correlation behavior is the same as for Receive Tasks -- see sub clause 13.3.3.

Only one interrupting Event Handler MAY be initiated for a given EventDefinition within the context of the parent Activity. Once the interrupting Event Handler is started, the parent Activity is interrupted and no new Event Handlers can be initiated or started. An Event Sub-Process completes when all tokens have reached an End Event, like any other Sub-Process. If the parent Activity enters the state Completing, it remains in that state until all contained active Event Sub-Processes have completed. While the parent Activity is in the Completing state, no new Event Sub-Processes can be initiated.

If an interrupting Event Sub-Process is started by an error, then the parent Activity enters the state Failing and remains in this state until the interrupting Event Handler reaches a final state. During this time, the running Event Handler can access to the context of the parent Activity. However, new Event Handlers MUST NOT be started.

Similarly, if an interrupting Event Sub-Process is started by a non error (e.g., Escalation), then the parent Activity enters the state Terminating and remains in this state until the interrupting Event Handler reaches a final state. During this time, the running Event Handler can access to the context of the parent Activity. However, new Event Handlers MUST NOT be started.

13.5.5 Compensation

Compensation is concerned with undoing steps that were already successfully completed, because their results and possibly side effects are no longer desired and need to be reversed. If an Activity is still active, it cannot be compensated, but rather needs to be canceled. Cancellation in turn can result in compensation of already successfully completed portions of an active Activity, in case of a Sub-Process.

Compensation is performed by a compensation handler. A compensation handler can either be a Compensation Event Sub-Process (for a Sub-Process or Process), or an associated Compensation Activity (for any Activity). A compensation handler performs the steps necessary to reverse the effects of an Activity. In case of a Sub-Process, its Compensation Event Sub-Process has access to Sub-Process data at the time of its completion (“snapshot data”).

Compensation is triggered by a throw Compensation Event, which typically will be raised by an error handler, as part of cancellation, or recursively by another compensation handler. That Event specifies the Activity for which compensation is to be performed, either explicitly or implicitly.

Compensation Handler

A compensation handler is a set of Activities that are not connected to other portions of the BPMN model. The compensation handler starts with a catch Compensation Event. That catch Compensation Event either is a boundary Event, or, in case of a Compensation Event Sub-Process, the handler’s Start Event.

A compensation handler connected via a boundary Event can only perform “black-box” compensation of the original Activity. This compensation is modeled with a specialized Compensation Activity.

A Compensation Event Sub-Process is contained within a Process or Sub-Processes. It can access data that is part of its parent, snapshot at the point in time when its parent has completed. A compensation Event Sub-Process can in particular recursively trigger compensation for Activities contained in that its parent.

It is possible to specify that a Sub-Process can be compensated without having to define the compensation handler. The Sub-Process attribute compensable, when set, specifies that default compensation is implicitly defined, which recursively compensates all successfully completed Activities within that Sub-Process, invoking them in reverse order of their forward execution.
Compensation Triggering

Compensation is triggered using a throw Compensation Event, which can either be an Intermediate or an End Event. The Activity that needs to be compensated is referenced. If the Activity is clear from the context, it doesn’t have to be specified and defaults to the current Activity. A typical scenario for that is an inline error handler of a Sub-Process that cannot recover the error, and as a result would trigger compensation for that Sub-Process. If no Activity is specified in a “global” context, all completed Activities in the Process are compensated.

By default, compensation is triggered synchronously, that is, the throw Compensation Event waits for the completion of the triggered compensation handler. Alternatively, compensation can just be triggered without waiting for its completion, by setting the throw Compensation Event’s waitForCompletion attribute to false.

Multiple instances typically exist for Loop or Multi-Instance Sub-Processes. Each of these has its own instance of its Compensation Event Sub-Process, which has access to the specific snapshot data that was current at the time of completion of that particular instance. Triggering compensation for the Multi-Instance Sub-Process individually triggers compensation for all instances within the current scope. If compensation is specified via a boundary compensation handler, this boundary compensation handler also is invoked once for each instance of the Multi-Instance Sub-Process in the current scope.

Relationship between Error Handling and Compensation

Compensation employs a “presumed abort principle,” which has a number of consequences. First, only completed Activities are compensated; compensation of a failed Activity results in an empty operation. Thus, when an Activity fails, i.e., is left because an error has been thrown, it’s the error handler’s responsibility to ensure that no further compensation will be necessary once the error handler has completed. Second, if no error Event Sub-Process is specified for a particular Sub-Process and a particular error, the default behavior is to automatically call compensation for all contained Activities of that Sub-Process if that error occurs, thus ensuring the “presumed abort” invariant.

Operational Semantics

◆ A Compensation Event Sub-Process becomes enabled when its parent Activity transitions into state Completed. At that time, a snapshot of the data associated with the parent Activity is taken and kept for later usage by the Compensation Event Sub-Process. In case the parent Activity is a multi-instance or loop, for each instance a separate data snapshot is taken, which is used when its associated Compensation Event Sub-Process is triggered.

◆ When compensation is triggered for the parent Activity, its Compensation Event Sub-Process is activated and runs. The original context data of the parent Activity is restored from the data snapshot. In case the parent Activity is a multi-instance or loop, for each instance the dedicated snapshot is restored and a dedicated Compensation Event Sub-Process is activated.

◆ An associated Compensation Activity becomes enabled when the Activity it is associated with transitions into state Completed. When compensation is triggered for that Activity, the associated Compensation Activity is activated. In case the Activity is a multi-instance or loop, the Compensation Activity is triggered only once, too, and thus has to compensate the effects of all instances.

◆ Default compensation ensures that Compensation Activities are performed in reverse order of the execution of the original Activities, allowing for concurrency when there was no dependency between the original Activities. Dependencies between original Activities that default compensation MUST consider are the following:

◆ A Sequence Flow between Activities A and B results in compensation of B to be performed before compensation of A.
A data dependency between Activities A and B, e.g., through an IORules specification in B referring to data produced by A, results in compensation of B to be performed before compensation of A.

If A and B are two Activities that were active as part of an Ad-Hoc Sub-Process, then compensation of B MUST be performed before compensation of A if A completed before B started.

Instances of a loop or sequential multi-instance are compensated in reverse order of their forward completion. Instances of a parallel multi-instance can be compensated in parallel.

If a Sub-Process A has a boundary Event connected to Activity B, then compensation of B MUST be performed before compensation of A if that particular Event occurred. This also applies to multi-instances and loops.

13.5.6 End Events

Process level end events
For a “terminate” End Event, the Process is abnormally terminated—no other ongoing Process instances are affected.

For all other End Events, the behavior associated with the Event type is performed, e.g., the associated Message is sent for a Message End Event, the associated signal is sent for a Signal End Event, and so on. The Process instance is then completed, if and only if the following two conditions hold:

- All start nodes of the Process have been visited. More precisely, all Start Events have been triggered, and for all starting Event-Based Gateways, one of the associated Events has been triggered.
- There is no token remaining within the Process instance.

Sub-process level end events
For a “terminate” End Event, the Sub-Process is abnormally terminated. In case of a multi-instance Sub-Process, only the affected instance is terminated—no other ongoing Sub-Process instances or higher-level Sub-Process or Process instances are affected.

For a “cancel” End Event, the Sub-Process is abnormally terminated and the associated transaction is aborted. Control leaves the Sub-Process through a cancel intermediate boundary Event.

For all other End Events, the behavior associated with the Event type is performed, e.g., the associated Message is sent for a Message End Event, the associated signal is sent for a signal End Event, and so on. The Sub-Process instance is then completed, if and only if the following two conditions hold:

- All start nodes of the Sub-Process have been visited. More precisely, all Start Events have been triggered, and for all starting Event-Based Gateways, one of the associated Events has been triggered.
- There is no token remaining within the Sub-Process instance.
14 Mapping BPMN Models to WS-BPEL

14.1 General

NOTE: The contents of this clause is REQUIRED for BPMN BPEL Process Execution Conformance or for BPMN Complete Conformance. However, this clause is NOT REQUIRED for BPMN Process Modeling Conformance, BPMN Process Choreography Conformance, or BPMN Process Execution Conformance. For more information about BPMN conformance types, see page 1.

This clause covers a mapping of a BPMN model to WS-BPEL that is derived by analyzing the BPMN objects and the relationships between these objects.

A Business Process Diagram can be made up of a set of (semi-) independent components, which are shown as separate Pools, each of which represents an orchestration Process. There is not a specific mapping of the diagram itself, but rather, each of these orchestration Processes maps to an individual WS-BPEL process.

Not all BPMN orchestration Processes can be mapped to WS-BPEL in a straight-forward way. That is because BPMN allows the modeler to draw almost arbitrary graphs to model control flow, whereas in WS-BPEL, there are certain restrictions such as control-flow being either block-structured or not containing cycles. For example, an unstructured loop cannot directly be represented in WS-BPEL.

To map a BPMN orchestration Process to WS-BPEL it MUST be sound, that is it MUST contain neither a deadlock nor a lack of synchronization. A deadlock is a reachable state of the Process that contains a token on some Sequence Flow that cannot be removed in any possible future. A lack of synchronization is a reachable state of the Process where there is more than one token on some Sequence Flow. For further explanation of these terms, we refer to the literature.

To define the structure of BPMN Processes, we introduce the following concepts and terminology. The Gateways and the Sequence Flows of the BPMN orchestration Process form a directed graph. A block of the diagram is a connected sub-graph that is connected to the rest of the graph only through exactly two Sequence Flows: exactly one Sequence Flow entering the block and exactly one Sequence Flow leaving the block. A block hierarchy for a Process model is a set of blocks of the Process model in which each pair of blocks is either nested or disjoint and which contains the maximal block (i.e., the whole Process model) A block that is nested in another block B is also called a subblock of B (cf. Figure 14.1). Each block of the block hierarchy of a given BPMN orchestration Process has a certain structure (or pattern) that provides the basis for defining the BPEL mapping.
The following sub clauses define a syntactical BPEL mapping prescribing the resulting BPEL model at the syntactical level, and a semantic BPEL mapping prescribing the resulting BPEL model in terms of its observable behavior. The syntactical BPEL mapping is defined for a subset of BPMN models based on certain patterns of BPMN blocks, whereas the semantical BPEL mapping (which extends the syntactical mapping) does not enforce block patterns, allowing for the mapping of a larger class of BPMN models without prescribing the exact syntactical representation in BPEL.

### 14.2 Basic BPMN-BPEL Mapping

This sub clause introduces a partial mapping function from BPMN orchestration Process models to WS-BPEL executable Process models by recursively defining the mapping for elementary BPMN constructs such as Tasks and Events, and for blocks following the patterns described here. Mapping a BPMN block to WS-BPEL includes mapping all of its associated attributes. The observable behavior of a WS-BPEL process resulting from a BPEL mapping is the same as that of the original BPMN orchestration Process.

We use the notation [BPMN construct] to denote the WS-BPEL construct resulting from mapping the BPMN construct. Examples are

- [ServiceTask] = Invoke Activity

which says that a BPMN Service Task is mapped to a WS-BPEL Invoke Activity, or
which says that the data-based exclusive choice controlled by the two predicates p1 and p2, containing the three BPMN blocks G1, G2, and G3 is mapped to the WS-BPEL on the right hand side, which recursively uses the mappings of those predicates and those sub-graphs. Note that we use the “waved rectangle” symbol throughout this sub clause to denote BPMN blocks.

### 14.2.1 Process

The following figure describes the mapping of a Process, represented by its defining Collaboration, to WS-BPEL. The process itself is described by a contained graph G of flow elements to WS-BPEL. The Process interacts with Participants Q1…Qn via Conversations C1…Cm:

The partner links of the corresponding WS-BPEL process are derived from the set of interfaces associated with each participant. Each interface of the Participant containing the Process P itself is mapped to a WS-BPEL partner link with a “myRole” specification, each interface of each other Participant Qi is mapped to a WS-BPEL partner link with a “partnerRole” specification.
The variables of the corresponding WS-BPEL process are derived from the set “{dataObjects}” of all Data Objects occurring within G, united with the set “{properties}” of all properties occurring within G, without Data Objects or properties contained in nested Sub-Processes. See “Handling Data” on page 465 for more details of this mapping.

The correlation sets of the corresponding WS-BPEL process are derived from the CorrelationKeys of the set of Conversations C1…Cn (see page 452 for more details of this mapping).

14.2.2 Activities

Common Activity Mappings

The following table displays a set of mappings of general BPMN Activity attributes to WS-BPEL activity attributes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Mapping to WS-BPEL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>The name attribute of a BPMN activity is mapped to the name attribute of a WS-BPEL activity by removing all characters not allowed in an XML NCName, and ensuring uniqueness by adding an appropriate suffix. In the subsequent diagrams, this mapping is represented as [name].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Task Mappings

The following sub clauses contain the mappings of the variations of a Task to WS-BPEL.

Service Task

The following figure shows the mapping of a Service Task to WS-BPEL.

The partner link associated with the WS-BPEL invoke is derived from both the participant Q that the Service Task is connected to by Message Flows, and from the interface referenced by the operation of the Service Task.

Receive Task

The following figure shows the mapping of a Receive Task to WS-BPEL.
The partner link associated with the WS-BPEL receive is derived from the interface referenced by the operation of the Receive Task.

**Send Task**

The following figure shows the mapping of a Send Task to WS-BPEL.

The partner link associated with the WS-BPEL invoke is derived from both the participant Q that the Send Task is connected to by a Message Flow, and from the interface referenced by the operation of the Send Task.

**Abstract Task**

The following figure shows the mapping of an Abstract Task to WS-BPEL.

**Service Package**

**Message**

For Messages with a scalar data item definition typed by an XML schema definition, the following figure shows the mapping to WS-BPEL, using WSDL 1.1.
The top-level child elements of the XML schema defining the structure of the BPMN Message are mapped to the WSDL’s message’s parts.

**Interface and Operation**

The following figure shows the mapping of a BPMN interface with its operations to WS-BPEL, using WSDL 1.1.

**Conversations and Correlation**

For those BPMN nodes sending or receiving Messages (i.e., Message Events, Service, send or Receive Tasks) that have an associated key-based Correlation Key, the mapping of that key-based Correlation Key is as follows.
The `messageType` of the BPEL property alias is appropriately derived from the `itemDefinition` of the `Message` referenced by the BPMN `Message` key `Expression`. The name of the `Message` part is derived from the `Message` key `Expression`. The `Message` key `Expression` itself is transformed into an `Expression` relative to that part.

The mapping of Activities with an associated key-based Correlation Key is extended to reference the above BPEL correlation set in the corresponding BPEL `correlations` element. The following figure shows that mapping in the case of a Service Task with an associated key-based Correlation Key.

```
<invoke name="[Task-name]"
  partnerLink="[Q, Task-operation-interface]"
  portType="[Task-operation-interface]"
  operation="[Task-operation]">
  <correlations>
    <correlation set="[Task-messageFlow-conversation-correlationKey]"
      initiate="[initialInConversation? 'join':'no']"/>
  </correlations>
</invoke>
```

The initiate attribute of the BPEL correlation element is set depending on whether or not the associated `Message Flow` initiates the associated Conversations, or participates in an already existing Conversation. If there are multiple `CorrelationKeys` associated with the Conversation, multiple `correlation` elements are used.

**Sub-Process Mappings**

The following table displays the mapping of an embedded Sub-Process with Adhoc="False" to a WS-BPEL scope. (This extends the mappings that are defined for all Activities--see page 448).

The following figure shows the mapping of a BPMN Sub-Process without an Event Sub-Process.
The following figure shows the mapping of a BPMN Sub-Process with an Event Sub-Process. (Event Sub-Processes could also be added to a top-level Process, in which case their mapping extends correspondingly.)

![Diagram of mapping BPMN Sub-Process to Event Sub-Process]

Note that in case of multiple Event Sub-Processes, there would be multiple WS-BPEL handlers.

**Mapping of Event Sub-Processes**

Note that if a Sub-Process contains multiple Event Sub-Processes, all become handlers of the associated WS-BPEL scope, ordered and grouped as specified by WS-BPEL.

Non-interrupting Message Event Sub-Processes are mapped to WS-BPEL event handlers as follows.

![Diagram of mapping Message Event to WS-BPEL event handler]

Timer Event Sub-Processes are mapped to WS-BPEL event handlers as follows.

![Diagram of mapping Timer Event to WS-BPEL event handler]

Error Event Sub-Processes are mapped to WS-BPEL fault handlers as follows.

![Diagram of mapping Error Event to WS-BPEL fault handler]
A **Compensation Event Sub-Process** is mapped to a WS-BPEL compensation handler as follows.

![Diagram of Compensation Event Sub-Process]

### Activity Loop Mapping

Standard **loops** with a testTime attribute “Before” or “After” execution of the **Activity** map to WS-BPEL **while** and **repeatUntil** activities in a straight-forward manner. When the **LoopMaximum** attribute is used, additional activities are used to maintain a loop counter.

**Multi-instance Activities** map to WS-BPEL **forEach** activities in a straight-forward manner.

### Standard Loops

The mappings for standard **loops** to WS-BPEL are described in the following.

A standard **loop** with testTime= “Before” maps to WS-BPEL as follows, where \( p \) denotes the **loop** condition.

![Diagram of Standard Loop (Before)]

A standard **loop** with testTime= “After” maps as follows, where \( p \) denotes the **loop** condition.

![Diagram of Standard Loop (After)]

### Dealing with LoopMaximum

When the **LoopMaximum** attribute is specified for an **Activity**, the **loop** requires additional set up for maintaining a counter.
A standard loop with testTime="Before" and a LoopMaximum attribute maps to WS-BPEL as follows (again, \( p \) denotes the loopCondition).

\[
\text{Task} = \text{assign} \text{[counter]} = \text{from literal } 0 \text{ to \[counter\]} \text{ as copy from expression } \$\text{[counter]}+1 \text{ to \[counter\]} \text{ while condition } p \text{ and } \text{not } \[counter\] \geq \text{LoopsMaximum}\] \]

(The notation \([\text{counter}]\) denotes the unique name of a variable used to hold the counter value; the actual name is immaterial.)

A standard loop with testTime="After" and a LoopsMaximum attribute maps as follows:

\[
\text{Task} = \text{assign} \text{[counter]} = \text{from literal } 0 \text{ to \[counter\]} \text{ as copy from expression } \$\text{[counter]}+1 \text{ to \[counter\]} \text{ repeatUntil condition } \text{not } p \text{ or } \text{not } \[counter\] \geq \text{LoopsMaximum}\] \]
(The notation \([\text{counter}]\) denotes the unique name of a variable used to hold the counter value; the actual name is immaterial.)

**Multi-Instance Activities**

A **BPMN Multi-Instance Task** with a `multiInstanceFlowCondition` of “All” is mapped to WS-BPEL as follows.

```xml
<variable name="[counter]" type="xsd:integer"/>
...
<forEach counterName="[counter]" parallel="[isSequential? 'no':'yes']">
  <startCounterValue>1</startCounterValue>
  <finalCounterValue>[condition]</finalCounterValue>
  <scope>
    [Task]
  </scope>
</forEach>
```

(The notation \([\text{counter}]\) denotes the unique name of a variable used to hold the counter value; the actual name is immaterial.)

**14.2.3 Events**

**Start Event Mappings**

The following sub clauses detail the mapping of **Start Events** to WS-BPEL.

**Message Start Events**

A **Message Start Event** is mapped to WS-BPEL as shown in the following figure.

```xml
<receive name="[e-name]"
  createInstance="yes"
  partnerLink="[e-operation-interface]"
  portType="[e-operation-interface]"
  operation="[e-operation]">
</receive>
```

The partner link associated with the WS-BPEL receive is derived from the interface referenced by the operation of the **Message Start Event**.

**Error Start Events**

An **Error Start Event** can only occur in **Event Sub-Processes**. This mapping is described on page 455.

**Compensation Start Events**

A **Compensation Start Event** can only occur in **Event Sub-Processes**. This mapping is described on page 455.
Intermediate Event Mappings (Non-boundary)

The following sub clauses detail the mapping of intermediate non-boundary Events to WS-BPEL.

Message Intermediate Events (Non-boundary)

A Message Intermediate Event can either be used in normal control flow, similar to a Send or Receive Task (for throw or catch Message Intermediate Events, respectively), or it can be used in an Event Gateway. The latter is described in more detail in “Gateways and Sequence Flows” on page 461.

The following figure describes the mapping of Message Intermediate Events to WS-BPEL.

The partner link associated with the WS-BPEL receive is derived from the interface referenced by the operation of the Message Intermediate Event.

Timer Intermediate Events (Non-boundary)

A Timer Intermediate Event can either be used in normal control flow, or it can be used in an Event Gateway. The latter is described in more detail in “Gateways and Sequence Flows” on page 461.

The following figure describes the mapping of a Timer Intermediate Event to WS-BPEL – note that one of the mappings shown is chosen depending on whether the Timer Event’s TimeCycle or TimeDate attribute is used.

Compensation Intermediate Events (Non-boundary)

A Compensation Intermediate Event with its waitForCompletion property set to true, that is used within an Event Sub-Process triggered through an error or through compensation, is mapped to WS-BPEL as follows.
The first mapping is used if the Compensation Event does not reference an Activity, the second mapping is used otherwise.

**End Event Mappings**

The following sub clauses detail the mapping of End Events to WS-BPEL.

**None End Events**

A “none” End Event marking the end of a Process is mapped to WS-BPEL as shown in the following figure.

```xml
<empty name="[e-name]"/>
```

**Message End Events**

A Message Start Event is mapped to WS-BPEL as shown in the following figure.

```xml
<invoke name="[e-name]"
  partnerLink="[Q, e-operation-interface]"
  portType="[e-operation-interface]"
  operation="[e-operation]"/>
```

The partner link associated with the WS-BPEL invoke is derived from both the participant Q that the Message Intermediate Event is connected to by a Message Flow, and from the interface referenced by the operation of the Message Intermediate Event.

**Error End Events**

An Error End Event is mapped to WS-BPEL as shown in the following figure.

```xml
<compensate/>
or
<compensateScope target="[referencedActivity]"/>
```

Every Interchange Event is mapped to WS-BPEL as shown in the following figure.
Compensation End Events

A Compensation End Event with its waitForCompletion property set to true, that is used within an Event Sub-Process triggered through an error or through compensation, is mapped to WS-BPEL as follows.

\[
\text{Compensation Event} = \begin{cases} 
\text{<throw faultName="[e-name]">} \\
\text{</throw>}
\end{cases}
\]

The first mapping is used if the Compensation Event does not reference an Activity, the second mapping is used otherwise.

Terminate End Events

A Terminate End Event is mapped to WS-BPEL as shown in the following figure.

\[
\text{Terminate Event} = \begin{cases} 
\text{<compensate/> or} \\
\text{<compensateScope target="[referencedActivity]"/>}
\end{cases}
\]

Boundary Intermediate Events

Message Boundary Events

A BPMN Activity with a non-interrupting Message boundary Event is mapped to a WS-BPEL scope with an event handler as follows.
The partner link associated with the WS-BPEL onEvent is derived from the interface referenced by the operation of the boundary *Message Event*.

The same mapping applies to a non-interrupting boundary *Timer Event*, using a WS-BPEL onAlarm handler instead.

**Error Boundary Events**

A *BPMN Activity* with a boundary *Error Event* according to the following pattern is mapped as shown.

```
<scope>
  <eventHandlers>
    <onEvent partnerLink="[Q, e-operation-interface]"
      operation="[e-operation]">
      <scope>[G]</scope>
    </onEvent>
  </eventHandlers>
  [Activity]
</scope>
```

```
<flow>
  <links>
    <link name="[l1]"/>
    ...
    <link name="[l4]"/>
  </links>
  <scope>
    <sources><source linkName="[l1]"/></sources>
    <faultHandlers>
      <catch faultName="[e-error]">
        <empty>
          <sources><source linkName="[l3]"/></sources>
        </empty>
      </catch>
    </faultHandlers>
    [Activity]
  </scope>
  <flow>
    <targets><target linkName="[l1]"/></targets>
    <sources><source linkName="[l2]"/></sources>
    [G1]
  </flow>
  <flow>
    <targets><target linkName="[l3]"/></targets>
    <sources><source linkName="[l4]"/></sources>
    [G2]
  </flow>
  <empty>
    <sources><source linkName="[l2]"/>
    <source linkName="[l4]"/></sources>
  </empty>
</flow>
```
Note that the case where the error handling path doesn’t join the main control flow again, is still mapped using this pattern, by applying the following model equivalence.

**Compensation Boundary Events**

A BPMN Activity with a boundary Compensation Event is similarly mapped as shown.

```xml
<scope name="[Activity-name]">
  <compensationHandler>
    [G]
  </compensationHandler>
  [Activity]
</scope>
```

**Multiple Boundary Events, and Boundary Events with Loops**

If there are multiple boundary Events for an Activity, their WS-BPEL mappings are super-imposed on the single WS-BPEL scope wrapping the mapping of the Activity.

When the Activity is a standard loop or a multi-instance and has one or more boundary Events, the WS-BPEL loop resulting from mapping the BPMN loop is nested inside the WS-BPEL scope resulting from mapping the BPMN boundary Events.

The following example shows that mapping for a Sub-Process with a nested Event Sub-Process that has a standard loop with TestTime="Before," a boundary Error Intermediate Event, and a boundary Compensation Intermediate Event.
14.2.4 Gateways and Sequence Flows

The mapping of BPMN Gateways and Sequence Flows is described using BPMN blocks following particular patterns.

Exclusive (Data-based) Decision Pattern

An exclusive data-based decision is mapped as follows.
While this figure shows three branches, the pattern is generalized to $n$ branches in an obvious manner.

**Exclusive (Event-based) Decision Pattern**

An Event Gateway is mapped as follows.

While this figure shows three branches with one Message Intermediate Event, one Receive Task and one Timer Intermediate Event, the pattern is generalized to $n$ branches with any combination of the former in an obvious manner. The handling of Participants (BPEL partnerLinks), Event (operation) and timer details is as specified for Message Intermediate Events, Receive Tasks, and Timer Intermediate Events, respectively. The data flow and associated variables (not shown) are handled as for Receive Tasks/Message Intermediate Events.

**Inclusive Decision Pattern**

An inclusive decision pattern without an otherwise gate is mapped as follows:
While this figure shows three branches, the pattern is generalized to \( n \) branches in an obvious manner.

Note that link names in WS-BPEL MUST follow the rules of an XML NCName. Thus, the mapping of the BPMN Sequence Flow name attribute MUST appropriately canonicalize that name, possibly ensuring uniqueness, e.g., by appending a unique suffix. This is capture by the [linkName] notation.
Parallel Pattern

A parallel fork-join pattern is mapped as follows.

Sequence Pattern

A BPMN block consisting of a series of Activities connected via (unconditional) Sequence Flows is mapped to a WS-BPEL sequence:

Structured Loop Patterns

A BPMN block consisting of a structured loop of the following pattern is mapped to a WS-BPEL while.

A BPMN block consisting of a structured loop of the following pattern is mapped to a WS-BPEL repeatUntil.
Handling Loops in Sequence Flows

Loops are created when the flow of the Process moves from a downstream object to an upstream object. There are two types of loops that are WS-BPEL mappable: while loops and repeat loops.

A while loop has the following structure in BPMN and is mapped as shown:

```xml
<while>
  <condition>[p]</condition>
  [G]
</while>
```

A repeat loop has the following structure in BPMN and is mapped as shown:

```xml
<repeatUntil>
  [G]
  <condition>[not p]</condition>
  </repeatUntil>
```

14.2.5 Handling Data

Data Objects

BPMN Data Objects are mapped to WS-BPEL variables. The itemDefinition of the Data Object determines the XSD type of that variable.

Data Objects occur in the context of a Process or Sub-Process. For the associated WS-BPEL process or WS-BPEL scope, a variable is added for each Data Object in the corresponding WS-BPEL variables sub clause, as follows:
Properties

BPMN properties can be contained in a Process, Activity, or an Event, here named the “container” of the property. A BPMN property is mapped to a WS-BPEL variable. Its name is derived from the name of its container and the name of the property. Note that in the case of different containers with the same name and a contained property of the same name, the mapping to WS-BPEL ensures the names of the associated WS-BPEL variables are unique. The itemDefinition of the property determines the XSD type of that variable.

A BPMN Process property is mapped to a WS-BPEL global variable. A BPMN Event property is mapped to a WS-BPEL variable contained in the WS-BPEL scope representing the immediately enclosing Sub-Process of the Event (or a global variable in case the Event is an immediate child of the Process). For a BPMN Activity property, two cases are distinguished: In case of a Sub-Process, the WS-BPEL variable is contained in the WS-BPEL scope representing the Sub-Process. For all other BPMN Activity properties, the WS-BPEL variable is contained in the WS-BPEL scope representing the immediately enclosing Sub-Process of the Activity (or a global variable in case the Activity is an immediate child of the Process).

Input and Output Sets

For a Send Task and a Service Task, the single input set is mapped to a WSDL message defining the input of the associated WS-BPEL activity. The inputs map to the message parts of the WSDL message. For a Receive Task and a Service Task, the single output set is mapped to a WSDL message defining the output of the associated WS-BPEL activity. The outputs map to the message parts of the WSDL message.

The structure of the WSDL message is defined by the itemDefinitions of the data inputs of the input set.
For the data outputs of the output set, the WSDL message looks as follows.

```xml
<outputSet name="oset">
  <dataOutput name="output1">
    <structureDefinition structure="type3"/>
  </dataOutput>
  ...
</outputSet>
```

Data Associations

In this sub clause, we assume that the input set of the Service Task has the same structure as its referenced input Message, and the output set of the Service Task has the same structure as its reference output Message. If this is not the case, assignments are needed, and the mapping is as described in the next sub clause.

Data associations to and from a Service Task are mapped as follows.

```xml
<invoke ... >
  <toParts>
    <toPart part="[dataInput1-name]">
      fromVariable="[D1-name]"
    </toPart>
    <toPart part="[dataInput2-name]">
      fromVariable="[D2-name]"
    </toPart>
  </toParts>

  <fromParts>
    <fromPart part="[dataOutput1-name]">
      fromVariable="[D3-name]"
    </fromPart>
    <fromPart part="[dataOutput2-name]">
      fromVariable="[D4-name]"
    </fromPart>
  </fromParts>
</invoke>
```

Data associations from a Receive Task are mapped as follows.
Data associations to a **Send Task** are mapped as follows.

**Expressions**

**BPMN** Expressions specified using XPath (e.g., a condition Expression of a **Sequence Flow**, or a timer cycle Expression of a **Timer Intermediate Event**) are used as specified in **BPMN**, rewriting access to **BPMN** context to refer to the mapped BPEL context.

The **BPMN** XPath functions for accessing context from the perspective of the current **Process** are mapped to BPEL XPath functions for context access as shown in the following table. This is possible because the arguments MUST be literal strings.

**Table 14.2 – Expressions mapping to WS-BPEL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BPMN context access</th>
<th>BPEL context access</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>getDataobject(dataObjectName)</code></td>
<td><code>$(dataObjectName)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>getProcessProperty(propertyName)</code></td>
<td><code>$(processName).propertyName</code> where the right processName is statistically derived.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>getActivityProperty(activityName, propertyName)</code></td>
<td><code>$(activityName.propertyName)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>getEventProperty(eventName, propertyName)</code></td>
<td><code>$(eventName.propertyName)</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Assignments

For a Service Task with assignments, the WS-BPEL mapping results in a sequence of an assign activity, an invoke activity and another assign activity. The first assign deals with creating the service request Message from the data inputs of the Task, the second assign deals with creating the data outputs of the Task from the service response Message.

14.3 Extended BPMN-BPEL Mapping

Additional sound BPMN Process models whose block hierarchy contains blocks that have not been addressed in the previous sub clause can be mapped to WS-BPEL. For such BPMN Process models, in many cases there is no preferred single mapping of a particular block, but rather, multiple WS-BPEL patterns are possible to map that block to. Also, additional BPMN constructs can be mapped by using capabilities not available at the time of producing this specification, such as the upcoming OASIS BPEL4People standard to map BPMN User Tasks, or other WS-BPEL extensions.

Rather than describing or even mandating the mapping of such BPMN blocks, this specification allows for a semantic mapping of a BPMN Process model to an executable WS-BPEL process: The observable behavior of the target WS-BPEL process MUST match the operational semantics of the mapped BPMN Process. Also, the mappings described in sub clause 15.1 SHOULD be used where applicable.

14.3.1 End Events

End Events can be combined with other BPMN objects to complete the merging or joining of the paths of a WSBPEL structured element (see Figure 7.3).

![Figure 14.2 – An example of distributed token recombination](image)

14.3.2 Loop/Switch Combinations From a Gateway

This type of loop is created by a Gateway that has three or more outgoing Sequence Flows. One Sequence Flow loops back upstream while the others continue downstream (see Figure 14.3). Note that there might be intervening Activities prior to when the Sequence Flow loops back upstream.
• This maps to both a WSBPEL while and a switch. Both activities will be placed within a sequence, with the while preceding the switch.

• For the while:
  • The Condition for the Sequence Flow that loops back upstream will map to the condition of the while.
  • All the Activities that span the distance between where the loop starts and where it ends, will be mapped and placed within the Activity for the while, usually within a sequence.

• For the switch:
  • For each additional outgoing Sequence Flows there will be a case for the switch.

![Diagram](image)

Figure 14.3 – An example of a loop from a decision with more than two alternative paths

14.3.3 Interleaved Loops

This is a situation where there are at least two loops involved and they are not nested (see Figure 14.4). Multiple looping situations can map, as described above, if they are in a sequence or are fully nested (e.g., one while inside another while). However, if the loops overlap in a non-nested fashion, as shown in the figure, then the structured element while cannot be used to handle the situation. Also, since a flow is acyclic, it cannot handle the behavior either.
To handle this type of behavior, parts of the WSBPEL process will have to be separated into one or more derived processes that are spawned from the main process and will also spawn or call each other (note that the examples below are using a spawning technique). Through this mechanism, the linear and structured elements of WSBPEL can provide the same behavior that is shown through a set of cycles in a single BPMN diagram. To do this:

- The looping section of the Process, where the loops first merge back (upstream) into the flow until all the paths have merged back to Normal Flow, SHALL be separated from the main WSBPEL process into a set of derived processes that will spawn each other until all the looping conditions are satisfied.
- The section of the process that is removed will be replaced by a (one-way) invoke to spawn the derived process, followed by a receive to accept the message that the looping sections have completed and the main process can continue (see Figure 14.5).
- The name of the invoke will be in the form of:
  - “Spawn_[(loop target)activity.Name]_Derived_Process”
- The name of the receive will be in the form of:
  - [(loop target)activity.Name]_Derived_Process_Completed”

Figure 14.4 – An example of interleaved loops

To handle this type of behavior, parts of the WSBPEL process will have to be separated into one or more derived processes that are spawned from the main process and will also spawn or call each other (note that the examples below are using a spawning technique). Through this mechanism, the linear and structured elements of WSBPEL can provide the same behavior that is shown through a set of cycles in a single BPMN diagram. To do this:

- The looping section of the Process, where the loops first merge back (upstream) into the flow until all the paths have merged back to Normal Flow, SHALL be separated from the main WSBPEL process into a set of derived processes that will spawn each other until all the looping conditions are satisfied.
- The section of the process that is removed will be replaced by a (one-way) invoke to spawn the derived process, followed by a receive to accept the message that the looping sections have completed and the main process can continue (see Figure 14.5).
- The name of the invoke will be in the form of:
  - “Spawn_[(loop target)activity.Name]_Derived_Process”
- The name of the receive will be in the form of:
  - [(loop target)activity.Name]_Derived_Process_Completed”
For each location in the Process where a Sequence Flow connects upstream, there will be a separate derived WSBPEL process.

- The name of the derived process will be in the form of:
  - “[(loop target)activity.Name] _Derived_Process”

- All Gateways in this sub clause will be mapped to switch elements, instead of while elements (see Figure below).

- Each time there is a Sequence Flow that loops back upstream, the Activity for the switch case will be a (one-way) invoke that will spawn the appropriate derived process, even if the invoke spawns the same process again.

- The name of the invoke will be the same as the one described above.

- At the end of the derived process a (one-way) invoke will be used to signal the main process that all the derived activities have completed and the main process can continue.

- The name of the invoke will be in the form of:
  - “[(loop target)activity.Name] _Derived_Process_Completed”

Figure 14.5 – An example of the WSBPEL pattern for substituting for the derived Process

Figure 14.6 – An example of a WSBPEL pattern for the derived Process
14.3.4 Infinite Loops

This type of loop is created by a Sequence Flow that loops back without an intervening Gateway to create alternative paths (see Figure 14.7). While this can be a modeling error most of the time, there can be situations where this type of loop is desired, especially if it is placed within a larger Activity that will eventually be interrupted.

- This will map to a while activity.
- The condition of the while will be set to an Expression that will never evaluate to true, such as condition “1 = 0.”
- All the activities that span the distance between where the loop starts and where it ends, will be mapped and placed within the activity for the while, usually within a sequence.

Figure 14.7 – An example: An infinite loop

14.3.5 BPMN Elements that Span Multiple WSBPEL Sub-Elements

Figure 14.8 illustrates how BPMN objects can exist in two separate sub-elements of a WSBPEL structured element at the same time. Since BPMN allows free form connections of Activities and Sequence Flows, it is possible that two (or more) Sequence Flows will merge before all the Sequence Flows that map to a WSBPEL structure element have merged. The sub-elements of a WSBPEL structured elements are also self-contained and there is no cross sub-element flow. For example, the cases of a switch cannot interact; that is, they cannot share activities. Thus, one BPMN Activity will need to appear in two (or more) WSBPEL structured elements. There are two possible mechanisms to deal with the situation:

- First, the activities are simply duplicated in all appropriate WSBPEL elements.
- Second, the activities that need to be duplicated can be removed from the main Process and placed in a derived process that is called (invoked) from all locations in the WSBPEL elements as needed.

  - The name of the derived process will be in the form of:
    - “[(target)object.Name]_Derived_Process”
Figure 14.8 displays this issue with an example. In that example, two **Sequence Flows** merge into the “Include History of Transactions” **Task**. However, the Decision that precedes the **Task** has three alternatives. Thus, the Decision maps to a WSBPEL **switch** with three **cases**. The three **cases** are not closed until the “Include Standard Text” **Task**, downstream. This means that the “Include History of Transactions” **Task** will actually appear in two of the three **cases** of the **switch**.

**Note** – the use of a WSBPEL **flow** will be able to handle the behavior without duplicating activities, but a **flow** will not always be available for use in these situations, particularly if a WSBPEL **pick** is requested.

![Diagram of WSBPEL structured element](image)

**Figure 14.8 – An example: Activity that spans two paths of a WSBPEL structured element**
15 Exchange Formats

15.1 Interchanging Incomplete Models

In practice, it is common for models to be interchanged before they are complete. This occurs frequently when doing iterative modeling, where one user (such as a subject matter expert or business person) first defines a high-level model, and then passes it on to another user to be completed and refined.

Such “incomplete” models are ones in which all of the mandatory attributes have not yet been filled in, or the cardinality lowerbound of attributes and associations has not been satisfied.

XMI allows for the interchange of such incomplete models. In BPMN, we extend this capability to interchange of XML files based on the BPMN XSD. In such XML files, implementers are expected to support this interchange by:

- Disregarding missing attributes that are marked as ‘required’ in the XSD.
- Reducing the lower bound of elements with ‘minOccurs’ greater than 0.

15.2 Machine Readable Files

BPMN 2.0.1 machine readable files, including XSD, XMI, and XSLT files can be found in OMG Document dtc/2010-05-04, which is a zip file containing all the files:

- XSD files are found under the XSD folder of the zip file, and the main file is XSD/BPMN20.xsd.
- XMI files are found under the XMI folder of the zip file, and the main file is XSD/BPMN20.cmof.
- XSLT files are found under the XSLT folder of the zip file.

15.3 XSD

15.3.1 Document Structure

A domain-specific set of model elements is interchanged in one or more BPMN files. The root element of each file MUST be <bpmn:definitions>. The set of files MUST be self-contained, i.e., all definitions that are used in a file MUST be imported directly or indirectly using the <bpmn:import> element.

Each file MUST declare a “targetNamespace” that MAY differ between multiple files of one model.

BPMN files MAY import non-BPMN files (such as XSDs and WSDLs) if the contained elements use external definitions.

Example:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
    targetNamespace="sample1.main" xmlns:main="sample1.main" xmlns:s1="sample1.semantic1">
    <bpmn:import location="semantic1.bpmn" namespace="sample1.semantic1"
        importType="http://www.omg.org/spec/BPMN/20100524/MODEL" />
    <bpmn:import location="diagram1.bpmn" namespace="sample1.diagram1"
        importType="http://www.omg.org/spec/BPMN/20100524/MODEL" />
</bpmn:definitions>
```
15.3.2 References within the BPMN XSD

All BPMN elements contain IDs and within the BPMN XSD, references to elements are expressed via these IDs. The XSD IDREF type is the traditional mechanism for referencing by IDs, however it can only reference an element within the same file. The BPMN XSD supports referencing by ID, across files, by utilizing QNames. A QName consists of two parts: an optional namespace prefix and a local part. When used to reference a BPMN element, the local part is expected to be the ID of the element.

For example, consider the following Process

```xml
<process name="Patient Handling" id="Patient_Handling_Process_ID1"/> ...
</process>
```

When this Process is referenced from another file, the reference would take the following form:

```xml
processRef="process_ns:Patient_Handling_Process_ID1"
```

where “process_ns” is the namespace prefix associated with the process namespace upon import, and “Patient_Handling_Process_ID1” is the value of the id attribute for the Process.
The BPMN XSD utilizes IDREFs wherever possible and resorts to QName only when references can span files. In both situations however, the reference is still based on IDs.

15.4 XMI

XMI allows the use of tags to tailor the documents that are produced using XMI. The following tags have been explicitly set for serializing BPMN 2.0 models; the others are left at their default values:

- tag nsURI set to "http://www.omg.org/spec/BPMN/20100524/XMI"
- tag nsPrefix set to “bpmn”

The BPMN 2.0 XMI for the interchange of diagram information will be published once the OMG Diagram Definition RFP process has produced a specification that is sufficiently complete such that a future BPMN RFP/TF/RTF can align the BPMN specification with the Diagram Definition specification.

15.5 XSLT Transformation between XSD and XMI

- The XSLT transformation from XSD to XMI is in the file XSLT/BPMN20-ToXMI.xslt
- The XSLT transformation from XMI to XSD is in the file XSLT/BPMN20-FromXMI.xslt
Annex A
(informative)

Changes from v1.2

A.1 Changes from BPMN, v1.2

There have been notational and technical changes to the BPMN International Standard.

The major notational changes include:

- The addition of a Choreography diagram
- The addition of a Conversation diagram
- Non-interrupting Events for a Process
- Event Sub-Processes for a Process

The major technical changes include:

- A formal metamodel as shown through the class diagram figures
- Interchange formats for abstract syntax model interchange in both XMI and XSD
- Interchange formats for diagram interchange in both XMI and XSD
- XSLT transformations between the XMI and XSD formats

Other technical changes include:

- Reference Tasks are removed. These provided reusability within a single diagram, as compared to GlobalTasks, which are resuable across multiple diagrams. GlobalTasks can be used instead of Reference Tasks, to simplify the language and implementations.
Annex B
(non-normative)

Diagram Interchange

B.1 Scope

This annex provides documentation for a relevant subset of an alpha version of a Diagram Definition (DD) specification that is being referenced by this International Standard (in Clause 13 - BPMN DI). The (complete version of the) DD specification is still going through a separate submission/approval process and once finalized and adopted, a future revision of this specification may replace this annex by a reference to that adopted DD specification.

The Diagram Definition specification provides a basis for modeling and interchanging graphical notations, specifically node and edge style diagrams as found in BPMN, UML and SysML, for example, where the notations are tied to abstract language syntaxes defined with MOF. The specification addresses the requirements in the Diagram Definition RFP (ad/2007-09-02).

B.2 Architecture

The DD architecture distinguishes two kinds of graphical information, depending on whether language users have control over it. Graphics that users have control over, such as position of nodes and line routing points, are captured for interchange between tools. Graphics that users do not have control over, such as shape and line styles defined by language standards are not interchanged because they are the same in all diagrams conforming to the language. The DD architecture has two models to enable specification of these two kinds of graphical information, Diagram Interchange (DI) and Diagram Graphics (DG). (both models share common elements from a Diagram Common (DC) model). The DI and DG models are shown in Figure B.1 by bold outlined boxes on the left and right, respectively.

The DD architecture expects language specification to define mappings between interchanged and non-interchanged graphical information, but does not restrict how it is done. This is shown in Figure B.1 by a shaded box labeled “CS Mapping Specification” in the middle section. The DD specification gives examples of mappings in QVT, but does not define or recommend any particular mapping language. The overall architecture resembles typical model-view-controllers, which separate visual rendering from underlying models, and provide a way to keep visuals and models consistent.

The first few steps of using the DD architecture are:

1. An abstract language syntax is defined separately from DD by instantiating MOF (abstract syntaxes are sometimes called “metamodels”). This is shown in Figure B.1 by a shaded box labeled “AS” at the far middle left (the “M” levels in the figure are described in the UML 2 Infrastructure (formal/2009-02-04)).

2. Language users model their applications by instantiating elements of abstract syntax, usually through tooling for the language. This is shown in Figure B.1 by the dashed arrow on the far lower left linked to a box labeled “Model.”

3. Users typically see graphical depictions of their models in tools. This is shown in Figure B.1 by a box on the lower right labeled “Graphics.”

Users expect their graphics to appear again in other tools after models are interchanged. The DD architecture enables this in two parts, one for graphical information that is interchanged, and another for graphical information that is not. The interchanged information is captured in the next few steps:
4. The portion of graphics that users have control over is captured for interchange, such as node position and line routing points. This is shown in Figure B.1 by a box labeled “Diagram” on the lower left. This information is linked to user models (instances of abstract syntax), as shown by the arrow to the Model box.

5. User diagram interchange information is instantiated from a model defined along with the abstract syntax. This is shown in Figure B.1 by a shaded box labeled “AS DI” on the left. Elements of this model are linked to elements of abstract syntax, specifying which kinds of diagram interchange information depict which kinds of user model elements. Diagram interchange models would typically be defined by the same community that defines the abstract syntax, as part of the overall language specification.

6. Elements of language-specific diagram interchange models (AS DI) specialize elements of the Diagram Interchange (DI), which is a model provided by this specification for typically needed diagram interchange information, as node position and line routing points. This is shown in Figure B.1 by the bold box labeled “DI” on the left, with specialization shown with a hollow headed arrow (specialization here is MOF generalization and property subsetting and redefinition, or XSD subclassing, where DI has the general elements, and AS DI has the specific elements). DI elements cannot be instantiated to capture diagram interchange information by themselves, they are almost entirely abstract. This specification provides normative CMOF and XSD artifacts for DI.

The final part of using the DD architecture captures graphical information that is not interchanged:

7. Language specifications specify mappings from their diagram interchange models (instances of AS DI) to instances of Diagram Graphics (DG), which is a model provided by this specification for typically needed graphical information that is not interchanged, such as shape and line styles. This shown in Figure B.1 by the box labeled “DG” on the right, and by the box labeled “CS Mapping Specification” in the middle section. The arrow at the bottom of the middle section illustrates mappings being carried out according to the specification above it, producing a model of diagram visuals, or directly rendering the visuals on a display. Languages specifying this mapping reduce ambiguity and non uniformity in how their abstract syntax appears visually. The DG model is not expected to be specialized, enabling implementations to render instances of DG elements for all applications of the DD architecture. This specification provides normative CMOF and XSD artifacts for DG.

In the BPMN specification, the only realized part of the DD architecture so far is diagram interchange. Hence the only documentation provided by this annex is for the Diagram Interchange (DI) package, in addition to the relevant subset of Diagram Common (DC) package, which captures common data structure definitions. The documentation for the Diagram Graphics (DG) package is not provided here.
B.3 Diagram Common

The Diagram Common (DC) package contains abstractions shared by the Diagram Interchange and the Diagram Graphics packages.

B.3.1 Overview

The Diagram Common (DC) package contains a number of common primitive types as well as structured data types that are used in the definition of the Diagram Interchange (DG) package (see “Diagram Interchange” on page 487). The DC package itself does not depend on other packages. Some of the types defined in this package are defined based on similar ones in other related specifications including Cascading Style Sheets (CSS), Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG), and Office Document Format (ODF).

B.3.2 Abstract Syntax

Figure B.2 – The Primitive Types
B.3.3 Classifier Descriptions

B.3.3.1 Boolean [PrimitiveType]

Boolean is a primitive data type having one of two values: true or false, intended to represent the truth value of logical expressions.

Description

Boolean is used as a type for typed elements that represent logical expressions. There are only two possible values for Boolean:

- true - The Boolean expression is satisfied.
- false - The Boolean expression is not satisfied.

Abstract Syntax

- Figure B.2 The primitive types

B.3.3.2 Bounds [PrimitiveType]

Bounds specifies an area in some (x, y) coordinate system that is enclosed by a bounded element’s top-left point, its width, and its height.

Description

Bounds is used to specify the area of an element in some (x, y) coordinate system. The area is specified with a top-left point, representing the element’s location (distance from the origin in logical units of length), in addition to the element’s width and height (in logical units of length).

Abstract Syntax

- Figure B.3 (Layout Types)
Attributes

- + x : Real [1] = 0
  a real number that represents the x-coordinate of the rectangle.
- + y : Real[1] = 0
  a real number that represents the y-coordinate of the rectangle.
- + width : Real [1]
  a real number that represents the width of the rectangle.
- + height : Real [1]
  a real number that represents the height of the rectangle.

B.3.3.3 Font [PrimitiveType]
Font specifies the characteristics of a given font through a set of font properties.

Description
Font specifies a set of properties for a given font that is used when rendering text on a diagram.

Abstract Syntax
- Figure B.4 The font type

Attributes

- + name : String[0..1]
  the name of the font (e.g., “Times New Roman,” “Arial,” and “Helvetica”).
- + size : Real [0..1]
  a non-negative real number representing the size of the font (expressed in the used unit of length).
- + isBold : Boolean [0..1]
  whether the font has a bold style.
- + isItalic : Boolean [0..1]
  whether the font has an italic style.
- + isUnderline : Boolean [0..1]
  whether the font has an underline style.
- + isStrikeThrough : Boolean [0..1]
  whether the font has a strike-through style.

B.3.3.4 Integer [PrimitiveType]
Integer is a primitive data type used to represent the mathematical concept of integer.

Description
Integer is used as a type for typed elements whose values are in the infinite set of integer numbers.

**Abstract Syntax**
- Figure B.2 The primitive types

**B.3.3.5 Point [DataType]**
A Point specifies an location in some (x, y) coordinate system.

**Description**
Point is used to specify a location in logical unit of length from the origin of some (x, y) coordinate system. The point (0, 0) is considered to be at the origin of that coordinate system.

**Abstract Syntax**
- Figure B.3 The layout types

**Attributes**
- + x : Real [1] = 0
  - a real number that represents the x-coordinate of the point.
- + y : Real [1] = 0
  - a real number that represents the y-coordinate of the point.

**B.3.3.6 Real [PrimitiveType]**
Real is a primitive data type used to represent the mathematical concept of real.

**Description**
Real is used as a type for typed elements whose values are in the infinite set of real numbers. Note that integer values are also considered real values and as such can be assigned to real-typed elements.

**Abstract Syntax**
- Figure B.2 The primitive types

**B.3.3.7 String [PrimitiveType]**
String is a primitive data type used to represent a sequence of characters in some suitable character set. Character sets may include both ASCII and Unicode characters.

**Description**
String is used as a type for typed elements in the metamodel that have text values. The allowed values for String depend on the semantics of the text in each context. A string value is a sequence of characters surrounded by double quotes (").
B.4 Diagram Interchange

The Diagram Interchange (DI) package contains a model enabling interchange of graphical information that language users have control over, such as position of nodes and line routing points. Language specifications specialize elements of DI to define diagram interchange for a language.

B.4.1 Overview

The Diagram Interchange (DI) package contains a number of types used in the definition of diagram interchange models. The package imports the Diagram Common package (see “Diagram Common” on page 483), as shown in Figure B.5, that contains various relevant data types. The DI package contains mainly abstract types that are to be properly extended and refined by concrete types in domain-specific DI packages. In this sense, the DI package plays the role of a framework that is meant for extension rather than a component that is ready to be used out of the box. The benefit of this design is capture common assumptions in the DI package in order to facilitate the integration between various graphical domains that define their DI packages as extensions.

Diagrams are generally considered depictions of part or all of the elements in a domain-specific model. Therefore, one of the best practices adopted in the design of the DI package and that can be subsumed by the extending domain-specific DI packages is to minimize any redundancy with the depicted model when possible. For example, the text representing the name of a UML class is not defined as part of the UML class shape. This is primarily achieved by the fact that diagram elements reference their counterparts in the domain model as their context model elements instead of duplicating data from them. This design has the side effect of coupling the diagram models with their corresponding domain models, which is generally a common practice by tools. However, the DI package does not enforce this best practice and domain-specific DI packages can decide to have some level of duplication to decouple the models.

Another best practice adopted by the DI package is to avoid defining any data that is not changeable by the user but is rather derivable from the diagram’s model context, like graphical rendering details. For example, the option to render a UML actor as a stick man or as a rectangle can be defined in a DI model as a boolean property to allow a user to choose between them. However, the definition of the actual line segments making up such shapes need not be interchanged in a DI model as it can be defined in the tool itself.

Other decisions that are left to the individual domain-specific DI packages include: whether to allow 1-n vs. m-n relationships between the domain elements and their referencing diagram elements, the formatting properties (styles) that affect the aesthetics of diagrams rather than their semantics that are allowed to be interchanged, and the degree of pragmatic redundancy that is allowed in the DI models to balance their footprint with the ease of their import/export.
B.4.2 Abstract Syntax

Figure B.5 – Dependencies of the DI package

Figure B.6 – Diagram Element

Figure B.7 – Node
Figure B.8 – Edge

Figure B.9 – Diagram

Figure B.10 – Plane
B.4.3 Classifier Descriptions

B.4.3.1 Diagram [Class]

Diagram is a container of a graph of diagram elements depicting all or part of a model.

Description

Diagram represents a depiction of all or part of a MOF model. A model can have one or more diagrams, each of which has a name and a description. A diagram contains the root of a graph of diagram elements that could reference various elements in a model. The root element is defined as a derived union, allowing domain-specific diagrams to specialize the root. All lengths specified by diagram elements are expressed in logical units of lengths. This unit of length would map to a unit of screen resolution (i.e., pixel) when rendering to the screen. To allow for predictable lengths when printing diagrams to paper, a diagram can also specify an intended printing resolution in Unit Per Inch (UPI). For example, a UPI of 300 means that a diagram element that is 300 unit wide would print as 1 inch wide on paper. A diagram can also own
a collection of styles that are referenced by its diagram elements. Styles contain unique combination of formatting properties used by different elements across the diagram. This allows for a large number of diagram elements to reference a small number of unique styles, which would dramatically reduce a diagram’s footprint.

**Abstract Syntax**

- Figure B.9 Diagram

**Attributes**

- + name : String [0..1]
  
  the name of the diagram.

- + documentation : String [0..1]
  
  the documentation of the diagram.

- + resolution : Real [0..1]
  
  the printing resolution of the diagram expressed in Unit Per Inch (UPI).

**Associations**

  
  the root of containment for all diagram elements contained in the diagram.

- ? + /ownedStyle : Style [*] {readOnly, union}
  
  the collection of styles owned by the diagram and referenced by its contained diagram elements.

**B.4.3.2 DiagramElement [Class]**

DiagramElement is the abstract supertype of all elements that can be nested in a diagram. It has two subtypes: Node and Edge.

**Description**

DiagramElement specifies an element that can be owned by a diagram and rendered to graphics. It is an abstract class that is further specialized by classes Node and Edge. A diagram element can either depict (reference) another context model element from an abstract syntax model (like UML or BPMN) or be purely notational (i.e., for enhancing the diagram understanding). In the case of depiction, data from both the diagram element and the model element are used for rendering. For example, the text of the name label of a UML class shape comes from the class, while the color of the label comes from the diagram element. A diagram element can reference a maximum of one model element, which can be any MOF-based element. The model element reference is a derived union and can be specialized in a domain-specific DI metamodel to be of a more concrete type.

Diagram elements can also own other diagram elements in a graph-like hierarchy. The collection of owned diagram elements is defined as a derived union. Domain-specific DI metamodels can specialize this collections to define what other diagram elements can be nested in a given diagram element.

Diagram elements can be specialized in a domain-specific DI metamodel to have domain-specific properties. Some of those properties augment the semantics of diagram elements and are therefore defied on the diagram elements. Other properties are considered formatting properties that influence the visual rendering of diagram elements but do not contribute to their semantics. Examples of such formatting properties include font, fill and stroke properties. Such properties tend to have similar values for diagram elements across the diagram and therefore to reduce the footprint of
diagrams, they are defined in Style elements that are owned by the diagram and referenced by individual diagram elements. For every unique combination of values for the style properties there would be a separate style element that is owned by the diagram. See “DiagramElement [Class]” on page 491 for more details.

There shall always be other properties that some tools wish to interchange that cannot be made normative. These can be interchanged using the extensibility mechanism that is native to the used interchange format (for example, an XSD schema following the XMI mapping would allow extraneous data to be placed on elements within <xmi:extension> tags, while a different XSD schema could allow this through xsd:any and xsd:anyAttribute elements placed in the definitions of extensible complex types).

Abstract Syntax

- Figure B.6 Diagram Element
- Figure B.7 Node
- Figure B.8 Edge
- Figure B.9 Diagram
- Figure B.10 Plane

Specializations

- Node
- Edge

Associations

- + /owningDiagram : Diagram [0..1] {readOnly, union}
  a reference to the diagram that directly owns this diagram element. The reference is only set for the root element in a diagram.
- + /owningElement : DiagramElement [0..1] {readOnly, union}
  a reference to the diagram element that directly owns this diagram element. The reference is set for all elements except the root element in a diagram.
- ? + /ownedElement : DiagramElement [*] {readOnly, union}
  a collection of diagram elements that are owned by this diagram element.
- + /modelElement : Element [0..1] {readOnly, union}
  a reference to a context model element, which can be any MOF-based element, for the diagram element.
- + /style : Style [0..1] {readOnly, union}
  a reference to an optional style containing formatting properties for the diagram element.

B.4.3.3 Edge [Class]

Edge specifies a given edge in a graph of diagram elements. It represents a polyline connection between two graph elements: a source and a target.
Description

Edge represents a given connection between two elements in a diagram, a source element and a target element. An edge often references a relationship element (like a UML generalization or a BPMN message flow) as a context model element. It can also be purely notational, i.e., does not reference any model element. When referencing a relationship model element, the edge’s source and target reference the relationship's source and target respectively as their model elements. If the edge’s source and target can be derived unambiguously from other info (like the edge’s model element or the edge’s class type), they are not explicitly set on the edge to avoid redundancy, otherwise they need to be set. The source and target are defined as derived unions to allow domain-specific DI metamodels to specialize them appropriately.

An edge is often depicted as a line with 2 or more points (i.e., one or more connected line segments) in the coordinate system, called waypoints. The first point typically intersects with the edge’s source, while the last point typically intersects with the edge’s target. Any points in between establish a route for the line to traverse in the diagram.

Abstract Syntax

- Figure B.8 Edge
- Figure B.11 Labeled Edge

Generalizations

- DiagramElement

Specializations

- LabeledEdge

Attributes

- + waypoint : Point [2..*] {ordered, nonunique}
  
a list of two or more points relative to the origin of the coordinate system (e.g., the origin of a containing plane) that specifies the connected line segments of the edge.

2.4.3.3.0.1 Associations

- + /source : DiagramElement [0..1] {readOnly, union}
  
  the edge’s source diagram element, i.e., where the edge starts from. It is optional and needs to be set only if it cannot be unambiguously derived.
- + /target : DiagramElement [0..1] {readOnly, union}
  
  the edge’s target diagram element, i.e., where the edge ends at. It is optional and needs to be set only if it cannot be unambiguously derived.

B.4.3.4 Label [Class]

Label represents a node that is owned by another main diagram element in a plane and that depicts some (usually textual) aspect of that element within its own separate bounds.

Description

Label represents an owned node of another diagram element, typically a LabeledShape or a LabeledEdge. A label typically depicts some (usually textual) aspect of its owning element that needs to be laid out separately using the label’s own bounds. The bounds are optional and if not specified, the label will be positioned in its default position.
A label’s model element is typically not specified as it can be derived from its owning element. However, if the model element cannot be unambiguously derived, then a label could be given its own separate model element to disambiguate it.

**Abstract Syntax**

- Figure B.11 (Labeled Edge)
- Figure B.12 Labeled Shape

**Generalizations**

- Node

**Attributes**

- \(+ \text{bounds} : \text{Bounds}[1]\)
  
  the bounds (x, y, width and height) of the label relative to the origin of a containing plane.

**B.4.3.5 LabeledEdge [Class]**

LabeledEdge represents an edge that owns a collection of labels.

**Description**

LabeledEdge is an edge that owns a collection of labels (see “LabeledEdge [Class]” on page 494) that depict some aspects of it. An example is a UML association that has a number of labels (e.g., a name label, two role name labels and two multiplicity labels) positioned beside it. The existence of a label in this collection specifies that it is visible. The separate optional bounds of the label indicate where it should be positioned and if not specified the label can be positioned in its default position.

**Abstract Syntax**

- Figure B.11 Labeled Edge

**Generalizations**

- Edge

**Associations**

- \(? +/\text{ownedLabel} : \text{Label}[*]\{\text{readOnly}, \text{union}, \text{subsets ownedNode}\}
  
  the collection of labels owned by this edge.

**B.4.3.6 LabeledShape [Class]**

LabeledShape represents a shape that owns a collection of labels.

**Description**

LabeledShape is a shape that owns a collection of labels (see “LabeledShape [Class]” on page 494) that depict some aspects of it. An example is a UML port shape that is rendered as a filled box and has a name label positioned beside it. The existence of a label in this collection specifies that it is visible. The separate optional bounds of the label indicate where it should be positioned and if not specified the label can be positioned in its default position.

**Abstract Syntax**

- Figure B.12 Labeled Shape
Generalizations
  • Shape

Associations
  • ? + /ownedLabel : Label [*] {readOnly, union, subsets ownedNode}
    the collection of labels owned by this shape.

B.4.3.7 Node [Class]
Node specifies a given node in a graph of diagram elements.

Description
Node represents a given node (or vertex) in a diagram, which is a graph of diagram elements. A node often references a non-relationship element (like a UML class or a BPMN activity) as a model element. It can also be purely notational, i.e., does not reference any model element.

The abstract node class does not have any particular layout characteristics. However, it may get specialized in a domain-specific DI metamodel to define nodes that have certain layout characteristics. Examples include planes with infinite bounds, shapes with limited bounds, tree items and graph vertices...etc.

Abstract Syntax
  • Figure B.7 Node
  • Figure B.10 Plane
  • Figure B.11 Labeled Edge
  • Figure B.12 Labeled Shape
  • Figure B.13 Shape

Generalizations
  • DiagramElement

Specializations
  • Label
  • Shape
  • Plane

B.4.3.8 Plane [Class]
Plane is a node with an infinite bounds in the x-y coordinate system that owns a collection of shapes and edges that are laid out relative to its origin point.

Description
Plane has an origin point (0, 0) and an infinite size along the x and y axes. The coordinate system of the plane increases along the x-axis from left to right and along the y-axis from top to bottom. All the nested shapes and edges are laid out relative to their plane’s origin.
A plane is often chosen as a root element for a two dimensional diagram that depicts an inter-connected graph of shapes and edges. A plane may have its own reference to a model element, in which case the whole plane is considered a depiction of that element. Alternatively, a plane without a reference to a model element is simply a layout container for its shapes and edges.

The collection of plane elements (shapes and edges) in a plane is ordered with the order specifying the z-order of these plane elements relative to each other. The higher the z-order, the more to the front (on top) the plane element is.

**Abstract Syntax**

- Figure B.10 Plane

**Generalizations**

- Node

**Associations**

- \(? + planeElement : DiagramElement [*] \{subsets ownedNode\}

  the ordered collection of diagram elements owned by this plane with the order defining the z-order of the diagram element.

**B.4.3.9 Shape [Class]**

Shape represents a node that has bounds that is relevant to the origin of a containing plane.

**Description**

Shape represents a node that is directly or indirectly owned by a plane (See “Shape [Class]” on page 496.) and that is laid out according to a given bounds that is relevant to the origin of the plane. A shape does not have any particular graphical rendering, i.e., the rendering is domain-specific.

A shape can be purely notational (i.e., does not reference any model element), like a block arrow pointing to a UML class shape with some textual message or an overlay rectangle with some transparent fill enclosing a bunch of shapes on the diagram to make them stand out. However, a shape often represents a depiction of a non-relational element from a business model (like UML class or BPMN activity) and hence references such an element as its model element.

**Abstract Syntax**

- Figure B.13 Shape
- Figure B.12 Labeled Shape

**Generalizations**

- Node

**Specializations**

- LabeledShape

**Attributes**

- \(+ bounds : Bounds [1]\)

  the bounds (x, y, width and height) of the shape relative to the origin of a containing plane.
B.4.3.10 Style [Class]

A style is a container for a collection of properties that affect the formatting of a set of diagram elements rather than their structure or semantics.

Description

A style represents a bag of properties that affect the appearance of a group of diagram elements. A style property (like font, fill, or stroke) is distinguishable from a property on a diagram element in that it is meant for the aesthetics of the element rather than being part of its intrinsic syntax.

A style tends to have only a few unique value combinations for its properties across the diagram. Such combinations are represented by different style instances owned by the diagram and referenced by the diagram elements. This allows for conserving the footprint of diagrams (over making style instances owned by diagram elements).

Style is defined as an abstract class without prescribing any style properties to leave it up to domain-specific DI metamodels to define concrete style classes that are applicable to their diagram element types.

Abstract Syntax

- Figure B.6 Diagram Element
- Figure B.9 Diagram
Annex C
(informative)

Glossary

A

Activity  Work that a company or organization performs using business processes. An activity can be atomic or non-atomic (compound). The types of activities that are a part of a Process Model are: Process, Sub-Process, and Task.

Abstract Process  A Process that represents the interactions between a private business process and another process or participant.

Artifact  A graphical object that provides supporting information about the Process or elements within the Process. However, it does not directly affect the flow of the Process.

Association  A connecting object that is used to link information and Artifacts with Flow Objects. An association is represented as a dotted graphical line with an arrowhead to represent the direction of flow.

Atomic Activity  An activity not broken down to a finer level of Process Model detail. It is a leaf in the tree-structure hierarchy of Process activities. Graphically it will appear as a Task in BPMN.

B

Business Analyst  A specialist who analyzes business needs and problems, consults with users and stakeholders to identify opportunities for improving business return through information technology, and defines, manages, and monitors the requirements into business processes.

Business Process  A defined set of business activities that represent the steps required to achieve a business objective. It includes the flow and use of information and resources.

Business Process Management  The services and tools that support process management (for example, process analysis, definition, processing, monitoring and administration), including support for human and application-level interaction. BPM tools can eliminate manual processes and automate the routing of requests between departments and applications.

BPM System  The technology that enables BPM.

C

Choreography  An ordered sequence of B2B message exchanges between two or more Participants. In a Choreography there is no central controller, responsible entity, or observer of the Process.

Collaboration  Collaboration is the act of sending messages between any two Participants in a BPMN model. The two Participants represent two separate BPML processes.
**Collapsed Sub-Process**
A Sub-Process that hides its flow details. The Collapsed Sub-Process object uses a marker to distinguish it as a Sub-Process, rather than a Task. The marker is a small square with a plus sign (+) inside.

**Compensation Flow**
Flow that defines the set of activities that are performed while the transaction is being rolled back to compensate for activities that were performed during the Normal Flow of the Process. A Compensation Flow can also be called from a Compensate End or Intermediate Event.

**Compound Activity**
An activity that has detail that is defined as a flow of other activities. It is a branch (or trunk) in the tree-structure hierarchy of Process activities. Graphically, it will appear as a Process or Sub-Process in BPMN.

**Controlled Flow**
Flow that proceeds from one Flow Object to another, via a Sequence Flow link, but is subject to either conditions or dependencies from other flow as defined by a Gateway. Typically, this is seen as a Sequence flow between two activities, with a conditional indicator (mini-diamond) or a Sequence Flow connected to a Gateway.

**Decision**
A gateway within a business process where the Sequence Flow can take one of several alternative paths. Also known as "Or-Split."

**End Event**
An Event that indicates where a path in the process will end. In terms of Sequence Flows, the End Event ends the flow of the Process, and thus, will not have any outgoing Sequence Flows. An End Event can have a specific Result that will appear as a marker within the center of the End Event shape. End Event Results are Message, Error, Compensation, Signal, Link, and Multiple. The End Event shares the same basic shape of the Start Event and Intermediate Event, a circle, but is drawn with a thick single line.

**Event Context**
An Event Context is the set of activities that can be interrupted by an exception (Intermediate Event). This can be one activity or a group of activities in an expanded Sub-Process.

**Exception**
An event that occurs during the performance of the Process that causes a diversion from the Normal Flow of the Process. Exceptions can be generated by Intermediate Events, such as time, error, or message.

**Exception Flow**
A Sequence Flow path that originates from an Intermediate Event attached to the boundary of an activity. The Process does not traverse this path unless the Activity is interrupted by the triggering of a boundary Intermediate Event (an Exception - see above).

**Expanded Sub-Process**
A Sub-Process that exposes its flow detail within the context of its Parent Process. An Expanded Sub-Process is displayed as a rounded rectangle that is enlarged to display the Flow Objects within.

**Flow**
A directional connector between elements in a Process, Collaboration, or Choreography. A Sequence Flows represents the sequence of Flow Objects in a Process or Choreography. A Message Flow represents the transmission of a Message between Collaboration Participants. The term Flow is often used to represent the overall progression of how a Process or Process segment would be performed.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Flow Object</strong></td>
<td>A graphical object that can be connected to or from a Sequence Flow. In a Process, Flow Objects are Events, Activities, and Gateways. In a Choreography, Flow Objects are Events, Choreography Activities, and Gateways.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fork</strong></td>
<td>A point in the Process where one Sequence Flow path is split into two or more paths that are run in parallel within the Process, allowing multiple activities to run simultaneously rather than sequentially. BPMN uses multiple outgoing Sequence Flows from Activities or Events or a Parallel Gateway to perform a Fork. Also known as “AND-Split.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intermediate Event</strong></td>
<td>An event that occurs after a Process has been started. An Intermediate Event affects the flow of the process by showing where messages and delays are expected, distributing the Normal Flow through exception handling, or showing the extra flow required for compensation. However, an Intermediate Event does not start or directly terminate a process. An Intermediate Event is displayed as a circle, drawn with a thin double line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Join</strong></td>
<td>A point in the Process where two or more parallel Sequence Flow paths are combined into one Sequence Flow path. BPMN uses a Parallel Gateway to perform a Join. Also known as “AND-Join.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lane</strong></td>
<td>A partition that is used to organize and categorize activities within a Pool. A Lane extends the entire length of the Pool either vertically or horizontally. Lanes are often used for such things as internal roles (e.g., Manager, Associate), systems (e.g., an enterprise application), or an internal department (e.g., shipping, finance).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Merge</strong></td>
<td>A point in the Process where two or more alternative Sequence Flow paths are combined into one Sequence Flow path. No synchronization is required because no parallel activity runs at the join point. BPMN uses multiple incoming Sequence Flows for an Activity or an Exclusive Gateway to perform a Merge. Also known as “OR-Join.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Message</strong></td>
<td>An Object that depicts the contents of a communication between two Participants. A message is transmitted through a Message Flow and has an identity that can be used for alternative branching of a Process through the Event-Based Exclusive Gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Message Flow</strong></td>
<td>A Connecting Object that shows the flow of messages between two Participants. A Message Flow is represented by a dashed line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Normal Flow</strong></td>
<td>A flow that originates from a Start Event and continues through activities on alternative and parallel paths until reaching an End Event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parent Process</strong></td>
<td>A Process that holds a Sub-Process within its boundaries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Participant</strong></td>
<td>A business entity (e.g., a company, company division, or a customer) or a business role (e.g., a buyer or a seller) that controls or is responsible for a business process. If Pools are used, then a Participant would be associated with one Pool. In a Collaboration, Participants are informally known as “Pools.”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pool
A Pool represents a Participant in a Collaboration. Graphically, a Pool is a container for partitioning a Process from other Pools/Participants. A Pool is not required to contain a Process, i.e., it can be a “black box.”

Private Business Process
A process that is internal to a specific organization and is the type of process that has been generally called a workflow or BPM process.

Process
A sequence or flow of Activities in an organization with the objective of carrying out work. In BPMN, a Process is depicted as a graph of Flow Elements, which are a set of Activities, Events, Gateways, and Sequence Flow that adhere to a finite execution semantics.

Result
The consequence of reaching an End Event. Types of Results include Message, Error, Compensation, Signal, Link, and Multiple.

Sequence Flow
A connecting object that shows the order in which activities are performed in a Process and is represented with a solid graphical line. Each Flow has only one source and only one target. A Sequence Flow can cross the boundaries between Lanes of a Pool but cannot cross the boundaries of a Pool.

Start Event
An Event that indicates where a particular Process starts. The Start Event starts the flow of the Process and does not have any incoming Sequence Flow, but can have a Trigger. The Start Event is displayed as a circle, drawn with a single thin line.

Sub-Process
A Process that is included within another Process. The Sub-Process can be in a collapsed view that hides its details. A Sub-Process can be in an expanded view that shows its details within the view of the Process that it is contained in. A Sub-Process shares the same shape as the Task, which is a rectangle that has rounded corners.

Swimlane
A Swimlane is a graphical container for partitioning a set of activities from other activities. BPMN has two different types of Swimlanes. See “Pool” and “Lane.”

Task
An atomic activity that is included within a Process. A Task is used when the work in the Process is not broken down to a finer level of Process Model detail. Generally, an end-user, an application, or both will perform the Task. A Task object shares the same shape as the Sub-Process, which is a rectangle that has rounded corners.

Token
A theoretical concept that is used as an aid to define the behavior of a Process that is being performed. The behavior of Process elements can be defined by describing how they interact with a token as it “traverses” the structure of the Process. For example, a token will pass through an Exclusive Gateway, but continue down only one of the Gateway’s outgoing Sequence Flow.

Transaction
A Sub-Process that represents a set of coordinated activities carried out by independent, loosely-coupled systems in accordance with a contractually defined business relationship. This coordination leads to an agreed, consistent, and verifiable outcome across all participants.

Trigger
A mechanism that detects an occurrence and can cause additional processing in response, such as the start of a business Process. Triggers are associated with Start Events and Intermediate Events and can be of the type: Message, Timer, Conditional, Signal, Link, and Multiple.
Uncontrolled Flow

Flow that proceeds without dependencies or conditional expressions. Typically, an Uncontrolled Flow is a Sequence Flow between two Activities that do not have a conditional indicator (mini-diamond) or an intervening Gateway.
Annex D
(informative)

Legal Information

D.1 Copyright Information

Copyright © 2010, Axway
Copyright © 2010, BizAgi
Copyright © 2010, Bruce Silver Associates
Copyright © 2010, IDS Scheer
Copyright © 2010, IBM Corp.
Copyright © 2010, MEGA International
Copyright © 2010, Model Driven Solutions
Copyright © 2013, Object Management Group
Copyright © 2010, Oracle
Copyright © 2010, SAP AG
Copyright © 2010, Software AG
Copyright © 2010, TIBCO Software
Copyright © 2010, Unisys

D.2 Use Of International Standard - Terms, Conditions & Notices

The material in this International Standard details an Object Management Group specification in accordance with the terms, conditions and notices set forth below. This document does not represent a commitment to implement any portion of this International Standard in any company’s products. The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.

D.3 Licenses

The companies listed above have granted to the Object Management Group, Inc. (OMG) a nonexclusive, royalty-free, paid up, worldwide license to copy and distribute this document and to modify this document and distribute copies of the modified version. Each of the copyright holders listed above has agreed that no person shall be deemed to have infringed the copyright in the included material of any such copyright holder by reason of having used the International Standard set forth herein or having conformity any computer software to the International Standard.

Subject to all of the terms and conditions below, the owners of the copyright in this International Standard hereby grant you a fully-paid up, non-exclusive, nontransferable, perpetual, worldwide license (without the right to sublicense), to use this International Standard to create and distribute software and special purpose specifications that are based upon this International Standard, and to use, copy, and distribute this International Standard as provided under the Copyright Act; provided that: (1) both the copyright notice identified above and this permission notice appear on any copies of this International Standard; (2) the use of the specifications is for informational purposes and will not be copied or posted on any network computer or broadcast in any media and will not be otherwise resold or transferred for commercial purposes;
and (3) no modifications are made to this International Standard. This limited permission automatically terminates without notice if you breach any of these terms or conditions. Upon termination, you will destroy immediately any copies of the specifications in your possession or control.

D.4 Patents

The attention of adopters is directed to the possibility that compliance with or adoption of OMG specifications may require use of an invention covered by patent rights. OMG shall not be responsible for identifying patents for which a license may be required by any OMG specification, or for conducting legal inquiries into the legal validity or scope of those patents that are brought to its attention. OMG specifications are prospective and advisory only. Prospective users are responsible for protecting themselves against liability for infringement of patents.

D.5 General Use Restrictions

Any unauthorized use of this International Standard may violate copyright laws, trademark laws, and communications regulations and statutes. This document contains information which is protected by copyright. All Rights Reserved. No part of this work covered by copyright herein may be reproduced or used in any form or by any means--graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems--without permission of the copyright owner.

D.6 Disclaimer Of Warranty

WHILE THIS PUBLICATION IS BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE, IT IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND MAY CONTAIN ERRORS OR MISPRINTS. THE OBJECT MANAGEMENT GROUP AND THE COMPANIES LISTED ABOVE MAKE NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH REGARD TO THIS PUBLICATION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTY OF TITLE OR OWNERSHIP, IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OBJECT MANAGEMENT GROUP OR ANY OF THE COMPANIES LISTED ABOVE BE LIABLE FOR ERRORS CONTAINED HEREIN OR FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, RELIANCE OR COVER DAMAGES, INCLUDING LOSS OF PROFITS, REVENUE, DATA OR USE, INCURRED BY ANY USER OR ANY THIRD PARTY IN CONNECTION WITH THE FURNISHING, PERFORMANCE, OR USE OF THIS MATERIAL, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

The entire risk as to the quality and performance of software developed using this International Standard is borne by you. This disclaimer of warranty constitutes an essential part of the license granted to you to use this International Standard.

D.7 Restricted Rights Legend

Use, duplication or disclosure by the U.S. Government is subject to the restrictions set forth in subparagraph (c) (1) (ii) of The Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software Clause at DFARS 252.227-7013 or in subparagraph (c)(1) and (2) of the Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights clauses at 48 C.F.R. 52.227-19 or as specified in 48 C.F.R. 227-7202-2 of the DoD F.A.R. Supplement and its successors, or as specified in 48 C.F.R. 12.212 of the Federal Acquisition Regulations and its successors, as applicable. The specification copyright owners are as indicated above and may be contacted through the Object Management Group, 109 Highland Avenue, Needham, MA 02494, U.S.A.
D.8 Trademarks

MDA®, Model Driven Architecture®, UML®, UML Cube logo®, OMG Logo®, CORBA® and XMI® are registered trademarks of the Object Management Group, Inc., and Object Management Group™, OMG™, Unified Modeling Language™, Model Driven Architecture Logo™, Model Driven Architecture Diagram™, CORBA logos™, XMI Logo™, CWM™, CWM Logo™, IIOP™, IMM™, MOF™, OMG Interface Definition Language (IDL)™, and Systems Modeling Language (SysML™) are trademarks of the Object Management Group. All other products or company names mentioned are used for identification purposes only, and may be trademarks of their respective owners.

D.9 Compliance

The copyright holders listed above acknowledge that the Object Management Group (acting itself or through its designees) is and shall at all times be the sole entity that may authorize developers, suppliers and sellers of computer software to use certification marks, trademarks or other special designations to indicate compliance with these materials.

Software developed under the terms of this license may claim compliance or conformance with this International Standard if and only if the software compliance is of a nature fully matching the applicable compliance points as stated in the specification. Software developed only partially matching the applicable compliance points may claim only that the software was based on this International Standard, but may not claim compliance or conformance with this International Standard. In the event that testing suites are implemented or approved by Object Management Group, Inc., software developed using this International Standard may claim compliance or conformance with the specification only if the software satisfactorily completes the testing suites.